USE OF SPECIFICATION - TERMS, CONDITIONS & NOTICES

The material in this document details an Object Management Group specification in accordance with the terms, conditions and notices set forth below. This document does not represent a commitment to implement any portion of this specification in any company's products. The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

LICENSES

The companies listed above have granted to the Object Management Group, Inc. (OMG) a nonexclusive, royalty-free, paid up, worldwide license to copy and distribute this document and to modify this document and distribute copies of the modified version. Each of the copyright holders listed above has agreed that no person shall be deemed to have infringed the copyright in the included material of any such copyright holder by reason of having used the specification set forth herein or having conformed any computer software to the specification.

Subject to all of the terms and conditions below, the owners of the copyright in this specification hereby grant you a fully-paid up, non-exclusive, nontransferable, perpetual, worldwide license (without the right to sublicense), to use this specification to create and distribute software and special purpose specifications that are based upon this specification, and to use, copy, and distribute this specification as provided under the Copyright Act; provided that: (1) both the copyright notice identified above and this permission notice appear on any copies of this specification; (2) the use of the specifications is for informational purposes and will not be copied or posted on any network computer or broadcast in any media and will not be otherwise resold or transferred for commercial purposes; and (3) no modifications are made to this specification. This limited permission automatically terminates without notice if you breach any of these terms or conditions. Upon termination, you will destroy immediately any copies of the specifications in your possession or control.

PATENTS

The attention of adopters is directed to the possibility that compliance with or adoption of OMG specifications may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. OMG shall not be responsible for identifying patents for which a license may be required by any OMG specification, or for conducting legal inquiries into the legal validity or scope of those patents that are brought to its attention. OMG specifications are prospective and advisory only. Prospective users are responsible for protecting themselves against liability for infringement of patents.
GENERAL USE RESTRICTIONS

Any unauthorized use of this specification may violate copyright laws, trademark laws, and communications regulations and statutes. This document contains information which is protected by copyright. All Rights Reserved. No part of this work covered by copyright herein may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means--graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems--without permission of the copyright owner.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

WHILE THIS PUBLICATION IS BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE, IT IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND MAY CONTAIN ERRORS OR MISPRINTS. THE OBJECT MANAGEMENT GROUP AND THE COMPANIES LISTED ABOVE MAKE NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THIS PUBLICATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY OF TITLE OR OWNERSHIP, IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OBJECT MANAGEMENT GROUP OR ANY OF THE COMPANIES LISTED ABOVE BE LIABLE FOR ERRORS CONTAINED HEREIN OR FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, RELIANCE OR COVER DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOSS OF PROFITS, REVENUE, DATA OR USE, INCURRED BY ANY USER OR ANY THIRD PARTY IN CONNECTION WITH THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS MATERIAL, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

The entire risk as to the quality and performance of software developed using this specification is borne by you. This disclaimer of warranty constitutes an essential part of the license granted to you to use this specification.

RESTRICTED RIGHTS LEGEND

Use, duplication or disclosure by the U.S. Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in subparagraph (c) (1) (ii) of The Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software Clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 or in subparagraph (c)(1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clauses at 48 C.F.R. 52.227-19 or as specified in 48 C.F.R. 227-7202-2 of the DoD F.A.R. Supplement and its successors, or as specified in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 of the Federal Acquisition Regulations and its successors, as applicable. The specification copyright owners are as indicated above and may be contacted through the Object Management Group, 109 Highland Avenue, Needham, MA 02494, U.S.A.

TRADEMARKS

CORBA®, CORBA logos®, FIBO®, Financial Industry Business Ontology®, FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT GLOBAL IDENTIFIER®, IIOP®, IMM®, Model Driven Architecture®, MDA®, Object Management Group®, OMG®, OMG Logo®, SoaML®, SOAML®, SysML®, UAF®, Unified Modeling Language®, UML®, UML Cube Logo®, VSIPL®, and XMI® are registered trademarks of the Object Management Group, Inc.

For a complete list of trademarks, see http://www.omg.org/legal/tm_list.htm. All other products or company names mentioned are used for identification purposes only, and may be trademarks of their respective owners.

COMPLIANCE

The copyright holders listed above acknowledge that the Object Management Group (acting itself or through its designees) is and shall at all times be the sole entity that may authorize developers, suppliers and sellers of computer software to use certification marks, trademarks or other special designations to indicate compliance with these materials. Software developed under the terms of this license may claim compliance or conformance with this specification if and only if the software compliance is of a nature fully matching the applicable compliance points as stated in the specification. Software developed
only partially matching the applicable compliance points may claim only that the software was based on this specification, but
may not claim compliance or conformance with this specification. In the event that testing suites are implemented or approved
by Object Management Group, Inc., software developed using this specification may claim compliance or conformance with
the specification only if the software satisfactorily completes the testing suites.

OMG’S ISSUE REPORTING PROCEDURE

All OMG specifications are subject to continuous review and improvement. As part of this process we encourage readers to
report any ambiguities, inconsistencies, or inaccuracies they may find by completing the Issue Reporting Form listed on the
# Table of Contents

Preface .................................................................................................................... xiii

1 Scope ................................................................................................................... 1

2 Conformance ....................................................................................................... 1

3 Normative References ....................................................................................... 2

4 Terms and Definitions ....................................................................................... 2

5 Symbols .............................................................................................................. 4
  5.1 SBVR Vocabulary .......................................................................................... 4
  5.2 SBVR Structured English ........................................................................... 5
  5.3 UML and OCL ............................................................................................. 6
  5.4 CLIF Axioms ............................................................................................... 8
  5.5 OWL Formulation ....................................................................................... 9

6 Additional Information ....................................................................................... 9
  6.1 How to Read this Specification .................................................................. 9
  6.2 About this Specification ............................................................................ 10
  6.3 Structure of this Specification .................................................................. 11
  6.4 Acknowledgments ....................................................................................... 13

7 Rationale ............................................................................................................ 15
  7.1 General ........................................................................................................ 15
  7.2 Multiple Goals ............................................................................................ 15
  7.3 Reckoning of Time ..................................................................................... 16
  7.4 Time Scales ............................................................................................... 17
  7.5 Distinctions ................................................................................................. 18
  7.6 Compound Time Coordinates ................................................................ 18
  7.7 Compound Duration Values ....................................................................... 19
  7.8 Granularity of Time Coordinates and Time Points ................................ 19
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>Time Point Relationships</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.10</td>
<td>Temporal Reasoning</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.11</td>
<td>Temporal Granularity</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12</td>
<td>Language Tense and Aspect</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.13</td>
<td>Domain Vocabularies and Time</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.14</td>
<td>Enabling Other Calendars</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.15</td>
<td>Precise and Nominal Time Units</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.16</td>
<td>Temporal Aspects of Rules</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Time Infrastructure (normative)</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>The Time Axis and Time Intervals</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.1</td>
<td>The Whole-Part Relationship Among Time Intervals</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.2</td>
<td>The Temporal Ordering Relationship</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.3</td>
<td>The Allen Relations</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.4</td>
<td>Additional Time Interval Relationships</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.5</td>
<td>Time Interval Sum</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.6</td>
<td>Time Interval Complement</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.7</td>
<td>Time Interval Intersection</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.8</td>
<td>Time intervals defined by start and end</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.9</td>
<td>Indefinite time intervals</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>Durations</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.1</td>
<td>Duration Ordering</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.2</td>
<td>Duration Operations</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.3</td>
<td>Relationships between 'Duration' and 'Time Interval'</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Time Units</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.1</td>
<td>Time Unit Concepts</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.2</td>
<td>Standard Time Units</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>Time Scales</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>Time Points</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>Time Periods and Time Point Sequences</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Duration Values (normative)</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12 ISO Week Calendar (normative) .............................................................. 165
  12.1 General ............................................................................................ 165
  12.2 ISO Week Time Scales .................................................................. 166
  12.3 Days of the week ............................................................................ 170
  12.4 ISO Week Time Coordinates ....................................................... 171
13 Time of Day (normative) ...................................................................... 175
  13.1 General ............................................................................................ 175
  13.2 Time of Day Time Scales ............................................................... 176
  13.3 Time of Day Time Points ................................................................ 177
  13.4 Time of Day Time Coordinates ....................................................... 180
  13.5 Time of Day Comparisons and Conversions .................................. 182
  13.6 Time Zones .................................................................................... 183
    13.6.1 Calendar Offsets ........................................................................ 184
    13.6.2 Time Zones and Standard Time .................................................. 185
    13.6.3 Time Coordinates with Time Offsets ......................................... 189
14 Internet Time (normative) .................................................................... 191
  14.1 General ............................................................................................ 191
  14.2 Internet Calendar ............................................................................ 192
15 Indexical Time Concepts (normative) ................................................. 193
  15.1 General ............................................................................................ 193
  15.2 Indexical Characteristics ................................................................ 193
  15.3 Indexical Time Intervals .................................................................. 194
16 Situations (normative) ........................................................................ 205
  16.1 General ............................................................................................ 205
  16.2 Situation Kinds and Models ............................................................ 205
  16.3 Occurrences and Time ................................................................. 208
  16.4 Temporal Ordering of Occurrences ............................................... 215
  16.5 Situation Kinds and Time ............................................................... 219
  16.6 Temporal Ordering of Situation Kinds ........................................... 224
  16.7 Specification of Time Intervals Using Situations ........................... 227
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16.7.1 Specifying time intervals using occurrences</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7.2 Specifying time intervals using situation kinds</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7.3 Propositions, Situation Kinds, and Occurrences</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7.3.1 'State of Affairs' in SBVR</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7.3.2 Propositions and States of Affairs</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7.3.3 Verb Concepts, Verb Concept Objectification, and States of Affairs</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7.4 Language Tense and Aspect</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Schedules (normative)</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.1 General</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.2 Schedules</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.3 Regular Schedules</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.4 Ad Hoc Schedule</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Interchange of Duration Values and Time Coordinates</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.1 General</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.2 Datatype representation of duration values</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.3 Datatype representation of time coordinates</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex A - Attachments</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex B - References</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex C - Business Usage Guidelines</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex D - Fundamental Concepts</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex E - Formalizing English Tense and Aspect</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex F - Vocabulary Registration Vocabulary</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex G - UML Profile for the SBVR Elements</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index of Date Time Designations</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of Figures

Figure 6.1 - SBVR Vocabulary and UML Package Structure 12
Figure 7.1 - The Time Axis and Time Scales 17
Figure 7.2 - Example of Gregorian calendar 18
Figure 8.1 - Mereology as Applied to Time Intervals 28
Figure 8.2 - Temporal Ordering 30
Figure 8.3 - Allen's Original Diagram of the 13 Time Relationships 33
Figure 8.4 - UML Diagram of Allen Relations 34
Figure 8.5 - Additional Time Interval Relationships 38
Figure 8.6 - time interval\(_1\) starts with time interval\(_2\) 39
Figure 8.7 - time interval\(_1\) finishes with time interval\(_2\) 40
Figure 8.8 - Time Interval Sum 42
Figure 8.9 - Time Interval Complement 46
Figure 8.10 - Time Interval Intersection 50
Figure 8.11 - Illustration of ‘Intervening’ Corollary 53
Figure 8.12 - Time intervals defined by start and end 54
Figure 8.13 - primordiality, perpetuity, and eternity 57
Figure 8.14 - Duration Ordering 59
Figure 8.15 - Duration Operations 62
Figure 8.16 - Relationships between ‘Duration’ and ‘Time Interval’ 68
Figure 8.17 - time interval\(_2\) is duration before time interval\(_1\) 71
Figure 8.18 - time interval\(_1\) starts duration before time interval\(_2\) 72
Figure 8.19 - time interval\(_1\) finishes duration after time interval\(_2\) 73
Figure 8.20 - time interval\(_1\) is the duration preceding time interval\(_2\) 73
Figure 8.21 - time interval\(_1\) is the duration following time interval\(_2\) 74
Figure 8.22 - Time Units 76
Figure 8.23 - Time Scales 79
Figure 8.24 - Time Scale Kinds 81
Figure 8.25 - Time Points 82
Figure 8.26 - Time periods and time point sequences 84
Figure 8.27 - Time point sequence structure 86
Figure 9.1 - Duration Values 90
Figure 9.2 - Precise Duration Values 92
Figure 9.3 - Nominal Duration Values 94
Figure 9.4 - Duration Value Arithmetic 96
Figure 9.5 - Duration Value Comparison 98
Figure 9.6 - Duration Value Set Comparisons 101
Figure 9.7 - Comparisons among Duration Value Sets and Durations 103
Figure 9.8 - Duration Value Set Arithmetic 105
Figure 10.1 - Calendars 109
Figure 10.2 - Calendar Time Points 110
Figure 10.3 - Time periods based on calendars 112
Figure 10.4 - Time Point Subdivision 114
Figure 10.5 - Time Scale Renumbering 117
Figure 10.6 - Time point renumbering 118
Figure 10.7 - Time Coordinate 120
Figure 10.8 - Absolute and Relative Time Coordinates 121
Figure 10.9 - Atomic and Compound Time Coordinates 122
Figure 10.10 - Time Coordinate Types 126
Figure 10.11 - Time Coordinate Equivalence 127
Figure 10.12 - Time Sets 128
Figure 10.13 - Time Set Relations 129
Figure 10.14 - Date and time coordinates 131
Figure 10.15 - Time Scale Commonality and Conversion 133
Figure 11.1 - Gregorian Indefinite Time Scales and Time Points 138
Figure 11.2 - Gregorian Finite Time Scales and Time Points 140
Figure 11.3 - Gregorian Time Points 142
Figure 11.4 - Gregorian Months 145
Figure 11.5 - Year Values 148
Figure 11.6 - Month Values 151
Figure 11.7 - Gregorian Absolute Time Coordinates 153
Figure 11.8 - Gregorian Relative Time Coordinates 154
Figure 11.9 - Gregorian Year Conversions 160
Figure 11.10 - Gregorian Month of Year Conversion 162
Figure 12.1 - ISO Week Calendar time scales and time points 166
Figure 12.2 - Starting week 169
Figure 12.3 - Week days 170
Figure 12.4 - Week Coordinates 172
Figure 13.1 - Time of Day Time Scales, Time Points, and Time Periods 176
Figure 13.2 - Time of Day Coordinates 180
Figure 13.3 - Time of Day Conversions 182
Figure 13.4 - Calendars and Time Offsets 184
Figure 13.5 - Calendars and time of day 186
Figure 13.6 - Time coordinates with a time offset 189
Figure 14.1 - Internet Calendar 191
Figure 15.1 - Indexical Characteristics 193
Figure 15.2 - Indexical Time Intervals Relative to 'Current Time' 195
Figure 15.3 - Indexical Time Periods Relative to 'Current Time' 196
Figure 16.1 - Situation Kinds and Occurrences 206
Figure 16.2 - Occurrences and Time 209
Figure 16.3 - Temporal Ordering of Occurrences 216
Figure 16.4 - Situation Kinds and Time 220
Figure 16.5 - First and last occurrences of situation kinds 222
Figure 16.6 - Temporal Ordering of Situation Kinds 225
Figure 16.7 - Time intervals specified by occurrences 228
Figure 16.8 - Time intervals specified by situation kinds 231
Figure 16.9 - Propositions, Situation Kinds, and Occurrences 236
Figure 16.10 - Language Tense and Aspect 238
Figure 17.1 - Schedules 244
Figure 17.2 - Regular Schedules 249
Figure D.1 - Sequences 270
Figure D.2 - Sequence Members 274
Figure D.3 - Kinds of Sequences 278
Figure D.4 - Sequence Member Relationships 281
Figure D.5 - Ordinals 286
Figure D.6 Set concepts 289
Figure D.7 - Quantities 291
Figure D.8 - Measurement Units 294
Figure D.9 - Quantity Values 296
Figure D.10 - Mereology 297
Figure G.1 - Concept types 313
Figure G.2 - Categorization 314
Figure G.3 - Verb Concept stereotypes 316
# List of Tables

Table 7.1 - Language Tense and Aspect 22  
Table 10.1 - Number of Calendar Days per Gregorian Month 136  
Table 11.1 - Index of the First Gregorian Day of Year of Each Gregorian Month of Year 158  
Table 11.2 - Time sets for Gregorian Months 163  
Table 15.1 - Naming Pattern for Indexical Time Intervals 194  
Table 16.1 - Examples of tense and aspect formulation 241  
Table 18.1 - Relationship between Date-Time time coordinates and standard forms 257  
Table A.1 - Machine-readable Attachments 261  
Table E.1 - Modalities for Auxiliary Verbs 302  
Table E.2 - Mapping Tense and Aspect to the Date-Time Vocabulary 306
Preface

About the Object Management Group

OMG

Founded in 1989, the Object Management Group, Inc. (OMG) is an open membership, not-for-profit computer industry standards consortium that produces and maintains computer industry specifications for interoperable, portable and reusable enterprise applications in distributed, heterogeneous environments. Membership includes Information Technology vendors, end users, government agencies and academia.

OMG member companies write, adopt, and maintain its specifications following a mature, open process. OMG’s specifications implement the Model Driven Architecture® (MDA®), maximizing ROI through a full-lifecycle approach to enterprise integration that covers multiple operating systems, programming languages, middleware and networking infrastructures, and software development environments. OMG’s specifications include: UML® (Unified Modeling Language™); CORBA® (Common Object Request Broker Architecture); CWM™ (Common Warehouse Metamodel); and industry-specific standards for dozens of vertical markets.

More information on the OMG is available at http://www.omg.org/.

OMG Specifications

As noted, OMG specifications address middleware, modeling and vertical domain frameworks. All OMG Formal Specifications are available from this URL:

http://www.omg.org/spec

Specifications are organized by the following categories:

Business Modeling Specifications

Middleware Specifications

• CORBA/IIOP
• Data Distribution Services
• Specialized CORBA

IDL/Language Mapping Specifications

Modeling and Metadata Specifications

• UML, MOF, CWM, XMI
• UML Profile

Modernization Specifications

OMG Domain Specifications
Platform Independent Model (PIM), Platform Specific Model (PSM), Interface Specifications

- CORBAServices
- CORBAFacilities

CORBA Embedded Intelligence Specifications

CORBA Security Specifications

Signal and Image Processing Specifications

All of OMG’s formal specifications may be downloaded without charge from our website. (Products implementing OMG specifications are available from individual suppliers.) Copies of specifications, available in PostScript and PDF format, may be obtained from the Specifications Catalog cited above or by contacting the Object Management Group, Inc. at:

OMG Headquarters
109 Highland Avenue
Needham, MA 02494
USA
Tel: +1-781-444-0404
Fax: +1-781-444-0320
Email: pubs@omg.org

Certain OMG specifications are also available as ISO standards. Please consult http://www.iso.org

Issues

The reader is encouraged to report any technical or editing issues/problems with this specification by completing the Issue Reporting Form listed on the main web page http://www.omg.org, under Documents, Report a Bug/Issue.
1 Scope

Many SBVR rules involve common, generic, cross-domain concepts such as date and time. Characteristics of these concepts are frequent usage in everyday and business activities and wide usage across all business domains such as finance and manufacturing. These concepts exclude specialized needs such as sidereal time and real-time processing requirements. This document uses the term “foundation vocabularies” due to the foundational nature of these vocabularies for all these potential SBVR users.

SBVR tool vendors and users need standard vocabularies for such concepts to improve interoperability among vendors and to ensure that they share the same concepts in the same way. Vendors also need an agreed format for exchange of date and time literals when used in rules. The SBVR community in general needs such vocabularies as a foundation to avoid the startup cost of defining vocabularies for basic concepts, and as an example for interoperability testing among tools. The OMG wants SBVR to be successful, and sees value in lowering the “cost of entry” for potential SBVR users.

This document addresses two different, but complementary, aspects of time:

- **Type 1:** Temporal noun concepts (such as `time coordinate`, `duration`, `calendar`, etc.) that model attributes of SBVR noun concepts, and temporal verb concepts (such as `time coordinate is in the past`, `time interval_1 is before time interval_2`, `time interval_1 includes time interval_2`, etc.) that model relationships between temporal noun concepts. See Clauses 8 through 8.2.

- **Type 2:** Fact types that relate `situation kinds` and `occurrences` (such as a person being married to another person) to temporal concepts (e.g., to a `time interval`). See normative clause 16, as well as informative clauses 7.9 and 7.11, and informative Annex E.

These two aspects reflect the use/mention distinction well known from analytical philosophy: the first mentions temporal concepts, whereas the second uses temporal concepts in order to anchor `situation kinds` and `occurrences` in time.

The OMG’s Model Driven Architecture (MDA) anticipates mappings between business-layer or Computation Independent Models (CIM) and implementation-layer Platform Independent (PIM) and Platform Specific (PSM) Models. To encourage such mappings, this document provides date and time models in UML (Unified Markup Language) plus OCL (Object Constraint Language), partially in CLIF (Common Logic Interchange Format), and partially in OWL (Web Ontology Language) modeled in ODM (Ontology Definition Metamodel). The UML, CLIF, and OWL/ODM date and time models are “equivalent” to the SBVR date and time vocabulary while being “true” to the spirit of their respective technologies.

2 Conformance

Conformance to this specification is defined with respect to three types of software:

1. Software that manages ontologies complies with this specification if and only if it can import the entire set of concepts defined by the Date-Time Vocabulary in at least one of the normative forms specified here.

2. Software that implements machine reasoning about time complies with this specification if and only if it interprets the entire set of concepts defined by the Date-Time Vocabulary according to the semantics defined here.

3. The compliance of software that interchanges documents containing date and time concepts is specified in Clause 18.
3 Normative References

The following normative documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this specification. For dated references, subsequent amendments to, or revisions of, any of these publications do not apply.

- Object Management Group (OMG), Ontology Definition Metamodel, version 1.0, May 2009

4 Terms and Definitions

Because the Date-Time Vocabulary is intended to be a formal vocabulary, the content of this specification is primarily terms, definitions, and examples. Where terms are drawn from other sources, this is noted in the vocabulary entry by a Source caption.

The following terms are taken directly from SBVR and used only with the SBVR meaning, regardless of markup:

- designation
- individual concept
- noun concept
- ranges over, as ‘role ranges over concept’
- verb concept
• verb concept role

Note: The unmarked term ‘role’ used in this specification means ‘verb concept role’. The marked up term role refers to a property of something, which SBVR calls a ‘situational role’.

The following additional terms are taken from SBVR and have the definitions and other descriptions given therein, when they are marked as SBVR terms.

Note: The list below is ordered by the symbol being defined, while SBVR practice is to define verb symbols in the context of the subject term.

• cardinality of set and set has cardinality
• categorization type
• characteristic
• concept
• concept type
• meaning corresponds to thing
• definite description
• definition
• element of set and set has element statement expresses proposition
• expression
• extensional definition
• general concept
• set includes thing (= set has element)
• instance of concept and thing is instance of concept
• intensional definition
• thing1 is thing2
• thing is in set (= set includes thing)
• name of thing and thing has name
• proposition
• representation
• representation has expression
• representation of meaning and meaning has representation
• representation represents meaning (= meaning has representation)
• res
• roleset
The following concepts have their usual mathematical meaning but are formally marked as the SBVR terms:

- integer
- nonnegative integer
- number

## 5 Symbols

This clause specifies the intended meaning of the symbols and other special text of this specification.

### 5.1 SBVR Vocabulary

Clauses 8 through 17 of this specification introduce the Date-Time Vocabulary as a ‘vocabulary,’ as defined by the OMG Semantics of Business Vocabulary and Rules specification.

This specification presents the Date-Time Vocabulary in the forms specified in Annex C of SBVR. The intent is that the Date-Time Vocabulary is to be interpreted as specified in SBVR Annex C.2 and C.3, and is to be rendered as an XML document that conforms to the SBVR Metamodel XML Schema that is described in SBVR sub clause 15.2, according to the patterns given in SBVR sub clause 13.6.

The following captions are used as specified by SBVR in formulating vocabularies and terminological entries. In some cases, the corresponding SBVR term is used (with markup, see Clause 4) directly in DTV definitions and rules.

- Concept type
- General concept
- Definition
- Dictionary basis
- Example
- Included Vocabulary
- Language
- Namespace URI
- Necessity
• Note
• Possibility
• Source
• Synonym
• Synonymous Form
• Vocabulary

Annex A of this specification identifies the normative attachment that contains the formal representation of the Date-Time Vocabulary as an SBVR Vocabulary in the normative XML document form prescribed by SBVR sub clauses 13.6 and 15.2. The XML document includes all the meanings, definitions, rules, and other representations that are given in this specification in text form.

It is possible to represent most, but not all, of the definitions and rules given in this specification in the formal logical form specified by SBVR Clause 9. That representation may be a normative part of a future version of this specification.

### 5.2 SBVR Structured English

For definitions of vocabulary terms, and for ‘structural rules’ (necessities, axioms) that relate to those terms, this document adopts the “SBVR Structured English” syntax and font styles described in Annex C of the SBVR specification [SBVR]:

- **Underlined teal** indicates noun concepts.
- **Italic blue** identifies the fact symbols of verb concepts.
- **Orange font** indicates keywords.
- **Double underlined teal** marks individual concepts.
- Black normal font is regular text.

This specification uses the following symbols for the meanings indicated:

- `<` less than or equal
- `>` greater than or equal
- `<` less
- `>` greater
- `=` equal
- `+` addition
- `-` subtraction
- `*` multiplication
- `/` division
Ordinary arithmetic is meant when these symbols are used, unstyled, with numbers (e.g., “number₁ = number₂.”). The meaning is explicitly defined in this specification when these symbols are applied (and styled as verb concepts) to other operand types.

Sets are formed using the BNF syntax '{<element>+, (, <element>)* }', where <element> gives the members of the set, separated by commas. An empty set is specified by "{".

This specification uses the SBVR definition of ‘thing₁ is thing₂,’ meaning “The thing₁ and the thing₂ are the same thing.” Verb concepts using the fact symbol ‘equals,’ ‘=,’ or ‘is equivalent to’ are explicitly defined for usages where the intended meaning is that two values can be distinct things, but are equivalent in terms of their relationship to some other thing. In particular, two quantity values are different things if they involve different units but are equal or equivalent if they quantify the same quantity.

The SBVR specification does not discuss dates and times, and thus does not specify the styling of literal time coordinates (e.g., “January 21 2009”), literal times of day (e.g., “3:00 pm”), and literal duration values (e.g., 3 months 13 days). These values identify themselves, meaning that each such expression identifies exactly one time coordinate, time of day, or duration value – they are what SBVR calls ‘individual concepts.’ For this reason, literal time coordinates and times of day are styled as individual concepts in this document. For example, January 21 2009 3:00 pm.

In this specification, duration values provide the reference scheme for durations, and time coordinates provide the reference scheme for time points. Verb concept roles that apply to durations or time points can be filled by duration values or time coordinates, respectively. For example, “17:00 is 1 hour before the start of the meeting” applies the verb concept “time interval₂ is duration before time interval₁,” using time coordinate “17:00” to fill the “time interval₂” role, and duration value “1 hour” to fill the “duration” role. The example assumes that “start of meeting” is a time interval that fills the “time interval₁” role.

This specification distinguishes between comparing durations or time periods, and quantifying time periods. Comparisons uses verb concepts defined in this document and styled as verb concepts. For example, “if the length of the meeting is greater than 3 hours …” or “if the date of the meeting is before the contract due date …” Quantifications use keyword style, as in “The party is on each July 4.”

Definitions that are drawn from another specification are preceded by “Source” or “Dictionary Basis” captions. “Source” indicates that the definition is adopted exactly from the indicated specification. “Dictionary Basis” identifies definitions that are paraphrased from the specified source.

5.3 UML and OCL

This specification includes a normative UML (Unified Modeling Language) model of the concepts represented in the Date-Time Vocabulary, using the same terms as the SBVR vocabulary to the extent possible. The intent of the UML model is two-fold: (a) to provide a normative PIM (Platform Independent Model) UML representation of the concepts, for use in software models of date and time concepts, and (b) to illustrate the Date-Time Vocabulary with UML diagrams. Annex A of this specification identifies the normative attachment that is the UML model.

The UML model is derived manually from the Date-Time Vocabulary presented in the SBVR form. The UML model is constructed generally following the principles in [SBVR] Clause 13. The names in the UML model are identical to the primary vocabulary terms for the same concepts.

Some SBVR vocabulary items are modeled in the UML model using stereotypes. The stereotypes are formally specified in Annex I.

- Each SBVR general concept maps to a UML class.
• Each SBVR concept type maps to a UML class with the stereotype «concept type». Where specific concepts that are instances of a concept type are also modeled, the fact that each such a concept is an instance of the concept type is modeled by a UML dependency with the stereotype «instance of».

• Each SBVR categorization type maps to a UML class with the stereotype «categorization type». The relationship between the categorization type and the general concept it categorizes is modeled by a UML dependency with the stereotype «for general concept».

• Each binary verb concept maps to a UML association. The association is named for the primary verb concept form for the verb concept, discarding all markup. The placeholders (role names) in the verb concept are mapped to the association end names, with subscripts being elevated to plain text.

• Each binary verb concept that uses the SBVR verb symbol has in any of its synonymous forms maps to a UML Property of the class that is the subject of the verb; that is, the association end is owned by the class. In some cases, this means that the association end name (the property name) is taken from the has form, rather than the primary form.

• Regardless of the verb symbol, where the intent of the binary verb concept is that the association represents a property of the class that plays the subject role, the corresponding association end is owned by the class. Similarly, where there is a Synonymous Form that represents a property of the other role (as the subject of that form), the corresponding association end of the same association is owned by the class that plays that role.

• Binary verb concepts that do not clearly imply a property of either participating class, such as 'time interval1 is before time interval2', are mapped to associations in which both association ends are owned by the association.

• Verb concepts with more than two roles map to UML classes stereotyped as «verb concept». The roles in these verb concepts are modeled by UML associations from the «verb concept» class to the UML classes that model the ranges of the roles. These associations are stereotyped «verb concept role» and are properties of the «verb concept» class. These properties always have multiplicity '1', because each instance of the class represents a single instance of the relationship, having exactly one participant in each role. The multiplicity of the association-owned end of a «verb concept role» association represents the number of situations in which a given object in the range class can play that role.

• Binary verb concepts that do not map to properties, and verb concepts with more than two roles, also map to UML operations on one or more of the participating classes. This enables Object Constraint Language (OCL) expressions (see below) to exploit the associations as functions. Each such verb concept maps to an operation on at least one of the participating classes. In general, the operation is named for the primary verb concept wording, and is attached to the class that is the range of the subject role in that wording. The operation takes one argument for each other role in the verb concept wording and returns a Boolean result. The Boolean result indicates whether the subject instance ("self"), together with a given set of argument values as participants in the corresponding association roles, represents an actual instance of the association. In addition, in those cases where it is convenient for stating rules, a synonymous form of the verb concept is used to create an operation on the class that is the subject of that form. That operation is named for the synonymous form, and its arguments correspond to the remaining roles in the synonymous form. It returns Boolean with the same interpretation.

• Some verb concepts that have more than two roles also map to a UML operation that returns the unique object that plays one of the roles, as a function of the objects that play the other roles. The operation is on the class that is the range of the subject role in one of the verb concept wordings, and that is one of the inputs to the function. The operation has one argument for each of the other roles that serves as an input to the function, and it returns the unique object that plays the remaining ("result") role in the corresponding state of affairs. For example, the verb concept 'duration3 = duration1 plus duration2' has the synonymous form 'duration1 plus duration2 gives duration3'. This latter form is mapped to an operation on class 'duration' – plus(duration2: duration): duration – which returns the value of 'duration3'.

Date-Time Vocabulary v1.3
• All formal SBVR definitions and rules (Necessities) in Clauses 8 and 16 are also formally specified as OCL definitions and constraints. The "noun forms", if any, of the verb concepts in those sections are mapped to UML Properties or Operations, and those Properties and Operations have formal definitions in OCL.

• Definitions, notes, and examples that are attached to entries in the Date-Time Vocabulary are intentionally omitted from the UML model to avoid the requirement to maintain consistency between the specification text and ownedComments in the model.

• Because UML does not support the concept of Synonym (for a noun concept) or Synonymous Form (for a verb concept), the UML model does not include any formal model elements for those elements of the vocabulary.

For the definitions and rules in the Date-Time Vocabulary, this specification adds Object Constraint Language (OCL) rules to the UML model, to the extent possible. (The definitions of primitive concepts, and some rules, cannot be formally stated in terms of classes and associations in the model.)

OCL constraints are incorporated into the document text and the UML model as follows:

• Each fully-formal SBVR definition has an equivalent OCL definition or constraint, captioned as “OCL Definition:”. The constraint captures the distinguishing characteristics of the formal definition. For example, if the formal definition of an SBVR object type ‘luxury car’ is ‘car that is gold,’ the corresponding OCL constraint is given as:

OCL Definition: context 'luxury car'
               inv: self._'is gold'

• Each SBVR Necessity (that is not a cardinality constraint) has an equivalent OCL constraint, captioned as “OCL Constraint:”.

• Necessities and Possibilities that specify cardinalities are modeled as UML cardinalities, rather than OCL constraints.

• OCL name-quoting syntax is applied as necessary to quote UML names with embedded spaces. For example the term ‘consecutive sequence’ is quoted in OCL as “_’consecutive sequence’”.

OCL is provided for sub clauses 8.1, 8.2, and Annex D. These parts of the specification require the most rigorous definition.

5.4 CLIF Axioms

This specification includes a file of matching and normative Common Logic Interchange Format (CLIF) axioms that is inventoried in Annex A. The axioms are provided to precisely specify the formal Definitions and Necessities of this specification in a form that is meaningful to logicians and that can be input (in the future) to software that automatically checks for consistency among the axioms. The CLIF axioms in this document have been syntactically checked using the Kojeware CLIF validation service that is available at http://www.kojeware.com/clif-file-validator. No automated quality analysis has yet been performed.

The CLIF axioms are derived manually from the SBVR-based text in this document. In case of any discrepancies between the SBVR-based text in this document and these axioms, the text prevails because it is the original model.

Names in the CLIF axioms are based directly on the corresponding SBVR names, using CLIF name-quoting as necessary to address embedded spaces. For example the SBVR term ‘consecutive sequence’ is quoted in CLIF as “_’consecutive sequence’”.

The file of CLIF axioms is derived automatically from CLIF statements that are incorporated directly in the text of this specification as follows:

• Each fully-formal SBVR definition has an equivalent CLIF axiom, captioned as “CLIF Definition:”. The axiom defines how the corresponding concept is derived from some other concept. For example, if the formal definition of an SBVR
object type ‘luxury car’ is ‘car that is gold,’ the corresponding CLIF axiom is given as shown below. Read this as “each car is a luxury car if and only if the car is gold.”

CLIF Definition:  
(forall ((car car))  
  (iff ("luxury car" car)  
       ("is gold" car))  
)

• Each SBVR Necessity has an equivalent CLIF axiom, captioned as “CLIF Axiom:”. The axiom expresses the same constraint as the SBVR Necessity.

Many SBVR Necessities specify cardinality constraints. Basic CLIF cannot express these constraints in the absence of functions that generate collections, give the cardinality of collections, and compare the values of integers. Therefore this specification assumes the following in order to express cardinality constraints in CLIF:

• For each SBVR verb concept, there is a corresponding CLIF predicate, and also \( n-1 \) CLIF functions, where \( n \) is the number of roles of the verb concept. The predicate and all the functions have the name of the verb concept, quoted if necessary. The distinction among them is the number of terms they take and which terms they take. The predicate takes one term for each role of the verb concept, and returns true or false according to whether the verb concept is satisfied for the specific terms. Each function omits one role and produces a collection of instances that fulfill that role in relationship to the other terms of the function.

For example, given an SBVR verb concept ‘driver drives car to city,’ the predicate

("driver drives car to city” John “car 123” Paris)

is true or false according to whether John drives car 123 to Paris. The function

("driver drives car to city” John Paris)

returns the collection of cars that John drives to Paris.

• A primitive count function that returns the cardinality of a collection. For example, (count ("driver drives car to city” John Paris)) produces the number of cars that John drives to Paris.

• CLIF defines the = predicate as testing whether two terms are equal. This specification uses primitive functions <, <=, >, >=, and + to mean the standard numeric relationships. For example

(< (count ("driver drives car to city” John Paris)) 2)

tests whether John drives fewer than two cars to Paris.

• This document also uses the allDifferent function as defined in [IKL Guide].

CLIF is provided for sub clauses 8.1, 8.2, and Annex D. These parts of the specification require the most rigorous definition.

5.5 OWL Formulation

In addition to the normative SBVR, UML/OCL and CLIF specifications of the Date Time concepts, an informative model of the same concepts expressed in the Web Ontology Language (OWL) is provided. The OWL model - a set of OWL “ontologies” - was developed by a rote transformation from the Date Time vocabulary entries. The transformation converts the primary SBVR terms to OWL classes, properties, and individuals, and it converts each other element of an SBVR terminological entry to a specialized OWL annotation.

Each SBVR vocabulary presented in Clauses 8 through 17, and each supporting vocabulary presented in Annex D, was transformed to a separate OWL ontology in this way. The OWL ontologies are not presented in the specification per se. They are provided as an informative attachment to this specification in the standard OWL/RDF exchange form.
6 Additional Information

6.1 How to Read this Specification

This document serves different purposes for first-time readers versus implementers. First-time readers should start with informative Clause 7, “Rationale” that offers introductory text, and describes the motivations behind the design of this vocabulary. These readers may wish to refer to the normative clauses (Clause 8 through Clause 13), as well as informative Annex D, for definitions, notes, examples, and diagrams that describe the Date-Time Vocabulary concepts. The other Annexes provide additional examples and supporting information that should also be useful to these readers.

Implementers of this vocabulary will focus on the normative clauses and Annex D and on the supporting machine-readable files. The specific aspects of interest will depend upon the intended conformance goal, as described in Clause 2. Implementers should study the material in the normative clauses in detail. The supporting informative material will also provide some guidance.

6.2 About this Specification

The first 6 clauses include information that is applicable to most OMG specifications. The rest of the document includes the following key topics:

Clause 7 - Rationale (informative) - introduces this document and discusses some of the key technical choices made by this specification.

Clause 8 - Time Infrastructure (normative) - describes fundamental concepts about time intervals, durations, and their relationships.

Clause 9 - Duration Values (normative) - Duration values are amounts of time stated as multiples of time units, for example “5 hours 30 minutes”. The model of duration values presented here accommodates the complexities introduced by the varying number of calendar days in each calendar month and calendar year.

Clause 10 - Calendars (normative) - defines the basic concepts used to organize time as time scales and calendars, and to identify locations in time via time coordinates, such as “July 31”.

Clause 11 - Gregorian Calendar (normative) - defines the standard Gregorian calendar, and the time points, time scales, and time coordinates of this calendar.

Clause 12 - ISO Week Calendar (normative) - defines the standard calendar based on weeks, and the time points, time scales, and time coordinates of this calendar.

Clause 13 - Time of Day (normative) - specifies the time points, time scales, and time coordinates that jointly identify the time periods within a day.

Clause 14 - Internet Time (normative) - specifies the calendar used by the Network Time Protocol.

Clause 15 - Indexical Time (normative) - Indexical time concepts use terms such as “in the past” and “now” to refer to time. These terms are defined in this specification, despite their inherent ambiguity, because they are frequently used in everyday communication.

Clause 16 - Situations (normative) - provides concepts that relate situations to time.

Clause 17 - Schedules (normative) - defines time tables, and schedules of events that may repeat over time.
Clause 18 - Interchange of Duration Values and Time Coordinates (normative) - defines how duration values and time coordinates should be exchanged between tools that implement this specification. The interchange format is based on the existing [XML Schema] and [ISO 8601] specifications.

Annexes

Annex A: Attachments (normative) - Lists the machine-readable files that accompany this specification.

Annex B: References (informative) - this annex lists the standards documents and academic papers that were consulted in the preparation of this specification.

Annex C: Business Usage Guidelines (informative) – is published as a separate document for the convenience of business users who need not read the normative specification. This annex offers counsel on the use of DTV by a discussion of and examples of “calendar expressions”, and an inventory of the Date-Time noun and verb concepts recommended for business use.

Annex D: Fundamental Concepts (normative) - International standards, for example [VIM], [ISO 80000:3], and [ISO 18026] define duration as just one of many quantity kinds, and time scales as one of many kinds of coordinate systems. This permits the formation of derived quantities based on durations (e.g., velocity, which is length / duration), and multi-dimensional coordinate systems that include time as one dimension. Coordinate systems themselves depend upon mathematical concepts, such as sequences and scales. Unfortunately, there is no existing SBVR vocabulary or ODM ontology that addresses these concepts. The authors recognize that they are out-of-scope for this specification, but felt it necessary to imagine how this Date-Time Vocabulary would fit into a complete schema that addresses them. Annex D summarizes that schema in the form of several SBVR vocabularies.

- Annex D.2: Sequences (normative) - presents a complete model of sequences that provides the formal foundation for time scales.
- Annex D.3 Quantities Vocabulary (informative) - defines a minimal vocabulary for quantities and units of measure. This vocabulary is informative because it does not address requirements beyond those of this Date-Time Vocabulary.
- Annex D.4: Mereology (normative) specifies a basic model of mereology that provides the formal basis for the part-of relationship among time intervals.

Annex E: Formalizing English Tense and Aspect (informative) - The normative clauses of this specification deal with the semantics of time as used in natural languages. This Annex describes how propositions that are given in English language syntax may be formulated using the Date-Time Vocabulary.

Annex F: This annex formally lists the vocabularies provided by the Date-Time Vocabulary specification.

Annex G: UML Profile for the SBVR Elements used in the Date-Time Vocabulary (normative) - documents the stereotypes used in the UML model of this vocabulary.

Index of Date Time Designations (informative) - contains an index to the business designations defined in this document.

6.3 Structure of this Specification

Figure 6.1 summarizes the structure of the SBVR vocabularies and UML packages that are defined in this specification.

The SBVR-DTV package contains the concepts from the SBVR specification that are used in this specification. The corresponding excerpts from the SBVR vocabularies are specified in Clause 4. The SBVR Profile defines UML stereotypes for some of these SBVR concepts. These stereotypes are used to mark up UML representations of some DTV concepts as
described in Annex I. The «apply» relationship provides the Profile as the interpretation of those markups in the SBVR-DTV package, and in every UML package that directly or indirectly imports the SBVR-DTV package.

The content of each remaining element of the figure is a vocabulary and a UML package that corresponds to a top-level clause of this specification, or to a sub-clause of Annex D. The dependency relationships shown in the figure match the dependency relationships among the corresponding specification clauses.
The «import» relationship shown in Figure 6.1 indicates both SBVR ‘vocabulary incorporates vocabulary’ (as indicated by the ‘Included Vocabulary’ caption) and UML package import. For both SBVR and UML, the entire contents of the imported package are incorporated into the importing package. For example, the Duration Values vocabulary incorporates the Time Infrastructure vocabulary, and the corresponding Duration Values UML package imports the Time Infrastructure UML package.
Vocabulary incorporation and UML package import are both transitive. For example, the Calendars vocabulary and package indirectly import the Sequences vocabulary and package.

The «merge» relationship used in Figure 6.1 is UML “package merge.” This means that the entire contents of the merged package are incorporated into the merging package and some elements of the merged package are modified by the merging package. For example, the Indexical Time package merges the Calendars package, and thus the Time Infrastructure package, because Indexical Time adds UML attributes (such as the ‘is current’ attribute that represents the concept ‘time interval is current’) to the ‘time interval’ class defined in the Time Infrastructure package.

SBVR does not distinguish vocabulary incorporation from ‘vocabulary merge,’ because what is added is just additional vocabulary or additional constraints. So the ‘merge’ relationships shown in Figure 6.1 are accomplished by vocabulary incorporation in the SBVR text in this specification.

### 6.4 Acknowledgments

The following companies submitted and/or supported parts of this specification:

- Automata, Inc. - Paul Haley
- Business Rule Solutions, LLC - Ron Ross
- Business Semantics, Ltd - Donald Chapin
- Deere & Co - Roger Burkhart
- Hendryx & Associations - Stan Hendryx
- International Business Machines - Mark H. Linehan (team lead)
- KnowGravity Inc - Markus Schacher
- LogicBlox - Terry Halpin
- Microsoft - Don Baisley
- Model Driven Solutions - Cory Casanave
- Model Systems - John Hall
- National Institute of Standards and Technology - Ed Barkmeyer
- PNA Group - Sjir Nijssen
- Ravi Sharma
- Thematics Partners - Elisa Kendall
7 Rationale

7.1 General

This Informative clause introduces this document, and discusses various design considerations that impacted it.

7.2 Multiple Goals

This vocabulary attempts to satisfy several goals that tend to conflict.

1. Provide a Standard Business Vocabulary for Date and Time Concepts - Provide a vocabulary of date and time concepts that business users can share and exploit in their business domain vocabularies and rules. Quoting Donald Chapin, this requires an “… SBVR Foundation Business Terminology that is conceptualized optimally for the way people think and communicate about things in their organizations using natural language.” To satisfy this goal, the date and time vocabulary needs to include terms that make intuitive sense to business users.

2. Support Machine Reasoning about Time - Provide a formal ontology that enables machine interpretation and reasoning. This means that processing by automated reasoners is possible, based on a well-grounded formal representation. For example, it should be possible for a reasoning system to determine whether a payment is more than 30 days late compared to some due date. Satisfying this goal requires carefully-defined vocabulary concepts, to the point of making distinctions that would not occur to business users. The business vocabulary is grounded on the formal ontology, so these distinctions show through in the business vocabulary.

3. Enable implementation - Enable tool vendors and other software developers to implement the date and time vocabulary with a “reasonable” amount of development effort – meaning that the value obtained is commensurate with the development cost. That cost is driven by the size of the vocabulary – the more there is to implement, the greater the cost. Implementation cost is also driven by the effort required to resolve ambiguities, omissions, and inconsistencies in the specification. Including a formal grounding and concise vocabulary is expected to facilitate both development of tools and use of the specification by vendors, business users, and those who want to apply formal reasoning systems.

This specification employs several techniques to reconcile these different modeling goals. The vocabulary is presented as an SBVR business vocabulary, with extensive examples and notes. Many formally-defined concepts are also presented in CLIF and OCL. Wherever possible, terms and examples are chosen to make sense to business users. Parallel construction of terms ensures that related terms are used consistently. Every concept is precisely defined. Multiple distinct concepts are defined where needed to distinguish between concepts that are intuitively similar but have different reasoning implications.

Annex D, “Foundational Concepts” documents general concepts that, though out-of-scope for a date and time vocabulary, nevertheless must be implemented consistently by reasoning systems. Annex D includes formal mathematical definitions of sequences, on which all scales, not just time scales, are based, and a general treatment of quantities and units, and of basic mereology. Although Annex D is not normative, it will provide guidance that should ease formal integration of future possible normative specifications, perhaps published by the OMG or other standards bodies, of the Annex D concepts with the normative vocabulary of this specification. Implementers of this specification are encouraged to support or assure compatibility with Annex D. Normative concepts of this specification that specialize Annex D concepts formally includes Annex D concepts in their definitions, as if Annex D were normative.

Implementors and reasoning systems are also addressed by providing this date and time vocabulary in SBVR, UML, and CLIF forms.
7.3 Reckoning of Time

The scientific community, and some time standards such as OWL-Time, typically conceive of time as continuous, meaning that any moment of the Time Axis can be subdivided into an infinite number of smaller moments. This Date and Time Vocabulary follows that pattern by modeling time as a segment of the Time Axis called a time interval, and describing amounts of time as durations.

Mathematically, both time intervals and durations correspond to contiguous sets of real numbers, making modeling of time-varying phenomena amenable to continuous mathematics. This specification gives a rigorous account of the operations that may be performed on time intervals and durations, providing the basis for formal reasoning about time.

Since antiquity, the passage of time has been reckoned by counting discrete time intervals demarcated by the diurnal and annual cycles of the Earth and the Moon’s cycle – giving rise to ‘time point’ concepts such as ‘calendar day’, ‘calendar month’, and ‘calendar year’. To identify a particular element of a cycle, each cycle is mapped onto a ‘calendar’.

Calendars define time scales used refer to time points by name or by scale index. The combination of a time scale and an index or a name (e.g., ‘February’) is called a ‘time coordinate’. An individual time coordinate is called an atomic time coordinate, whereas combinations of time coordinates (e.g., “February 3”) are called compound time coordinates (sub clauses 7.5 and 10.5.3). Time coordinates provide a reference scheme for time points via the verb concept ‘time coordinate indicates time point’. Thus time points can be referred to either by definition descriptions (e.g., “the day after the meeting”) or by time coordinates (e.g., “3:00 p.m.”).

Each time point is a concept whose instances are time intervals. Thus, every ‘time interval’ fact type role in this specification can be filled by a time coordinate that indicates a time point. For example, the statement “the meeting time is before 3:00 p.m.” uses the “time interval is before time interval” verb concept (sub clause 8.2.2) to compare one time interval given as a definite description with another time interval given as a time coordinate.

Many calendars have been devised, ancient and modern. Time coordinates of most calendars can be correlated to jointly reference the same time interval. Calendars are anchored to the Time Axis by associating a noteworthy event with a particular time point on the calendar, e.g., the signing of the Convention du Mètre in Paris on May 20, 1875, which established the International Bureau of Weights and Measures (BIPM), and is the anchoring event for the modern Gregorian Calendar.

Timekeeping is significantly complicated by the incommensurable and irregular periods of rotation and revolution of the Earth and Moon. These variations are accounted for at the granularity of ‘day’ by incorporating intercalary leap days in the Gregorian Calendar, and at the granularity of ‘second’ by incorporating intercalary leap seconds in UTC. Businesses sensitive to elapsed ‘seconds’ should use TAI, while those that are concerned with calendar alignment may prefer UTC.

Time is measured by clocks, or tracked by calendars, in discrete time intervals called ‘time periods’, which instantiate time point sequences, as discussed in the next sub clause. A particular member of a time scale – and a time period that instantiates a time point sequence of just one member – is called a ‘time point’. Every time scale divides the Time Axis into time points with a specified duration, called the ‘granularity’ of the time scale. One consequence of this model is that every time period is aligned to the time points of a time scale: the time period starts on the first time point of some time point sequence of the time scale, and the time period ends on the last time point of some time point sequence of the time scale. Another consequence is that the duration of every time period is a multiple of the granularity of the time scale.

Of course, any time point can be subdivided by another time scale with a finer granularity. For example, a time point with duration “1 second” can be divided into milliseconds. But subdivision in this sense is still a discrete process. The finer time scale has a finite number of time points for each time point on the original time scale.

In everyday activity, people and businesses talk about durations such as years and hours, and about time periods such as calendar years, hours of day, and so forth. These discrete time concepts are used in ordinary conversation, in business
contracts, in legislation and regulations, and in corporate policies. They also form the basis for identifying time intervals for scientific purposes (International Atomic Time) and for navigation (Global Positioning System). Representation of time in computers is inherently discrete and finite. Consequently, this specification also defines discrete time modeled by time scales.

### 7.4 Time Scales

| Calendar month, e.g. a time point identified by date time “January” or “month 1” | Time scale with granularity “month” |
| Time Axis |
| Calendar days, e.g. time points identified by date times “day 2”, “day 6”, “day 7” |
| Time period from date time “day 2” to date time “day 6” |

**Figure 7.1 - The Time Axis and Time Scales**

Following [ISO 8601], this specification considers that there is a single Time Axis that is measured by multiple time scales. The Time Axis represents “the succession in time of instantaneous events”. Figure 7.1 shows the Time Axis with one time scale for calendar months, and another for calendar days.

Each time scale comprises a consecutive sequence of time points at regular or irregular time intervals. The time points of each time scale have a duration that is called the granularity of the time scale. Month scales have irregular time intervals because different calendar months have different durations. Thus, the Time Axis is continuous time, while time scales partition the Time Axis into discrete segments. Time scales define concepts that are meaningful in business and everyday life.

Time coordinates label individual time points on a time scale. For example, the top time scale in Figure 7.1 has a calendar month labeled “January”, while “day 2”, “day 6”, and “day 7” are indicated on the time scale for calendar days. A time coordinate can have multiple labels. For example, “January” is also labeled “month 1”.

A time period instantiates a time point sequence, a sequence of consecutive time points on a time scale. “Instantiation” means that the time point sequence corresponds to the time period, analogous to SBVR’s “meaning corresponds to thing”. Each time point sequence has a first time point, a last time point (the final time point of the time point sequence), and a duration (the length of the time period). For example, the time point sequence from “day 2” to “day 6” has a first time point of “day 2”, a last time point of “day 6”, and a duration of “5 days”.

Conventionally, and by international agreement, on some time scales (hours, minutes) the first time point is designated “hour 0” or “minute 0”, while on others (months, weeks, days) the first time point is designated “month 1”, “week 1”, or “day 1”. Historically and in [XML Schema], calendar years are numbered from 1 but scientific practice and [ISO 8601] counts a year 0.

Conversion between time scales is possible via formulae that specify how a time point on a coarser time scale indicates the same time interval as a time period on a finer time scale.
7.5 Distinctions

The distinction among time coordinate and duration values is significant. A time coordinate gives a location on a time scale. A duration value specifies an amount of time. For example, a meeting might occur at “3:00 p.m.” (a time coordinate) for “3 hours” (a duration value). This distinction leads to separate terms for concepts such as “day” (a time unit used with duration values) and “calendar day” (a time point indicated by a time coordinate).

There is a many-to-one relationship between time coordinates and time points. For example, “January 2009” and “month 1 of 2009” are two time coordinates for the same time point. In SBVR terms, time coordinates provide the reference scheme for time points. In human language, a thing and a reference to the thing are often not distinguished, but the difference is important in ontological reasoning.

Similarly, there is a many-to-one relationship between duration values and durations. “1 hour” and “60 minutes” are two duration values for the same duration. Again, the distinction is significant ontologically but often blurred in human discourse.

7.6 Compound Time Coordinates

Compound time coordinates are time coordinates composed from multiple time scales. Compound time coordinates are used to designate a time interval whose duration is much less than the span of a time scale. For example, to identify a particular calendar day on a time scale that spans millennia, the compound designation “3 January, 2010” is used, rather than something like “day 733 795”. Compound time coordinates originated historically as counts of the apparent cycles of the Sun, the Moon, and the stars.

Around the globe, different cultures express compound time coordinates in different ways. For example, “January 3, 2010”, “3 January 2010”, “2010-01-03”, “1/3/10”, “3/1/10” represent the same date in different parts of the world. Similarly, the same time may be expressed as “6:00 p.m.” or “18:00”. For example purposes only, this document gives dates and times in various formats. However, this specification does NOT standardize any particular way of expressing dates and times. (See ISO 8601 for such a standard.) Instead, this specification focuses on formally capturing the meaning of compound time coordinates that may be expressed in various date and time formats and in different languages.
This specification models “2010” as a time coordinate (a date time, or timestamp) on the Gregorian years scale. It models “3 January 2010” as a compound time coordinate that references multiple time scales of the Gregorian calendar. The compound time coordinate specifies time points on the Gregorian years scale, the Gregorian year of months scale, and the Gregorian month-of-days scale. Put together, these time points on these time scales indicate (by definition of “compound time point”) a particular time point on the Gregorian days scale.

Notionally, the Gregorian days scale is a time scale of granularity ‘day’ that extends indefinitely into the past and the future. “3 January 2010” can be understood as the time interval indicated by a particular time point on the Gregorian days scale. Sub clause 10.5.2 gives details about this. Sub clause 10.7 gives details about conversions between time scales.

Not all time scales can be combined in compound time coordinates. For example, “day 33 second 45” makes no sense. Clauses 11 through 13 details both the time scale combinations that form legitimate compound time coordinates, and their meaning in terms of atomic time coordinates. For example, “01:35” is a compound time coordinate (using the day of hours scale and the hour of minutes scale) that means minute of day 95 on the day of minutes scale.

The meaning of some compound time coordinates as time intervals depends upon the presence or absence of leap days. For example, the relationship of March, April, etc. on the Gregorian year of months scale to the Gregorian days scale depends upon the number of days in February. In leap years, there is an additional day in February that “bumps” March over by one day on the Gregorian days scale. Hence, a compound time coordinate such as “3 March” does not mean a single Gregorian day on the Gregorian days scale if the calendar year is not given. Instead, such a date is understood as a choice among two possible Gregorian days. The choice is called a “time set” and denoted (in this example) as “Gregorian day 62, Gregorian day 63”.

### 7.7 Compound Duration Values

Compound duration values are duration values composed from multiple time units. Examples are “3 weeks 4 days”, and “1 hour 30 minutes”. The meaning of these is durations using the smallest time unit of the compound duration values. For example, “3 weeks 4 days” means “25 days”, and “1 hour 30 minutes” means “90 minutes”.

Some compound duration values that use nominal time units are ambiguous. For example, “5 months 3 days” is ambiguous because the number of Gregorian days in a Gregorian month of year varies. Similarly, the number of Gregorian days in a Gregorian year varies according to whether the Gregorian year is a leap year. The concept “duration value set” models the ambiguity. For example, “2 years 1 day” means the duration value set (730 days, 731 days).

### 7.8 Granularity of Time Coordinates and Time Points

The granularity of a time coordinate is understood as the finest granularity of the components of the time coordinate. For example, the granularity of “3 January 2010” is ‘day’. This is important when understanding the meaning of a phrase such as “the meeting happens on 3 January 2010”. The phrase means that the meeting happens sometime during that calendar day, but does not say whether it happened at noon or 18:00 or throughout the entire calendar day because the granularity means the whole day. A phrase such as “the meeting happens at 18:00 3 January 2010” is more specific because it uses a compound time coordinate with granularity ‘hour’. It means that the meeting happens sometime within the hour indicated by “18:00”. To specify the time more precisely, add minutes or seconds or even fractional seconds to the compound time coordinate to achieve the desired temporal resolution. The granularity chosen in giving a time coordinate should be as specific as required for any particular use case.

Similarly, the time unit of a compound duration value is the least time unit of the individual atomic duration values that makeup the whole duration value. For example, “6 hours 00 minutes” has a time unit of “minute”, while “6 hours” has a time unit of “hour”.

Date-Time Vocabulary v1.3
7.9 Time Point Relationships

This specification provides relationships among time points and durations that permits comparing, adding, and subtracting them in various combinations. These are described in Clause 8 in terms of fundamental relationships (e.g., the mereological aspects of time intervals, the is before relationship between time intervals, the Allen relations), and various derived relationships.

Some duration value relationships, when applied to operands that have nominal time units, may have no meaning. For example, it makes sense to compare two duration values that are in months with each other (e.g., “5 months is greater than days”) may be meaningless since months have varying numbers of days. Whether a relationship has meaning may depend upon both the values and time units of the relationship operands. For example, “10 days is less than 1 month” is always true, even though individual Gregorian months may be 28, 29, 30, or 31 Gregorian days. Clause 15 addresses these issues.

Similarly, time relationships may be ambiguous when applied to time coordinates or time points. For example, the time interval from 8 January through 13 March (given without the Gregorian year) has one of two durations, the duration value set {65 days, 66 days}. Clause 16 discusses these complexities.

7.10 Temporal Reasoning

A major goal of the Date-Time vocabulary is to enable reasoning about time in fact models. Such reasoning presupposes that the temporal aspects of each sentence are described in the logical formulation of the sentence. This sub clause provides a summary of issues involved and describes how this specification supports temporal reasoning. A more thorough treatment is provided in sub clause 16.5.

Fundamentally, time is associated with events and with the lifecycle of things. This specification uses the term “situation” to refer to events, activities, states, etc. Linguists often categorize situations in various ways, for example as “events,” “situations,” “actions,” and so forth. This specification chooses not to categorize situations, but instead to focus on various relationships between situations and time.

Situations are said to occur, which is a primitive notion. Some situations that are conceptualized never occur. This specification uses the term ‘occurrence’ for a situation that occurs at some time in the world that is taken to be actual. When one is making a decision in the real world, what is taken to be actual is what the decision maker knows or believes about the real world. When one is analyzing a what-if situation (as in a business plan), the hypothetical elements of that situation are taken to be ‘actual.’

When something occurs, there is always a time associated with the occurrence. The time may be present, past, or future, relative to the decisions being made. This permits distinctions among different instances of some situations that recur. For example, “Oceanic Air flight 815 flies from NY to Los Angeles” may be a situation that occurs many times and for which the individual occurrences may be distinguished by time. However, many types of occurrences are not distinguishable by time. For example, multiple child births often happen at the same time, so are not distinguishable purely by time.

The basic element of time introduced in Date-Time is a time interval, a portion of time having a non-zero duration. One basic fact type relates occurrence to time interval: ‘occurrence occurs throughout time interval’. It represents the idea that the occurrence is ongoing at every point in the time interval. From it, we derive the characterizing relationship ‘occurrence occurs for time interval’ (sub clause 16.2). This fact type represents the idea that the occurrence starts at the beginning of the time interval and ends at the end of that time interval. For any occurrence, there is exactly one such time interval, called the occurrence interval.

A situation kind is a potential situation that could occur in some possible world. In a given world of interest (the world taken to be actual), each situation kind has zero, one, or more occurrences. We say that an occurrence exemplifies a situation kind. The situation kind itself is said to occur for each time interval that is the occurrence interval of an occurrence of the
situation kind. Other verbs that relate occurrences to time intervals are used to relate situation kinds to time intervals by extension. The critical difference is that an occurrence is a single actual situation and occurs for exactly one time interval; a situation kind is an abstraction of zero or more occurrences and may occur for zero or more time intervals, one for each distinguished occurrence.

Occurrences are partially ordered by the times of their occurrence – their occurrence intervals. This specification provides the basic vocabulary to describe the ordering of occurrences in sub clause 16.3. Ordering of occurrences allows some statements to be made about the ordering of situation kinds, and those verbs are defined in sub clause 16.5.

This document uses ‘proposition’ to mean the logical interpretation of a sentence. Each proposition (that is not paradoxical) corresponds to exactly one situation kind. This viewpoint was famously championed by Donald Davidson, that a proposition is a definite description of a situation ([Davidson], p. 504). This specification adopts this viewpoint. A proposition is either true or false in a given world. A situation kind either has or does not have occurrences in the universe of discourse. There is a duality in that a proposition may simultaneously have a truth value and correspond to a situation kind. A proposition is true when it corresponds to a situation kind that has at least one current occurrence.

Since a proposition describes exactly one situation kind, it is said to describe every occurrence of that situation kind as well. In many cases, this is the critical fact type: proposition describes occurrence. For example, “the books of corporation XYZ are reviewed annually at corporate headquarters” can be formally represented as:

In every fiscal year (a business-defined time period), there is an occurrence that is described by the proposition “the books of corporation XYZ are reviewed”, and that occurrence occurs at the corporate headquarters.

A statement contains explicit and implicit references to time that restrict the time interval of the situation it describes. Time is inescapable in a temporal model, it is pervasive. There is a time interval(s) associated with every fact statement, explicitly or implicitly. Explicit references are time coordinates, indexicals, and definite descriptions. References to time are implicit in the tense and aspect of verbs. This specification includes definitions of time coordinates, indexicals, and calendar terms used in statements, and formulations for the most common tenses and aspects.

Each example given above assumes that the relevant concepts are defined in domain-specific vocabularies. Such vocabularies include verb concepts, such as “flight takes off”. Human languages use many different prepositions (“at,” “on,” “in,” “during,” etc.) for relationships with time. This specification supports verb concepts with a few of these prepositions, with the expectation that business vocabularies will define verb concepts using other prepositions as appropriate for particular business domains.

### 7.11 Temporal Granularity

The granularity of a time point is important to the semantic meaning of a statement such as “Apollo 13 launched on 11 April 1970”.

Since we know from background knowledge that the launch took much less than a day, we understand this as “the occurrence ‘Apollo 13 launched’ happened within the specified calendar day”. Public records show that Apollo 13 actually launched at “14:13 EST” on that day. But the statement “Apollo 13 launched on 11 April 1970” does not give any hours or minutes; it just gives the day. It tells us that the occurrence happened sometime during the day or perhaps throughout the day. It tells us no more. If given as “Apollo 13 launched on 11 April 1970 at 14:13 EST”, and assuming the launch took less than a minute, then we would know the time with minute granularity, that is that the launch happened within the specified minute of hour.

### 7.12 Language Tense and Aspect

Most human languages incorporate tenses, to indicate whether propositions occur in the past, the present, or the future with respect to the time of utterance of the proposition. For example, “company x traded with company y” is past tense. This
specification captures the semantic meaning of tenses by associating situation kinds and occurrences with time and then indicating whether that time is past, present, or future with respect to current time. For example “company x traded with company y” is understood as “the occurrence ‘company x trades with company y’ is in the past”. This approach to formalizing human sentences about tense follows [Parsons].

Many human languages also incorporate simple, progressive, and perfect aspects. Simple aspect applies to activities independent of whether they are ongoing or completed. For example “company x traded with company y”, meaning that the two companies did trade, but does not say whether the trading is ongoing or completed. Progressive aspect means that an activity was ongoing or is ongoing or will be ongoing. For example “company x was trading with company y”, meaning that the trading was continuing.

Perfect aspect indicates that an activity is accomplished. For example, “company x will have traded with company y” says that at some time in the future, the trading activity will be achieved. The difference between the simple and perfect aspects is shown by comparing the phrases “John writes a book” and “John has written a book”. The second example, using “has written” applies the perfect aspect to indicate that the writing is complete. The first example, using “writes” uses the simple aspect. It does not say whether the writing is finished.

The progressive and perfect aspects may be combined to indicate that an activity both was ongoing, and is achieved. For example, “John has been writing a book” indicates that the writing occurred over time and the writing is completed or achieved.

In this specification, the progressive and perfect aspects are formally captured by characteristics of situation kinds and occurrences: “situation kind is continuing” and “situation kind is accomplished”. Thus, any situation kind may be progressive or not, and may be perfected or not. Both are independent of whether the situation kind is in the past, the present, or in the future.

Human languages enable combinations of tense and aspect. The following table gives a grammatical term and shows an example for each combination. The table assumes a domain vocabulary has a verb concept “company x trades with company y”. The table shows semantic concepts of tense and aspect using English syntax for illustration purposes only. Different natural languages use different syntaxes to express these semantics. Some natural languages do not distinguish each combination shown in the table. Annex E contains an informative formal analysis of English language syntax for tense and aspect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Aspect</th>
<th>Simple</th>
<th>Progressive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Progressive &amp; Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>past simple company x traded with company y</td>
<td>past progressive company x was trading with company y</td>
<td>past perfect, pluperfect company x had traded with company y</td>
<td>pluperfect progressive company x had been trading with company y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>past progressive company x was trading with company y</td>
<td>past perfect, pluperfect company x had traded with company y</td>
<td>pluperfect progressive company x had been trading with company y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>present simple company x trades with company y</td>
<td>present perfect company x has traded with company y</td>
<td>present perfect progressive company x has been trading with company y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>future simple company x will trade with company y</td>
<td>future perfect company x will have traded with company y</td>
<td>future perfect progressive company x will have been trading with company y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.1 - Language Tense and Aspect
These combinations can be employed in business rules, as shown in these examples. They presume a domain vocabulary verb concept “company₁ merges with company₂”.

1. “If some company₁ merged with the company x …” – asking whether a merger happened in the past, independent of whether the trading is ongoing, completed, or both.
2. “If some company₁ was merging with the company x …” – asking whether a merger was continuing over some time in the past.
3. “If some company₁ will have merged with the company x …” – asking whether a merger will be accomplished in the future.
4. “If some company₁ will have been merging with the company x …” – asking whether a completed merger will be ongoing in the future.

One intended use case for these many combinations is annotation of existing text, as in [TimeML].

Sub clause 16.9 provides vocabulary for formulating tenses and aspects, and describes how these may be combined in rules.

### 7.13 Domain Vocabularies and Time

This specification provides foundational date and time concepts that are intended for use in domain-specific business vocabularies and rules. Annex C gives a complete example. This sub clause shows an abbreviated example in order to introduce how a domain vocabulary can build on this Date-Time Vocabulary.

Consider the example of a contract that has a “start date,” a “contract length,” a “contract term,” and a “payment schedule.” A business vocabulary might specify these as follows:

---

**Example Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Concept:</th>
<th>terminological dictionary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**contract**  
Definition: Agreement between two companies for one to provide goods or services, and for the other to pay for those goods or services

**start date**  
General Concept: calendar day  
Note: The granularity of a domain vocabulary time concept is defined via the time point kind. Defining ‘start date’ as a calendar day means that the granularity of ‘start date’ is ‘day’ rather than ‘week’ or ‘month’, etc.

Note: Domain vocabulary time concepts should be defined as kinds of ‘time point’ or ‘duration’, rather than ‘time coordinate’ or ‘duration value’. Actual ‘time points’ and ‘duration values’ can be specified as definite descriptions as well as ‘time coordinates’ and ‘duration values’.
**contract has start date**

**contract length**
- **General Concept:** duration
- **Necessity:** The granularity of 'contract length' is 'day'.

**contract has contract length**

**contract term**
- **Definition:** Time interval during which the goods should be delivered or the services provided.
- **Necessity:** The time interval of a contract is from the start date of the contract for the contract length.

**contract has contract term**

**payment schedule**
- **Definition:** schedule for contract payments in which the time span is the contract term, and the repeat duration is 1 month.

**contract has payment schedule**

**contract payment**
- **Definition:** amount to be paid according to the payment schedule.

**contract has contract payment**

A business rule example might be:

> It is obligatory that a contract payment be paid on each time table entry of the payment schedule.

The example is simplified since it does not specify all the details that would exist in a real contract. For example, it does not indicate who makes the payment or who receives the payment, nor does it allow for payments other than monthly. But it does illustrate some basic ideas:

1. Defining domain vocabulary concepts that make use of time points (start date), durations (contract length), time intervals (contract term), and schedules (payment schedule).
2. Using Definitions (start date, contract term, payment schedule) and Necessities (contract term) to precisely capture the semantic meaning of domain concepts.
3. Specifying business rules that build upon this Date-Time Vocabulary and domain vocabularies to model business requirements.

Consider a business rule such as “It is obligatory that the contract length of each contract is less than 1 year.” Notice that it compares ‘contract length’ to ‘1 year’. It does not quantify over ‘year’ because time is a mass noun concept. In contrast, a rule such as “It is obligatory that each rental has at most 3 additional drivers” uses quantification because ‘additional driver’ is a countable noun concept. Mass noun concepts are measured (possibly in fractional units of measure) while countable noun concepts are counted in whole units.
7.14 Enabling Other Calendars

The world has many different time-keeping and calendar systems. Specialized business calendars include fiscal calendars, tax calendars, and manufacturing calendars. Examples of historical, religious, and cultural calendars include the Julian calendar, various lunar calendars, and the 14-year calendar cycle of some Asian nations. Examples of time-keeping systems are those based on mariners’ “bells”, and religious “vespers”.

This specification defines vocabularies for the standard, globally recognized “Universal Date Coordinated” (UTC) time system, and the Gregorian Calendar. In addition, this specification provides a Time Infrastructure Vocabulary that enables others to define business domain-specific, cultural, religious, or historical calendars and time schemas. The Time of Day Vocabulary and Gregorian Calendar Vocabulary show how time and calendar systems can be defined using the foundational concepts of the Time Infrastructure Vocabulary. Specifying time systems and calendars in terms of the foundational concepts of the Time Infrastructure Vocabulary enables conversions between different calendars and different time keeping schemas.

7.15 Precise and Nominal Time Units

This specification distinguishes precise time units from nominal time units, as defined in sub clause 8.4. Precise time units are measurement units (Annex D.3.2) in the sense of VIM: quantities of quantity kind ‘duration’ that are defined by convention. All precise time units are defined (sub clause 8.4) in terms of the SI ‘second’: picosecond, nanosecond, millisecond, microsecond, minute, hour, day, week.

Two other time units – ‘month’ and ‘year’ – are called nominal time units. The duration of ‘year’ varies, depending upon whether a given calendar year includes a leap day. The duration of ‘month’ varies by definition. These time units are mentioned but not formally defined in [SI]. This specification formally defines these nominal time units (sub clause 8.4) in terms of sets of durations. For example, ‘year’ is defined as the set \{365\, days, 366\, days\}. Sub clauses 11.5 and 11.6 develop algorithms that specify the meaning of multiples of these nominal time units. For example, 2 years is \{730\, days, 731\, days\}, not \{730\, days, 732\, days\} because 2 calendar years contains just one leap day. This method enables well-defined results for comparisons such as “2 years > 730 days” and arithmetic expressions such as “4 years – 3 months”, which is \{1369\, days, 1370 days, 1371 days, 1372 days\}. This permits logical reasoning systems to infer results that otherwise would be unreachable.

Domain-specific vocabularies may define their own precise time units and nominal time units as required by particular business conventions.

7.16 Temporal Aspects of Rules

Broadly speaking, all business rules define, constrain, or guide situations in some way. Some rules require a temporal relationship among situations, for example forbidding two situations from occurring concurrently:

A person who is driving must not be texting.

SBVR Clause 10 states that rules apply to possible worlds, and that each possible world captures a ‘fact population’. As time progresses, the fact population evolves. Rules, such as the example given above, are evaluated with respect to an individual fact population at a specific time, the reference or current time.

In the example given above, the verbs ‘is driving’ and ‘be texting’ use the present progressive tense as described in sub clause 16.7: the activities are unfinished at some reference time interval. The “reference time interval” is understood to be any time that the rule is considered. This can be made explicit with the following wording, which is shown here to make the meaning clear. The previous phrasing is shorter, clearer, and recommended.

A person who is driving for some time interval must not be texting during the time interval.
Unless otherwise stated, rules apply at all times. To limit a rule to some **time interval**, a **behavioral rule** can state when it applies. For example:

*After January 1, 2012*, each **expense** that **costs more than $1,000** must be approved by a **director**.

The examples given above are all behavioral (deontic) rules: prohibitions and obligations. By their nature, structural (alethic) rules (necessities, impossibilities) apply to all times in all possible worlds, but they can still specify relationships among the times of situations. For example:

It is necessary that the **birth date** of each **person** is after the **birth dates** of the **parents** of the **person**.

The first two example rules, above, apply to **occurrences** of two different **situation kinds**. When behavioral and structural rules pertain to multiple **occurrences** of a single **situation kind**, the rules may be abbreviated. For example:

It is prohibited that a **renter** has **possession of** more than one **rental car**.

What is prohibited is a **possible world** in which a renter possesses multiple rental cars. This is equivalent to the following rule, which is not recommended because it is much more complex, and significantly harder to understand:

It is prohibited that a **renter** has **possession of** a **rental car**₁ at a **time interval**₁ and the **renter** has **possession of** a **rental car**₂ at a **time interval**₂ and **time interval**₁ overlaps **time interval**₂.

SBVR Clause 10 distinguishes between **static** constraints and **dynamic** constraints. Static constraints “impose[s] a restriction on what fact populations are possible or permitted, for each fact population taken individually.” [SBVR sub clause 10.1.1.2] Dynamic constraints “impose[s] a restriction on transitions between fact populations.” [ibid] The examples given above are static constraints. The previous example may also be stated as a dynamic constraint:

It is prohibited that a **renter** **takes possession of** a **rental car**₁ **while the renter has possession of** a **rental car**₂.

... where the verb concept ‘**renter takes possession of rental car**’ uses the simple present tense to identify an event and ‘**renter has possession of rental car**’ uses the present progressive tense to indicate an ongoing situation. See sub clause 16.9 for a discussion of the tense and aspect of verbs.

Domain modelers have the choice of writing static or dynamic constraints, but static constraints are recommended in SBVR because static constraints capture the complete business requirement, whereas dynamic constraints tend to address specific aspects of the business practice – possibly ignoring other aspects. In the last example, there might be other ways that a renter could end up possessing two rental cars, but the example rule only addresses one such way.
8 Time Infrastructure (normative)

8.1 General

Many time schemes and calendars are in use to support a variety of business needs, and due to historical, cultural, and religious traditions. The Time Infrastructure vocabulary provides a foundation for defining any time keeping or calendar system. Relating different time and calendar schemes to each other is made possible by using the foundational concepts provided in this clause.

8.2 The Time Axis and Time Intervals

The principal concept in this sub clause is time interval. This concept is used to define many of the business terms that are specified in other clauses of this specification. Formally, time interval is a primitive concept – an intuitive notion that does not have a mathematical definition. Its properties are defined by a set of axioms that are presented here as SBVR definitions and Necessities with matching CLIF and OCL statements. Much of this clause is the presentation of those axioms.
**time interval**

**Definition:** segment of the **time axis**, a location in time

**Note:** Every **time interval** has a beginning, an end, and a **duration**, even if not known. Every **time interval** is "finite", a bounded segment of the **Time Axis**. The beginning or end of a **time interval** may be defined by reference to events that **occur for** a time interval that is not known.

**Note:** **Time intervals** may be 'indefinite', meaning that their beginning is 'primordiality' or their end is 'perpetuity', or both ('eternity'). This vocabulary assumes that indefinite **time intervals** exist and have some **duration**, but their **duration** is unknown.

**Reference Scheme:** an absolute time coordinate that **refers to** the **time interval**

**Note:** **Absolute time coordinates** are related to calendars, and are introduced in clause 10.6.

**Example:** The lifetime of Henry V.

**Example:** The day whose Gregorian calendar date is **September 11, 2001**.

### 8.2.1 The Whole-Part Relationship Among Time Intervals

The mereological principles described in Annex D.4 apply to **time intervals**.

![Mereology as Applied to Time Intervals](image)

**time interval** \(_1\) **is part of** **time interval** \(_2\)

**Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_2\) **includes** **time interval** \(_1\)

**Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_1\) **is in** **time interval** \(_2\)

**Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_1\) **in** **time interval** \(_2\)

**Definition:** **Time interval** \(_2\) is a component of **time interval** \(_1\). Every instant in **time interval** \(_1\) is also in **time interval** \(_2\). Everything that happens in **time interval** \(_1\) happens in **time interval** \(_2\).

**Note:** Like the concept **time interval** itself, this relationship is also primitive – intuitive. It is a mathematical ordering of **time intervals** by containment.

**CLIF Axiom:**

```
(forall (t1 t2)
  (if ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t1 t2)
```

Date-Time Vocabulary v1.3
(and ("time interval" t1) ("time interval" t2) 
    ("thing1 is part of thing2" t1 t2)))

Note: The OCL operation signature implies this constraint.

Note: This relationship is based on the mereological verb concept 'part is part of whole' (Annex D.4). All the axioms cited there for 'part is part of whole' apply to 'time interval1 is part of time interval2'.

Note: The axioms of reflexivity, anti symmetry, and transitivity (Annex D.4) make 'time interval1 is part of time interval2' a partial ordering relationship on time intervals. The relationship is partial because two arbitrary time intervals might be disjoint or might overlap, so that there is no part-whole relationship between them.

**time interval1 overlaps time interval2**

Note: This relationship is the mereological verb concept 'thing1 overlaps thing2' in Annex D.4.

CLIF Axiom: 
(forall (t1 t2) 
   (if ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" t1 t2) 
       (and ("time interval" t1) ("time interval" t2) 
            ("thing1 overlaps thing2" t1 t2) )))

**time interval1 is a proper part of time interval2**

Note: This relationship is based on the mereological verb concept 'part is a proper part of whole' (Annex D.4). See the definition of that concept for details. For time intervals, stronger supplementation axioms are given in 8.2.6.

CLIF Axiom: 
(forall (t1 t2) 
   (if ("time interval1 is proper part of time interval2" t1 t2) 
       (and ("time interval" t1) ("time interval" t2) 
            ("thing1 is proper part of thing2" t1 t2) )))

Note: The OCL operation signature implies this constraint.

Note: A proper part is a part that is not the whole.

Axiom: There is no smallest time interval.

Necessity: For each time interval1, there is at least one time interval2 that is a proper part of time interval1.

CLIF Axiom: 
(forall (ti1 "time interval") 
   (exists (ti2 "time interval") 
      ("proper part of" ti2 ti1 )))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval' _
   inv: self._'time interval1' is proper part of _'time interval2':::_'time interval1'->notEmpty()

Note: This axiom requires the Open World Assumption: Things can exist without being explicitly included in a population.

### 8.2.2 The Temporal Ordering Relationship

A fundamental property of time intervals is the totally ordered ‘is before’ relationship, which defines temporal ordering.
**Figure 8.2 - Temporal Ordering**

**time interval** \(_1\) **is before** **time interval** \(_2\)

- **Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_2\) **is after** **time interval** \(_1\)
- **Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_1\) < **time interval** \(_2\)
- **Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_2\) > **time interval** \(_1\)
- **Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_1\) **precedes** **time interval** \(_2\)
- **Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_2\) **is preceded by** **time interval** \(_1\)
- **Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_2\) **follows** **time interval** \(_1\)
- **Synonymous Form:** **time interval** \(_1\) **is followed by** **time interval** \(_2\)

**Definition:** **time interval** \(_1\) **is before** **time interval** \(_2\) ends before/when **time interval** \(_2\) starts.

**Example:** In any given calendar, the **time interval** identified by 2010 is before the **time interval** identified by 2011.

**Note:** This relationship is also primitive – intuitive. It is a mathematical ordering of **time intervals** by position on the **Time Axis**. **Is before** captures the intuition of the direction of time, of past and future: if \(x\) is before \(y\), then \(y\) is in the future relative to \(x\) and \(x\) is in the past relative to \(y\).

**CLIF Axiom:**

\[
(\forall (t1 \ t2) \\
(\text{if } ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t2) \\
\quad \text{and } ("time interval" t1) ("time interval" t2))))
\]

**Note:** The OCL operation signature implies this constraint.

**Note:** The actual determination of the ordering of time intervals may be based on direct observation, on calendar knowledge, on historical knowledge, or on practical knowledge. One can see the order in which two vehicles enter an intersection and infer the corresponding facts about the **time intervals** involved (observation). One can know from calendar rules that November 11, 1918 was before September 1, 1939. One can know from the reports of others (historical knowledge) that railroads were in use for many years before automobiles first appeared. Knowing that every airplane takes off before it lands (practical knowledge), and that a particular airplane has taken off and landed, one can infer that the **time interval** of the takeoff was before the **time interval** of the landing. And, of course, these knowledge elements can be mixed in determining **time interval** ordering. When such knowledge elements are formalized as facts and rules in an ontology, the inferences about the ordering of **time intervals** can be automated.

**Note:** The following axioms define the properties of this primitive concept.

**Axiom:** **time interval** \(_1\) **is before** **time interval** \(_2\) can only be true of **time intervals** that do not overlap.
Necessity: If a time interval \(1\) overlaps a time interval \(2\), then the time interval \(1\) is not before the time interval \(2\).

CLIF Axiom: 
\[
\text{(forall (t1 t2) (if ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" t1 t2) (not ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t2)) (not ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t2 t1))) )}
\]

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
forall(t2 | self.overlaps(t2) implies not self._'is before'(t2))

Corollary:

Necessity: If a time interval \(1\) overlaps a time interval \(2\), then the time interval \(1\) is not after the time interval \(2\).

Note: This follows from the fact that 'time interval1 overlaps time interval2' is symmetric.

Axiom: For any two time intervals that do not overlap, one is before the other.

Necessity: If a time interval \(1\) does not overlap a time interval \(2\), then the time interval \(1\) is before the time interval \(2\) or the time interval \(2\) is before the time interval \(1\).

CLIF Axiom: 
\[
\text{(forall ((t1 "time interval") (t2 "time interval")) (if (not ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" t1 t2)) (or ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t2) ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t2 t1)))))}
\]

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
forall(t2 | not self.overlaps(t2) and (self._'is before'(t2) or t2._'is before'(self)))

Corollary (irreflexivity): No time interval is before itself.

Necessity: A given time interval is not before the time interval.

CLIF Axiom: 
\[
\text{(forall ((t1 "time interval")) (not ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t1)) )}
\]

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: not self._'is before'(self)

Axiom of asymmetry: No time interval is both before and after the same time interval.

Necessity: If a time interval \(1\) is before a time interval \(2\), then the time interval \(2\) is not before the time interval \(1\).

CLIF Axiom: 
\[
\text{(forall (t1 t2) (if ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t2) (not ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t2 t1)))))}
\]

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
forall(t2 |
Corollary (totality): For any two time intervals \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \), exactly one of the following is true:

- \( t_1 \) overlaps \( t_2 \)
- \( t_1 \) is before \( t_2 \)
- \( t_2 \) is before \( t_1 \)

Necessity: Each \( \text{time interval}_1 \) overlaps each \( \text{time interval}_2 \) and \( \text{time interval}_1 \) is not before \( \text{time interval}_2 \) and \( \text{time interval}_2 \) is not before \( \text{time interval}_1 \), or \( \text{time interval}_1 \) is before \( \text{time interval}_2 \) and \( \text{time interval}_2 \) does not overlap \( \text{time interval}_1 \) and \( \text{time interval}_2 \) is not before \( \text{time interval}_1 \), or \( \text{time interval}_2 \) is before \( \text{time interval}_1 \) and \( \text{time interval}_1 \) does not overlap \( \text{time interval}_2 \) and \( \text{time interval}_1 \) is not before \( \text{time interval}_2 \).

Axiom of transitivity: Every \( \text{time interval} \) that is before a given \( \text{time interval} \) is also before every \( \text{time interval} \) that is after the given \( \text{time interval} \).

Necessity: If a \( \text{time interval}_1 \) is before a \( \text{time interval}_2 \) and the \( \text{time interval}_2 \) is before a \( \text{time interval}_3 \) then the \( \text{time interval}_1 \) is before the \( \text{time interval}_3 \).

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
  (if
    (and
      ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t2)
      ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t2 t3))
    ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t3)
  ))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
  inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
    forAll(t2 | (self._'is before'(t2)
      and not self._'is before'(t2)
      and not t2._'is before'(self))
    or (self._'is before'(t2)
      and not self._'is before'(t2)
      and not t2._'is before'(self))
    or (t2._'is before'(self)
      and not self._'is before'(t2)
      and not self._'is before'(t2))
  )

Axiom: Every time interval that is before a given time interval is also before every time interval that is after the given time interval.
self._'is before'(t2)  
and t2._'is before'(t3) 
implies self._'is before'(t3))

The preceding 3 axioms specify that ‘time interval₁ is before time interval₂’ is anti-reflexive, weakly antisymmetric, and transitive. The relationship does not apply to all pairs of time intervals. This characterizes a kind of partial ordering on time intervals.

### 8.2.3 The Allen Relations

In a 1983 paper [Allen], James F. Allen asserted that there are exactly thirteen ways in which an ordered pair of time intervals can be related. His Figure 2, showing these relationships, is reproduced below.

![Figure 8.3 - Allen's Original Diagram of the 13 Time Relationships](image)

**Figure 8.3 - Allen's Original Diagram of the 13 Time Relationships**

According to Thomas Alspaugh [Alspaugh], these relations are distinct ("because no pair of definite intervals can be related by more than one of these relationships"), exhaustive ("because any pair of definite intervals are described by one of the relations"), and qualitative, rather than quantitative, ("because no numeric time spans are considered").

The word ‘properly’ is used in the terms for some of the Allen relations below, in order to distinguish those relations from the more general relations defined in 8.2.1 and 8.2.2. In each case of terminology clash, the Allen’s term is narrower. The business use of the general term – before, after, part of, includes, during, overlaps – almost always means the more general relationship.

The Allen relations are independent: none is entailed by another and none is defined in terms of the others. They are, however, all defined here in terms of the two fundamental relationships: ‘part of’ and ‘before’.

The ‘properly before’ and ‘meets’ relations are mutually exclusive. The primitive relationship ‘before’ subsumes both.

Allen’s ‘before’ concept is designated here as ‘properly before’ to indicate there is necessarily an intervening time interval.

The ‘properly overlaps’ relation distinguishes the case in which there is a part of each time interval that is not a part of the other from all the cases in which one time interval is entirely a part of the other. The general ‘overlaps’ relation subsumes all of them. ‘Properly overlaps’ describes the first time interval as starting earlier than the second starts and ending earlier than the second ends, whereas ‘is properly overlapped by’ describes the first time interval as starting later than the second starts, and ending later than the second ends.
The ‘properly during,’ ‘starts’, and ‘finishes’ relationships are mutually exclusive. The general ‘part of’ relationship subsumes all of them. They are distinguished by the temporal relationship of the included time interval to the supplementary parts of the whole.

![UML Diagram of Allen Relations](image)

**Figure 8.4 - UML Diagram of Allen Relations**

**time interval**<sub>1</sub> is properly before **time interval**<sub>2</sub>

**Synonymous Form:**

**time interval**<sub>2</sub> is properly after **time interval**<sub>1</sub>

**Definition:**

**time interval**<sub>1</sub> is before **time interval**<sub>2</sub> and some **time interval**<sub>3</sub> is after **time interval**<sub>1</sub> and is before **time interval**<sub>2</sub>

**Description:**

**time interval**<sub>1</sub> is before **time interval**<sub>2</sub> and there is some time interval between them.

**CLIF Definition:**

\[(\forall t_1 t_2) (\text{iff} \("time interval" t_1 \text{ is properly before time interval2" t_1 t_2}\)) \]

\[(\text{and}) \]

\[\("time interval" t_1 \text{ after time interval2" t_2}\) \]

\[\("time interval" t_1 \text{ is before time interval2" t_1 t_2}\) \]

\[(\exists t_3)\]
(and ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t3)
  ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t3 t2))
)

OCL Definition:
context _'time interval'
def: _'time interval1 is properly before time interval2' (t2: _'time interval'): Boolean =
  self._'is before'(t2) and
  _'time interval'.allInstances->exists(t3 | self._'is before'(t3) and t3._'is before'(t2))

Example: In any given calendar, 2009 is properly before 2011

**time interval₁ equals time interval₂**

Synonymous Form:  
**time interval₁ is the same as time interval₂**

Synonymous Form:  
**time interval₁ = time interval₂**

General Concept:  
thing₁ is thing₂

Definition:  
the time interval₁ is part of the time interval₂ and the time interval₂ is part of the time interval₁

CLIF Definition:  
(forall (t1 t2)
  (iff ("time interval1 equals time interval2" t1 t2)
   (and ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t1 t2)
     ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t2 t1))
   ))

OCL Definition:
context _'time interval'  
def: _'time interval1 equals time interval2' (t2: _'time interval'): Boolean =
  self._'is part of'(t2) and t2._'is part of'(self)

Note: That is, the mereology axiom of antisymmetry in Annex D.4 is really the formal definition of ‘equals.’ Two time intervals are equal if and only if each is part of the other.

Note: SBVR uses the verb is for this relationship, but the equals relationship here is a specialization of ‘thing is thing’ for time intervals.

Necessity: A time interval₁ equals a time interval₂ if and only if time interval₁ is time interval₂

CLIF Axiom:  
(forall (ti1 ti2)
  (if (and ("time interval" ti1) ("time interval" ti2))
    (iff ("time interval equals time interval" ti1 ti2)
      ("thing1 is thing2" ti1 ti2))
    ))

OCL Constraint:
context _'time interval'  
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->>
  forall(t2 |  
    self.equals(t2) implies self.is(t2)  
    and (self.is(t2) implies self.equals(t2))
  )

Example: January 2011 through December 2011 equals 2011

**time interval₁ meets time interval₂**

Synonymous Form:  
**time interval₂ is met by time interval₁**

Synonymous Form:  
**time interval₁ immediately precedes time interval₂**

Synonymous Form:  
**time interval₂ immediately follows time interval₁**

Definition:  
**time interval₁ is before time interval₂ and no time interval₃ is after time interval₁ and is before time interval₂**
Description: \textit{time interval}_1 \textit{is before} \textit{time interval}_2 and there is no time interval between them: \textit{time interval}_2 starts at the instant \textit{time interval}_1 \text{ ends.}

CLIF Definition: 
(forall (t1 t2) 
  (iff ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t1 t2) 
    (and 
      ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t2) 
      (not (exists (t3) 
        (and ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t3) 
          ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t3 t2)) 
        ))) )
)

OCL Definition: 
context _'time interval' 
def: _'time interval1 meets time interval2'(t2: _'time interval'): Boolean = 
  self._'is before'(t2) and 
  not _'time interval'.allInstances->
xists(t3 | self._'is before'(t3) and t3._'is before'(t2))

Example: 2009 meets 2010

\textit{time interval}_1, \textit{properly overlaps time interval}_2

Synonymous Form: \textit{time interval}_2 \textit{is properly overlapped by time interval}_1

Definition: \textit{time interval}_1 \textit{overlaps time interval}_2 and some part of \textit{time interval}_1 \textit{is before time interval}_2

Description: Part of \textit{time interval}_1 is before \textit{time interval}_2 and the rest of \textit{time interval}_1 is also part of \textit{time interval}_2.

CLIF Definition: 
(forall (t1 t2) 
  (iff ("time interval1 properly overlaps time interval2" t1 t2) 
    (and 
      ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" t1 t2) 
      (exists (t3) 
        (and ("time interval1 is proper part of time interval2" t3 t1) 
          ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t3 t2)) 
        ))) )

OCL Definition: 
context _'time interval' 
def: _'time interval1 properly overlaps time interval2' (t2: _'time interval'): Boolean = 
  self.overlaps(t2) and 
  'time interval'.allInstances->
xists(t3 | t3._'is a proper part of'(self) and t3._'is before'(t2))

Example: July 2010 through February 2011 properly overlaps January 2011 through March 2011

\textit{time interval}_1, \textit{is properly during time interval}_2

Synonymous Form: \textit{time interval}_2 \textit{properly includes time interval}_1

Definition: \textit{time interval}_1 \textit{is part of time interval}_2 and some part of \textit{time interval}_2 is before \textit{time interval}_1 and some part of \textit{time interval}_2 is after \textit{time interval}_1

CLIF Definition: 
(forall (t1 t2) 
  (iff ("time interval1 is properly during time interval2" t1 t2) 
    (and 
      ("time interval1 is proper part of time interval2" t1 t2) 
      (not (exists (t3) 
        (and ("time interval1 is proper part of time interval2" t1 t3) 
          ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t3 t2)) 
        ))) )
)

OCL Definition: 
context _'time interval' 
def: _'time interval1 is properly during time interval2'(t2: _'time interval'): Boolean = 
  self.isProperPartOf(t2) and 
  not _'time interval'.allInstances->
xists(t3 | t3._'is a proper part of'(self) and t3._'is before'(t2))

Example: July 2010 through February 2011 is properly during January 2011 through March 2011
(not ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t1 t2))
(not ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t1 t2))
))

OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _'time interval1 is properly during time interval2' (t2: _'time interval'): Boolean =
  self._'is a proper part of'(t2) and
  'time interval'.allInstances->
  exists(t3, t4 |
    t3._'is a proper part of'(t2) and t4._'is a proper part of'(t2) and
    t3._'is before'(self) and self._'is before'(t4))

Example: **July 2010 is properly during 2010**

time interval\textsubscript{1} \textit{starts} time interval\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: **time interval\textsubscript{2} is started by time interval\textsubscript{1}**

Definition: **time interval\textsubscript{1} is a proper part of time interval\textsubscript{2} and no part of time interval\textsubscript{2} is before time interval\textsubscript{1}**

Description: **time interval\textsubscript{1} is a proper part of time interval\textsubscript{2} and they both start at the same instant.**

CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2)
  (iff ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t1 t2)
    (and
      ("time interval1 is proper part of time interval2" t1 t2)
      (not (exists (t3)
        (and ("time interval1 is proper part of time interval2" t3 t2)
          ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t3 t1))))
    )))

OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _'time interval1 starts time interval2' (t2: _'time interval'): Boolean =
  self._'is a proper part of'(t2) and
  not 'time interval'.allInstances->
  exists(t3 | t3._'is a proper part of'(t2) and t3._'is before'(self))

Example: **January 2010 starts 2010**

time interval\textsubscript{1} \textit{finishes} time interval\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: **time interval\textsubscript{2} is finished by time interval\textsubscript{1}**

Definition: **time interval\textsubscript{1} is a proper part of time interval\textsubscript{2} and no part of time interval\textsubscript{2} is after time interval\textsubscript{1}**

Description: **time interval\textsubscript{1} is a proper part of time interval\textsubscript{2} and they both end at the same instant.**

CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2)
  (iff ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t1 t2)
    (and
      ("time interval1 is proper part of time interval2" t1 t2)
      (not (exists (t3)
        (and ("time interval1 is proper part of time interval2" t3 t2)
          ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t3))))
    )))
8.2.4 Additional Time Interval Relationships

As described in [Alspaugh], the basic Allen relationships can be combined in $2^{13}$ (8192) ways. This sub clause defines a few of these “combination” relationships that have particular value to everyday and business uses.

Figure 8.5 - Additional Time Interval Relationships
**time interval**₁ starts before **time interval**₂

Synonymous Form: **time interval**₂ starts after **time interval**₁

Definition: some **time interval**₃ is part of **time interval**₁ and is before **time interval**₂

Description: **Time interval**₁ starts before **time interval**₂.

CLIF Definition: 
(forall (t₁ t₂)
  (iff ("time interval1 starts before time interval2" t₁ t₂)
    (exists (t₃)
      (and
        ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t₃ t₂)
        ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t₃ t₁)))))

OCL Definition: 
context _'time interval'
def: _'starts before'(t₂: _'time interval'): Boolean =
  'time interval'.allInstances->
  exists(t₃ |
    t₃._'is part of'(self) and t₃._'is before'(t₂))

Example: 2009 starts before 2010

Example: 2010 starts before February 2010

**time interval**₁ starts with **time interval**₂

Synonymous Form: **time interval**₁ starts when **time interval**₂ starts

Definition: **time interval**₁ starts **time interval**₂ or **time interval**₂ starts **time interval**₁ or **time interval**₁ equals **time interval**₂

Description: The two **time intervals** start together, but either may end first. All of the following relationships are possible:

![Figure 8.6 - time interval₁ starts with time interval₂](image)

CLIF Definition: 
(forall (t₁ t₂)
  (iff ("time interval1 starts with time interval2" t₁ t₂)
    (or
      ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t₁ t₂)
      ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t₂ t₁)
      ("time interval1 equals time interval2" t₁ t₂))))

OCL Definition: 
context _'time interval'
def: _'starts with时间 interval2'(t₂: _'time interval'): Boolean =
  self.starts(t₂) or t₂.starts(self) or self.equals(t₂)

Necessity: If **time interval**₁ starts with **time interval**₂ then **time interval**₂ starts with **time interval**₁
time interval₁ starts during time interval₂

Synonymous Form: time interval₁ starts within time interval₂

Definition: some time interval₃ starts time interval₁ and is part of time interval₂

Description: The start of time interval₁ is within time interval₂.

CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2) (iff ("time interval1 starts during time interval2" t1 t2) (exists (t3) (and ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t3 t1) ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t3 t2)))))

OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _starts during(t2: _'time interval'): Boolean = _'time interval'.allInstances->exists(t3 | t3._'is part of'(t2) and t3.starts(self))

Example: Fiscal Year 2015 starts within Calendar Year 2014

Note: In most uses of this verb concept, one of the time intervals involved is described by an occurrence.

time interval₁ finishes with time interval₂

Synonymous Form: time interval₁ finishes when time interval₂ finishes

Definition: time interval₁ finishes time interval₂ or time interval₂ finishes time interval₁ or time interval₁ equals time interval₂

Description: Either time interval may start first, but they finish together. All of the following relationships are possible:

Figure 8.7 - time interval₁ finishes with time interval₂

CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2) (iff ("time interval1 finishes with time interval2" t1 t2) (or ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t1 t2) ("time interval2 finishes time interval1" t2 t1))))
OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _'time interval1 finishes with time interval2'(t2: _'time interval'): Boolean = t1.finishes(t2) or t2.finishes(t1) or t1.equals(t2)

Necessity: If _'time interval1 finishes with time interval2' then _'time interval2 finishes with time interval1' CLIF Axiom: (forall ((t1 "time interval") (t2 "time interval")) (if (_'time interval1 finishes with time interval2' t1 t2) (_'time interval2 finishes with time interval1' t2 t1))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 | self._'time interval1 finishes with time interval2'(t2) implies t2._'time interval1 finishes with time interval2'(self)

**time interval1 finishes after time interval2**
Definition: some _'time interval3' is part of _'time interval1' and is after _'time interval2' CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2) (iff (_'time interval1 finishes after time interval2' t1 t2) (exists (t3) (and (_'time interval1 is before time interval2' t2 t3) (_'time interval1 is part of time interval2' t3 t1)))))

OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _finishes after'(t2: _'time interval'): Boolean = _'time interval'.allInstances->exists(t3 | t3._'is part of'(self) and t2._'is before'(t3))

Example: **2010 finishes after February 2010**

**time interval1 ends during time interval2**
Synonymous Form: _'time interval1 ends within time interval2' Definition: some _'time interval3' finishes _'time interval1' and is part of _'time interval2' Description: The end of _'time interval1' is within _'time interval2'.

CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2) (iff (_'time interval1 ends during time interval2' t1 t2) (exists (t3) (and (_'time interval1 finishes time interval2' t3 t1) (_'time interval1 is part of time interval2' t3 t2)))))

OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _'ends during'(t2: _'time interval'): Boolean = _'time interval'.allInstances->exists(t3 | t3._'is part of'(t2) and t3.finishes(self))
Example: The grace period will end in December.

Note: In most uses of this verb concept, one of the time intervals involved is described by an occurrence.

**time interval₁ is between time interval₂ and time interval₃**

Synonymous Form: **time interval₁ is between time interval₂ to time interval₃**

Definition: **time interval₁ is after time interval₂ and time interval₁ is before time interval₃**

CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
and ("time interval" t1) ("time interval" t2) ("time interval" t3)
("time interval1 precedes time interval2" t2 t1)
("time interval1 precedes time interval2" t1 t3) ) ))

OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _'time interval1 is between time interval2 and time interval3' (t2: _'time interval', t3: _'time interval' ): Boolean = t2.precedes(self) and self.precedes(t3)

Example: **July 2012 is between June 2012 to August 2012**

### 8.2.5 Time Interval Sum

This sub clause describes the “sum” of two **time intervals** – the smallest time interval that contains both of them.

This concept of ‘sum’ is generalized. It may be said to represent the ‘convex hull’ of the two intervals, and it may contain intervals that lie between them. It is particularly useful, however, when t₁ meets t₂ or t₂ meets t₁, i.e., in those cases where t₁ and t₂ are disjoint and there is no **time interval** between them.

**time interval₁ plus time interval₂ is time interval₃**

Synonymous Form: **time interval₁ + time interval₂ = time interval₃**

Synonymous Form: **time interval₃ is time interval₁ plus time interval₂**

Synonymous Form: **time interval₃ = time interval₁ + time interval₂**
Synonymous Form: \text{time interval}_1 \text{ plus time interval}_2

Synonymous Form: \text{time interval}_1 \ + \ \text{time interval}_2

Synonymous Form: \text{sum of time interval}_1 \ + \ \text{time interval}_2

Definition: \text{time interval}_3 \text{ includes time interval}_1 \text{ and time interval}_3 \text{ includes time interval}_2 \text{ and time interval}_3 \text{ is part of each time interval that includes time interval}_1 \text{ and time interval}_2

CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
    (iff ("time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
        (and
            ("thing1 is part of thing2" t1 t3)
            ("thing1 is part of thing2" t2 t3)
            (forall (t4)
                (if (and
                    ("thing1 is part of thing2" t1 t4)
                    ("thing1 is part of thing2" t2 t4))
                    ("thing1 is part of thing2" t3 t4)))))

OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _'plus time interval2 is time interval3'
(t2: _'time interval', t3: _'time interval'): Boolean =
self._'is part of'(t3) and t2._'is part of'(t3) and
_time interval_.allInstances->
forAll(t4 | self._'is part of'(t4) and t2._'is part of'(t4)
implies t3._'is part of'(t4))

Necessity: if a \text{time interval}_1 \text{ is before a time interval}_2 or \text{time interval}_1 \text{ properly overlaps time interval}_2, then \text{time interval}_1 \text{ plus time interval}_2 \text{ is started by time interval}_1 \text{ and is finished by time interval}_2

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
    (if
        (or
            ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t2)
            ("time interval1 properly overlaps time interval2" t1 t2))
        (iff
            ("time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
            (and
                ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t1 t3)
                ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t2 t3)
            )))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->(forAll t2 |
    (self._'is before'(t2) or self._'properly overlaps'(t2)) implies
    (self.starts(self.plus(t2)) and t2.finishes(self.plus(t2)) )

Necessity: if a \text{time interval}_1 \text{ is after a time interval}_2 or \text{time interval}_1 \text{ is properly overlapped by time interval}_2, then \text{time interval}_1 \text{ plus time interval}_2 \text{ is started by time interval}_2 \text{ and is finished by time interval}_1.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
    (if
        ...
or
("time interval1 is before time interval2" t2 t1)
("time interval1 properly overlaps time interval2" t2 t1))
(iff
("time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
(and
("time interval1 starts time interval2" t2 t3)
("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t1 t3))
))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->(forall t2 |
(t2._'is before'(self) or t2._'properly overlaps'(self)) implies
t2.starts(self.plus(t2)) and self.finishes(self.plus(t2)) )

Necessity: if a time interval1 is part of a time interval2, then time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval2.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
(if
("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t1 t2)
(iff
("time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
(= t3 t2)
))
)

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->(forall t2 |
(self._'is part of'(t2) implies self.plus(t2) = t2 )

Necessity: if a time interval2 is part of a time interval1, then time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval1.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
(if
("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t2 t1)
(iff
("time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
(= t3 t1)
))
)

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->(forall t2 |
(t2._'is part of'(self) implies self.plus(t2) = self )

Example: January 2010 through December 2010 is 2010

Axiom Sum: For any time intervals t1 and t2, there is a time interval t3 that is equal to t1 plus t2.

Necessity: For each time interval1 and each time interval2, there is a time interval3 that is time interval1 plus time interval2.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((t1 "time interval") (t2 "time interval"))
(exists ((t3 "time interval"))
("time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3" t1 t2 t3 ))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forall(t2 |
'time interval'.allInstances->exists(t3 | self._'time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3'(t2, t3))

**Corollary:** For any two time intervals \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \), \( t_1 + t_2 \) is unique.

**Necessity:** A time interval \( t_1 \) plus a time interval \( t_2 \) is exactly one time interval \( t_3 \).

**CLIF Axiom:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{forall} \ (t_1 \ t_2 \ t_3) \\
\text{if} \ ("\text{time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3}" \ t_1 \ t_2 \ t_3) \\
\text{forall} \ (t_4) \\
\text{if} \ ("\text{time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3}" \ t_1 \ t_2 \ t_4) \\
\text{=} \ (t_4 \ t_3) )) \ 
\end{align*}
\]

**OCL Constraint:**

context _'time interval'_

inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->

forall(t2 | 
'time interval'.allInstances->
one(t4 | t4 = self.plus(t2)))

### 8.2.6 Time Interval Complement

The following start-complement and end-complement verb concepts construct the complementary time interval given a time interval that starts or ends a larger time interval. Note that a complementary time interval does not exist in the case where one time interval is properly during another time interval.

![Time Interval Complement Diagram](image-url)

**Figure 8.9 - Time Interval Complement**
**time interval**$_1$ **starts** **time interval**$_2$ **complementing** **time interval**$_3$

**Definition:** **time interval**$_1$ **starts** **time interval**$_2$ and **time interval**$_3$ **finishes** **time interval**$_2$ and **time interval**$_1$ **meets** **time interval**$_3$

**CLIF Definition:**
(forall (t1 t2 t3)
  (iff ("time interval1 starts time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
    (and
     ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t1 t2)
     ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t3 t2)
     ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t1 t3)) ))

**OCL Definition:**
context _'time interval'_
def: _'starts time interval2 complementing time interval3'_
  (t2: _'time interval', t3: _'time interval'): Boolean =
    self.starts(t2) and t3.finishes(t2) and self.meets(t3)

**Example:** January 2010 **starts** 2010 **complementing** February 2010 **through** December 2010

**Axiom Start-complement:** If t1 and t2 are **time intervals** and t1 **starts** t2, then there is a **time interval** t3 such that t3 **finishes** t2 **complementing** t1.

**Necessity:**
If a **time interval**$_1$ **starts** a **time interval**$_2$, then some **time interval**$_3$ **finishes** **time interval**$_2$ **complementing** **time interval**$_1$.

**CLIF Axiom:**
(forall (t1 t2)
  (iff ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t1 t2)
    (exists (t3)
     ("time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3" t3 t2 t1)) ))

**OCL Constraint:**
context 'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forall(t2 |
  self.starts(t2) implies
  'time interval'.allInstances->exists(t3 |
   t3._'finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3' |
   (t2, self)))

**Note:** This formalizes the axiom above: If a time interval1 starts a time interval2, there is a time interval3 that is the start complement.

**Corollary:** For all **time intervals** t1, t2 and t3, such that t1 **starts** t2 **complementing** t3, and for all **time intervals** t4, such that t4 **is part of** t2 and t4 does not **overlap** t1, t4 **is part of** t3. That is, t3 is the largest **time interval** that **is part of** t2 but does not **overlap** t1.

**Necessity:**
If a **time interval**$_4$ **starts** a **time interval**$_2$ **complementing** a **time interval**$_3$, then each **time interval**$_4$ that **is part of** the **time interval**$_2$ and that does not **overlap** the **time interval**$_1$ **is part of** the **time interval**$_3$.

**CLIF Axiom:**
(forall (t1 t2 t3)
  (iff ("time interval1 starts time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
    (forall (t4)
      (iff ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t4 t2)
        (not ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" t4 t1)))
        ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t4 t3)))))
OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'  
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2, t3, t4 |  
(t3 = t2._'minus starting interval'(self)  
and (t4._'is part of'(t2)  
and not t4.overlaps(self))  
implies t4._'is part of'(t3))}

Corollary: For any two time intervals t1 and t2 such that t1 starts t2 complementing some time interval t3, t3 is unique.
Necessity: If a time interval1 starts a time interval2 then the time interval1 starts the time interval2 complementing exactly one time interval3.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)  
(if ("time interval1 starts time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t3)  
(forall (t4)  
(if ("time interval1 starts time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t4)  
(= t4 t3)))))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'  
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 |  
'time interval'.allInstances->isUnique(t2._'minus starting interval'(self))}

time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3
Definition: time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3 starts time interval2 and time interval1 is met by time interval3

CLIF Definition: (forall (t1 t2 t3)  
(if ("time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t3)  
(and ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t1 t2)  
("time interval1 starts time interval2" t3 t2)  
("time interval1 meets time interval2" t3 t1)) ))

OCL Definition: context _'time interval'  
def: _'finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3'  
(t2: _'time interval', t3: _'time interval'): Boolean =  
self.finishes(t2) and t3.starts(t2) and t3.meets(self)

Example: December 2010 finishes 2010 complementing January 2010 through February 2010

Axiom End-complement: If t1 and t2 are time intervals and t1 finishes t2, then there is a time interval t3 such that t3 starts t2 complementing t1.
Necessity: If a time interval1 finishes a time interval2 then some time interval3 starts time interval2 complementing time interval1.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2)  
(if ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t1 t2)  
(exists (t3)  
("time interval1 starts time interval2 complementing time interval3" t3 t2 t1)))

OCL Constraint: context 'time interval'  
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 |
self.finishes(t2) implies
'time interval'.allInstances->exists(t3 | t3._'starts time interval2 complementing time interval3' (t2, self))

Note: This formalizes the axiom End-complement above: If a time interval1 finishes a time interval2, there is a time interval3 that is the end complement.

Corollary: For all time intervals t1, t2 and t3, such that t1 finishes t2 complementing t3, and for all time intervals t4, such that t4 is part of t2 and t4 does not overlap t1, t4 is part of t3. That is, t3 is the largest time interval that is part of t2 but does not overlap t1.

Necessity: If a time interval1 finishes a time interval2 complementing a time interval3, then each time interval4 that is part of the time interval2 and that does not overlap the time interval1 is part of the time interval3.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
(if ("time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
(forall (t4)
(if
(and
("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t4 t2)
(not ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" t4 t1)))
("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t4 t3))))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval' inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
forall(t2, t3, t4 | (t3 = t2._'minus finishing interval'(self) and (t4._'is part of'(t2) and not t4.overlaps(self)) and implies t4._'is part of'(t3)))

Corollary: For any two time intervals t1 and t2 such that t1 finishes t2 complementing some time interval t3, t3 is unique.

Necessity: If a time interval1 finishes a time interval2 then the time interval1 finishes the time interval2 complementing exactly one time interval3.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
(if ("time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
(forall (t4)
(if ("time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t4)
(= t4 t3)))))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval' inv: _'time interval'.allInstances -> forall(t2 | _'time interval'.allInstances -> isUnique(t2._'minus finishing interval'(self)))

Axiom: For any time intervals t1 and t2 such that t2 is properly during t1, t2 has both a start complement in t1 and an end complement in t1.

Necessity: For each time interval1 and each time interval2 that is properly during time interval1, there is a time interval3 that starts time interval1 and meets time interval2.
Necessity: For each time interval\textsubscript{1} and each time interval\textsubscript{2} that is properly during time interval\textsubscript{1}, there is a time interval\textsubscript{4} that finishes time interval\textsubscript{1} and is met by time interval\textsubscript{2}.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((ti1 "time interval")
    (ti2 "time interval"))
    (if ("time interval1 is properly during time interval2" t2 t1)
        (exists (ti3 "time interval")
            ("time interval1 starts time interval2" ti3 ti1)
            ("time interval1 meets time interval2" ti3 ti2) )))

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((ti1 "time interval")
    (ti2 "time interval"))
    (if ("time interval1 is properly during time interval2" t2 t1)
        (exists (ti4 "time interval")
            ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" ti4 ti1)
            ("time interval1 meets time interval2" ti2 ti4) )))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
    inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
        forAll(t2 | t2._'is properly during'(self)
            implies _'time interval'.allInstances
                --> exists(t3 | t3.starts(self) and t3.meets(t2)))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
    inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
        forAll(t2 | t2._'is properly during'(self)
            implies _'time interval'.allInstances
            .allInstances-> exists(t3 | t3.ends(self) and t2.meets(t3)))

Corollary: For each time interval\textsubscript{1} at least one time interval\textsubscript{2} starts time interval\textsubscript{1}.

Corollary: For each time interval\textsubscript{1} at least one time interval\textsubscript{2} finishes time interval\textsubscript{1}.

### 8.2.7 Time Interval Intersection

This verb concept generates the intersection of two overlapping time intervals.

![Diagram of Time Interval Intersection](image)

**Figure 8.10 - Time Interval Intersection**
**time interval**₁ **intersects** **time interval**₂ **with** **time interval**₃

**Synonymous Form:**  **time interval**₁ **is the intersection of** **time interval**₂ **with** **time interval**₃

**Synonymous Form:**  **intersection of** **time interval**₂ **with** **time interval**₃

**Definition:**  **time interval**₁ **is part of** **time interval**₂ **and** **time interval**₁ **is part of** **time interval**₃ **and** **time interval**₁ **includes each** **time interval** **that is part of** **time interval**₂ **and** **time interval**₃

**CLIF Definition:**

```
(forall (t1 t2 t3)
  (iff
    ("time interval1 intersects time interval2 with time interval3"
     t1 t2 t3)
    (and
      ("thing1 is part of thing2" t1 t2)
      ("thing1 is part of thing2" t1 t3)
      (forall (t4)
        (if (and
          ("thing1 is part of thing2" t4 t2)
          ("thing1 is part of thing2" t4 t3)
          (forall (t4 | (t4._'is part of'(t2) and t4._'is part of'(t3))
            implies t4._'is part of'(self))
          )))
    )))
```

**OCL Definition:**

```
context _'time interval'
def: _'is intersection of' (t2: _'time interval', t3: _'time interval'):
  Boolean =
  self._'is part of'(t2) and self._'is part of'(t3) and
  _'time interval'.allInstances->
  forAll(t4 | (t4._'is part of'(t2) and t4._'is part of'(t3))
    implies t4._'is part of'(self))
```

**Note:** The alternative definitions describe construction of the intersection. Technically, these are corollaries to the Definition

**Definition:**

- **if** **time interval**₂ **is part of** **time interval**₃, **then** **time interval**₁ **equals** **time interval**₃, **and**
- **if** **time interval**₃ **is part of** **time interval**₂, **then** **time interval**₁ **equals** **time interval**₂, **and**
- **if** **time interval**₂ **properly overlaps** **time interval**₃, **then** **time interval**₁ **finishes** **time interval**₂ and **time interval**₁ **starts** **time interval**₃, **and**
- **if** **time interval**₃ **properly overlaps** **time interval**₂, **then** **time interval**₁ **finishes** **time interval**₃ and **time interval**₁ **starts** **time interval**₂

**CLIF Definition:**

```
(forall (t1 t2 t3)
  (iff
    ("time interval1 intersects time interval2 with time interval3"
     t1 t2 t3)
    (and
      (if ("thing1 is part of thing2" t2 t3) (=t1 t2))
      (if ("thing1 is part of thing2" t3 t2) (=t1 t3))
      (if ("time interval1 properly overlaps time interval2" t2 t3)
        (and
          ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t1 t2)
          ("time interval1 starts time interval2" t1 t3))
        )
      (if ("time interval1 properly overlaps time interval2" t3 t2)
        (and
          ("time interval1 finishes time interval2" t1 t3)
        ))
    )))
```
OCL Definition: context _'time interval'
def: _'is intersection of'(t2: _'time interval', t3: _'time interval'):
  Boolean =
  (t2.includes(t3) implies self.equals(t3)) and
  (t3.includes(t2) implies self.equals(t2)) and
  (t2._'properly overlaps'(t3) implies
   self.finishes(t2) and self.starts(t3)) and
  (t3._'properly overlaps'(t2) implies
   self.finishes(t3) and self.starts(t2))

Example: January 2010 through June 2010 intersects March 2010 through August 2010 with March 2010 through June 2010

Axiom Intersection: For any time intervals t1 and t2 such that t1 overlaps t2, there is a time interval t1*t2 that intersects t1 with t2.

Necessity: If a time interval1 overlaps a time interval2, then some time interval3 intersects time interval1 with time interval2.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2)
  (if
   ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" t1 t2)
   (exists (t3)
    ("time interval1 intersects time interval2 with time interval3" t3 t1 t2) )))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 | self.overlaps(t2) implies
  'time interval'.allInstances->exists(t3 |
   t3._'is intersection of'(self, t2)))

Corollary: For all time intervals t1, t2, and t4, such that t1 overlaps t2 and t4 is part of t1 and t4 is part of t2, t4 is a part of t1*t2. That is, t1*t2 is the largest time interval that is part of t1 and part of t2.

Necessity: If a time interval1 intersects a time interval2 with a time interval3 and a time interval4 is part of the time interval1, and the time interval4 is part of the time interval2, then the time interval4 is part of the time interval3.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3 t4)
  (if
   (and
    ("time interval1 intersects time interval2 with time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
    ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t4 t2)
    ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t4 t1))
    ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t4 t3))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
  forAll(t2, t3, t4 | (self.overlaps(t2) and t4._'is part of'(self) and t4._'is part of'(t2))
  implies
  t4._'is part of'(self._'intersected with'(t2))))
**Corollary:** For any two \textit{time intervals} \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \) such that \( t_1 \) \textit{overlaps} \( t_2 \), \( t_1 \ast t_2 \) is unique.

**Necessity:**
If a \textit{time interval} \( t_1 \) \textit{overlaps} a \textit{time interval} \( t_2 \), then the \textit{time interval} \( t_1 \) \textit{intersects} a \textit{time interval} \( t_2 \) \textit{with} exactly one \textit{time interval} \( t_3 \).

**CLIF Axiom:**
\[
\text{(forall (t1 t2 t3) }
\text{(if }
\text{("time interval1 intersects time interval2 with time interval3" t3 t1 t2)}
\text{ (forall (t4)}
\text{ (if}
\text{("time interval1 intersects time interval2 with time interval3" t4 t1 t2)}
\text{ (= t4 t3))) )))
\]

**OCL Constraint:**
context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 | self.overlaps(t2) implies _'time interval'.allInstances->isUnique(self._'intersected with'(t2)))

**Corollary (Intervening):** For all \textit{time intervals} \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \) such that \( t_1 \) \textit{is properly before} \( t_2 \), there is a unique \textit{time interval} \( t_3 \) such that \( t_1 \) \textit{meets} \( t_3 \) and \( t_3 \) \textit{meets} \( t_2 \). The intervening \textit{time interval} \( t_3 \) is the \textit{intersection} of the start-complement \( t_5 \) of \( t_1 \ast t_2 \) \( (t_4) \), and the end-complement of \( t_1 \ast t_2 \) \( (t_4) \).

**Figure 8.11 - Illustration of ‘Intervening’ Corollary**

**Necessity:**
If a \textit{time interval} \( t_1 \) \textit{is properly before} a \textit{time interval} \( t_2 \) then the \textit{time interval} \( t_1 \) \textit{meets} a \textit{time interval} \( t_3 \) and the \textit{time interval} \( t_3 \) \textit{meets} the \textit{time interval} \( t_2 \) and the \textit{time interval} \( t_1 \) \textit{plus} the \textit{time interval} \( t_2 \) \textit{is} a \textit{time interval} \( t_4 \) and the \textit{time interval} \( t_1 \) \textit{starts} the \textit{time interval} \( t_4 \) \textit{complementing} a \textit{time interval} \( t_5 \) and the \textit{time interval} \( t_6 \) \textit{finishes} the \textit{time interval} \( t_4 \) \textit{complementing} a \textit{time interval} \( t_6 \) and the \textit{time interval} \( t_5 \) \textit{intersects} the \textit{time interval} \( t_6 \) \textit{with} the \textit{time interval} \( t_3 \).

**CLIF Axiom:**
\[
\text{(forall (t1 t2)}
\text{ (if } \text{("time interval1 is properly before time interval2" t1 t2)}
\text{ (exists (t3 t4 t5 t6)}
\text{ (and}
\text{ ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t1 t3)}
\text{ ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t3 t2)}
\text{ ("time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3" t1 t2 t4)}
\text{ ("time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3" t5 t4 t1)}
\text{ ("time interval1 starts time interval2 complementing time interval3" t6 t4 t2)}
\text{ ("time interval1 intersects time interval2 with time interval3" t3 t6 t5))) ))
\]
8.2.8 Time intervals defined by start and end

The above sections specify mathematical means of defining a time interval as the sum, complement, or intersection of two other time intervals. In practice, a time interval is more commonly defined by specifying when it starts and when it ends. This section introduces two verb concepts that support such a mechanism.

**Figure 8.12 - Time intervals defined by start and end**

*time interval*\textsubscript{1} through *time interval*\textsubscript{2} specifies *time interval*\textsubscript{3}

- Synonymous Form: *time interval*\textsubscript{1} through *time interval*\textsubscript{2} is *time interval*\textsubscript{3}
- Synonymous Form: *time interval*\textsubscript{3} is from *time interval*\textsubscript{1} through *time interval*\textsubscript{2}
**Definition:**

\[ \text{time interval}_1 \text{ starts before } \text{time interval}_2, \text{ and } \text{time interval}_1 \text{ starts } \text{time interval}_3, \text{ and } \text{time interval}_2 \text{ finishes } \text{time interval}_3 \]

**CLIF Definition:**

\[
\text{forall} \ (t1 \ t2 \ t3) \\
\text{iff} \\
\("\text{time interval1 through time interval2 specifies time interval3}" \ t1 \ t2 \ t3) \\
\text{and} \\
\("\text{time interval1 starts before time interval2}" \ t1 \ t2) \\
("\text{time interval1 starts time interval2}" \ t1 \ t3) \\
("\text{time interval1 finishes time interval2}" \ t2 \ t3) \\
)\\
\]

**CLIF Definition:**

context _'time interval'_

\[
def: '\text{through time interval2 is time interval3}'
\](t2: _'time interval', t3: _'time interval'): Boolean =
self._'starts before'(t2) and
self.starts(t3) and t2.finishes(t3)
\]

**Synonymous Form:**

\[ \text{time interval}_1 \text{ through } \text{time interval}_2 \]

**Note:**

This is a noun form of the verb concept. It refers to the specified time interval.

**CLIF Definition:**

\[
\text{forall} \ (t1 \ t2 \ t3) \\
\text{iff} (= t3 ("time interval1 through time interval2" \ t1 \ t2)) \\
("\text{time interval1 through time interval2 specifies time interval3}" \ t1 \ t2 \ t3) )
\]

**OCL Definition:**

context _'time interval'_

\[
def: _'through time interval' (t2: _'time interval'): _'time interval' =
\_"time interval".allInstances->(t3 | self._starts before'(t2) and
self.starts(t3) and t2.finishes(t3))
\]

**Example:**

The time interval that is from 2006 through 2007 has duration 2 years.

**Necessity:**

For each time interval, that starts before a given time interval, exactly one time interval, is time interval, through time interval.

**Note:**

This follows from the definition.

**CLIF Axiom:**

\[
\text{forall} \ (t1 \ t2) \\
\text{if} ("\text{time interval1 starts before time interval2}" \ t1 \ t2) \\
\quad (exists (t3) \\
\quad ("\text{time interval1 is time interval2 through time interval3}" \\
\quad t3 \ t1 \ t2 ) ))
\]

**CLIF Axiom:**

\[
\text{forall} \ (t1 \ t2 \ t3 \ t4) \\
\text{if} (\text{and} \\
\quad ("\text{time interval1 is time interval2 through time interval3}" \\
\quad t3 \ t1 \ t2) \\
\quad ("\text{time interval1 is time interval2 through time interval3}" \\
\quad t4 \ t1 \ t2 )) \\
\quad (= t3 \ t4 ) ))
\]

**OCL Constraint:**

context _'time interval'_

\[
\text{inv: } _'\text{time interval}".allInstances->
\quad forAll(t2 | 
\quad self._starts before'(t2) implies 
\quad _'\text{time interval}".allInstances->
\quad one(t3 | t3 = self._through time interval'(t2)) )
\]
**time interval**₁, **to time interval**₂, **specifies time interval**₃

**Synonymous Form:**
- time interval₁ **to time interval**₂ is time interval₃
- time interval₃ **is from time interval**₁ **to time interval**₂
- time interval₃ **is from time interval**₁ until time interval₂

**Definition:**
- time interval₁ **is before** time interval₂, and
- time interval₃ **is time interval**₁ if time interval₁ **meets** time interval₂, and
- time interval₃ **is the time interval** that **meets** time interval₂ and **is started by** time interval₁ if time interval₁ **is properly before** time interval₂

**CLIF Definition:**
\[
\text{forall } (t1, t2, t3) \\
(\text{iff} \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ to time interval}2 \text{ specifies time interval}3" \ t1 \ t2 \ t3) \\
(\text{and} \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ is before time interval}2" \ t1 \ t2) \\
(\text{if } \text{("time interval}1 \text{ meets time interval}2" \ t1 \ t2) \\
(= t1 \ t3)) \\
(\text{if} \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ is properly before time interval}2" \ t1 \ t2) \\
(\text{and} \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ starts time interval}2" \ t1 \ t3) \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ meets time interval}2" \ t3 \ t2)) \\
))
\]

**OCL Definition:**
context **time interval**
def: **to time interval**₂ is time interval₃
(t2: **time interval**, t3: **time interval**): Boolean =
  self._'is before'(t2) and
  (if self.meets(t2) then t3 = self
   else self.starts(t3) and t3.meets(t2))

**Synonymous Form:**
- time interval₁ **to time interval**₂

**Note:**
This is a noun form of the verb concept. It refers to the specified time interval.

**CLIF Definition:**
\[
\text{forall } (t1, t2, t3) \\
(\text{iff} \ (\text{"time interval}1 \text{ to time interval}2 \text{ specifies time interval}3" \ t1 \ t2 \ t3) \\
(\text{and} \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ is before time interval}2" \ t1 \ t2) \\
(\text{if } \text{("time interval}1 \text{ meets time interval}2" \ t1 \ t2) \\
(= t1 \ t3)) \\
(\text{if} \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ is properly before time interval}2" \ t1 \ t2) \\
(\text{and} \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ starts time interval}2" \ t1 \ t3) \\
(\text{"time interval}1 \text{ meets time interval}2" \ t3 \ t2)) \\
))
\]

**OCL Definition:**
context **time interval**
def: **to time interval**₂ (t2: **time interval**): **time interval** =
  if (not (self._'is before'(t2)) then null
   else if (self.meets(t2)) then self
   else **time interval**.allInstances->
    forall(t3 | t3.meets(t2)and t3.meets(t2))

**Note:**
Contrast 'through' with 'to.' 'through' is inclusive of time interval₂, while 'to' is exclusive of time interval₂.

**Example:**
The time interval "2006" to "2007" has duration 1 year.

**Necessity:**
For each time interval₁ that **is before** a given time interval₂, exactly one time interval₃ **is time interval**₁ **to time interval**₂.
Note: This follows from the definition.

CLIF Axiom:
(forall (t1 t2)
 (if ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t1 t2)
  (exists (t3)
   ("time interval1 is time interval2 to time interval3"
    t3 t1 t2)))))

CLIF Axiom:
(forall (t1 t2 t3 t4)
 (if (and
   ("time interval1 is time interval2 to time interval3"
    t3 t1 t2)
   ("time interval1 is time interval2 to time interval3"
    t4 t1 t2))
  (= t3 t4)))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
  forAll(t2 |
    self.before(t2) implies
    _'time interval'.allInstances->
      one(t3 | t3 = self._'to time interval'(t2))

8.2.9 Indefinite time intervals

Indefinite time intervals provide the basis for describing time intervals that extend indefinitely into the past or the future. One example is a British bond of the 1910s that pays interest “in perpetuity.”

Figure 8.13 - primordiality, perpetuity, and eternity

eternity
Synonym: forever
Definition: the time interval that includes each time interval
CLIF Definition: (forall (t) (iff (= t eternity)
  (and
    ("time interval" t)
    (forall (ti2) (iff ("time interval" ti2) ("is part of" ti2 t) ))
  )))
OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
inv: self.'is part of'(eternity)
Description: The time interval that extends across the entire Time Axis.
Note: eternity is an individual concept because there can be only one such time interval.
Note: eternity is not the same thing as the Time Axis, even though it ‘covers’ the Time Axis.
**primordiality**

**Definition:** the *time interval* that *is before* each *time interval* that is not *primordiality* or *eternity*

**Description:** The *time interval* that is at the beginning of time, or at least so far back in time that it is before all interesting time intervals.

**CLIF Definition:**

```clif
(forall (t)
  (iff (= t primordiality)
    (and
      ("time interval" t)
      (forall (ti2) (or
        (= ti2 primordiality)
        (= ti2 eternity)
        ("time interval1 is before time interval2" t ti2)))))
)
```

**OCL Constraint:**

```ocl
context 'time interval'
inv: self = primordiality or self = eternity
  or primordiality._'is before'(self)
```

**Note:** *primordiality* is an individual concept. There can be only one *time interval* that *is before* every other *time interval*.

**Note:** This concept can be used in formulations such as "*primordiality through current day*" to define *time intervals* that began at some indefinite time in the past. Tools may choose to support a convenient syntax such as "until *today*".

**Example:** "*primordiality to 2005*" meaning "until *2005*".

**Note:** *primordiality* has a *duration* but it is not known.

**Necessity:** *primordiality* starts *eternity*.

**Note:** This follows from the definitions. No part of *eternity* can be before *primordiality*.

**perpetuity**

**Definition:** the *time interval* that *is after* each *time interval* that is not *perpetuity* or *eternity*

**Description:** The *time interval* that is at the end of time, or at least so far forward in time that it is after all interesting time intervals.

**CLIF Definition:**

```clif
(forall (t)
  (iff (= t perpetuity)
    (and
      ("time interval" t)
      (forall (ti2) (or
        (= ti2 perpetuity)
        (= ti2 eternity)
        ("time interval1 is before time interval2" ti2 t)))))
)
```

**OCL Constraint:**

```ocl
context 'time interval'
inv: self = perpetuity or self = eternity
  or self._'is before'(perpetuity)
```

**Note:** *perpetuity* is an individual concept. There can be only one *time interval* that *is after* every other *time interval*.

**Note:** This concept can be used in formulations such as "*2012 through perpetuity*" to define *time intervals* that extend indefinitely into the future. Tools may choose to support a convenient syntax such as "after *2012*".

**Example:** "Contract signing *through perpetuity*" meaning "after the contract signing".
Note: perpetuity has a duration but it is not known.
Necessity: perpetuity finishes eternity.
Note: This follows from the definitions. No part of eternity can be after perpetuity.

8.3 Durations

A second foundational temporal concept is ‘duration,’ the amount of time in a time interval. This clause presents various properties of ‘duration’ and of the relationship between ‘duration’ and ‘time interval’.

duration
Synonym: time
Definition: Duration is a quantity kind, whose instances are quantities of time. Each duration is an equivalence class of particular durations; a duration equals all the measurements for the same amount of time.
Note: ‘Duration’ is a different concept from ‘duration value’. ‘Duration’ is the amount of time in a time interval. ‘Duration value’ is a quantification of ‘duration’ in terms of a time unit. There is a one-to-many relationship between durations and duration values. For example, the same duration may be quantified as any of the duration values "1 hour", or "60 minutes", or "3600 seconds".
Reference Scheme: a precise atomic duration value that quantifies the duration
Source: [ISO/IEC 80000-3]

8.3.1 Duration Ordering

‘Duration’ has relationships, ‘=’, ‘<’, and ‘<=’ with the following properties. These relationships neither follow from nor entail the duration properties defined in the next clause. The four axioms defined in this section, taken together, define a total ordering on ‘duration’.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
duration1 is less than duration2 & duration1 equals duration2 \\
\hline
duration1 is less than or equal to duration2 & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Duration Ordering}
\end{table}
\textbf{duration}_1 \text{ is less than or equal to } \textbf{duration}_2

Synonymous Form: \( \textbf{duration}_1 \leq \textbf{duration}_2 \)

Synonymous Form: \( \textbf{duration}_2 > \textbf{duration}_1 \)

Synonymous Form: \( \textbf{duration}_2 \text{ is greater than or equal to } \textbf{duration}_1 \)

Definition: A total ordering on \textit{quantities} of time.

Note: This is a primitive concept.

Example: Two runners start a race at the same time. The \textbf{duration} of the run of one runner is less than or equal to the \textbf{duration} of the run of the other runner.

\textbf{duration}_1 \text{ equals } \textbf{duration}_2

Synonymous Form: \( \textbf{duration}_1 = \textbf{duration}_2 \)

Definition: \( \textbf{duration}_1 < \textbf{duration}_2 \) and \( \textbf{duration}_2 < \textbf{duration}_1 \)

Example: Two runners start and complete a race at the same time. The duration of the run of one runner is equal to the \textbf{duration} of the run of the other runner.

\textbf{Axiom O.1 (Reflexive):} If \( d_1 \) is a \textbf{duration}, then \( d_1 \leq d_1 \).

Necessity: Each \textbf{duration} \leq the \textbf{duration}.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration))
  ("duration \leq duration" d1 d1))

OCL Constraint: context duration
  inv: self._'is less or equal'(self)

\textbf{Axiom O.2 (Total):} If \( d_1 \) and \( d_2 \) are \textbf{durations}, then either \( d_1 \leq d_2 \) or \( d_2 \leq d_1 \).

Necessity: Each \textbf{duration}_1 \leq each \textbf{duration}_2 or \textbf{duration}_2 \leq \textbf{duration}_1.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration) (d2 duration))
  (or
    ("duration \leq duration" d1 d2)
    ("duration \leq duration" d2 d1)))

OCL Constraint: context duration
  inv: duration.allInstances->forAll(d2 |
    self._'is less or equal'(d2)
  or d2._'is less or equal'(self)

\textbf{Axiom O.3 (Antisymmetric):} If \( d_1 \) and \( d_2 \) are \textbf{durations}, and \( d_1 \leq d_2 \) and \( d_2 \leq d_1 \), then \( d_1 = d_2 \).

Necessity: If some \textbf{duration}_1 \leq some \textbf{duration}_2 and the \textbf{duration}_2 \leq the \textbf{duration}_1, then the \textbf{duration}_1 \text{ equals the } \textbf{duration}_2.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration) (d2 duration))
  (if (and
    ("duration \leq duration" d1 d2)
    ("duration \leq duration" d2 d1)
    (= d1 d2)))

OCL Constraint: context duration
  inv: duration.allInstances->forAll(d2 |
    self._'is less or equal'(d2)
Axiom O.4 (Transitive): If \( d_1, d_2, d_3 \) are durations, and \( d_1 \leq d_2 \) and \( d_2 \leq d_3 \), then \( d_1 \leq d_3 \).

Necessity: If some duration \( d_1 \) \leq \text{some duration} \( d_2 \) and the duration \( d_2 \leq \text{some duration} \( d_3 \), then the duration \( d_1 \leq \text{the duration} \( d_3 \).

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration) (d2 duration) (d3 duration))
  (if (and
    ("duration \leq duration" d1 d2)
    ("duration \leq duration" d2 d3))
    ("duration \leq duration" d1 d3)))

OCL Constraint: context duration
  inv: duration.allInstances->forAll(d2, d3 |
    self._'is less or equal'(d2)
    and d2._'is less or equal(d3)
    implies self._'is less or equal'(d3))

Corollary (Equals is transitive): If \( d_1, d_2, d_3 \) are durations, and \( d_1 = d_2 \) and \( d_2 = d_3 \), then \( d_1 = d_3 \).

Necessity: If some duration \( d_1 \) = some duration \( d_2 \) and the duration \( d_2 = \text{some duration} \( d_3 \), then the duration \( d_1 = \text{the duration} \( d_3 \).

CLIF Axiom: (forall (d1 d2 d3)
  (if (and
    ("duration = duration" d1 d2)
    ("duration = duration" d2 d3))
    ("duration = duration" d1 d3)))

OCL Constraint: context duration
  inv: duration.allInstances->forAll(d2, d3 |
    self.equals(d2) and d2.equals(d3)
    implies self.equals(d3))

\textit{duration} \( d_1 \) is less than \textit{duration} \( d_2 \)

Synonymous Form: \textit{duration} \( d_1 \) < \textit{duration} \( d_2 \)

Synonymous Form: \textit{duration} \( d_2 \) > \textit{duration} \( d_1 \)

Synonymous Form: \textit{duration} \( d_2 \) is greater than \textit{duration} \( d_1 \)

Definition: \textit{duration} \( d_1 \) \leq \textit{duration} \( d_2 \) and \textit{duration} \( d_1 \) does not equal \textit{duration} \( d_2 \)

Example: Two runners start a race at the same time. The duration of the run of the first runner to cross the finish line is less than the duration of the run of the other runner.

CLIF Definition: (forall ((d1 duration) (d2 duration))
  (iff ("duration < duration" d1 d2)
    (and
      ("duration < duration" d1 d2)
      (not (= d2 (d1))))))

OCL Definition: context duration
  def: _'is less than'(d2: duration): Boolean =
    self._'is less or equal'(d2)
    and not self.equals(d2)
8.3.2 Duration Operations

From a mathematical point of view, the extension of ‘duration’ is a vector space over the real numbers. That is, two operations – addition and scalar multiplication – are defined on durations. They operations obey the following axioms:

**Axiom V.1** (Addition is Closed): If d1 and d2 are durations, then d1 + d2 is a duration.

**Axiom V.2** (Addition is Associative): If d1, d2, d3 are durations, then (d1 + d2) + d3 = d1 + (d2 + d3).

**Axiom V.3** (Addition is Commutative): If d1 and d2 are durations, then d1 + d2 = d2 + d1.

**Axiom V.4** (Additive Identity): There is a duration D0 such that, for every duration d1, d1 + D0 = d1.

**Axiom V.5** (Additive Inverse): For each duration d1, there is a duration d2, such that d1 + d2 = D0.

Note: The existence of the inverse (-d1) is a mathematical necessity for the vector space. Whether it has physical meaning is quite another thing entirely.

**Axiom V.6** (Scalar multiplication is closed): if d1 is a duration and n1 is a number, n1 * d1 is a duration.

**Axiom V.7** (Scalar multiplication is distributive over durations): if d1 and d2 are durations and n1 is a real number, n1 * (d1 + d2) = (n1 * d) + (n1 * d2)

**Axiom V.8** (Scalar multiplication is distributive over reals): if d1 is a duration, and n1 and n2 are numbers, (n1 * n2) * d1 = n1 * d1 + n2 * d1.

**Corollary:** For all durations d1, 0 * d1 = D0

**Corollary:** If n1 is a number and d1 is a duration, then n1 * d1 = D0 iff n1 = 0 or d1 = D0

**Corollary (Ratio):** If d1 and d2 are durations and not d2 = D0, then there exists a number n1 such that d2 = n1 * d1. We call n1 the “ratio of d2 to d1.”

Note that the above does not depend on the concept ‘time unit.’ In fact, the usefulness of ‘time unit’ depends on this property.
**duration** \(\text{equals} \ duration_1 \ plus \ duration_2\)

Synonymous Form: \(\text{duration}_3 = \text{duration}_1 \ plus \ duration_2\)

Synonymous Form: \(\text{duration}_1, \ plus \ duration_2, \ gives \ duration_3\)

Synonymous Form: \(\text{duration}_1, \ plus \ duration_2, \ gives \ duration_3\)

Synonymous Form: \(\text{duration}_1, \ plus \ duration_2\)

Synonymous Form: \(\text{duration}_1, \ plus \ duration_2\)

Note: This is a "ground concept" that cannot be defined in terms of other concepts.

Example: Some race consists of a run and a swim. For each racer, the **duration** of the race is the **duration** of the run **plus** the **duration** of the swim.

Note: The following definition defines the CLIF duration addition function in terms of the verb concept. The verb concept is primitive and has no formal definition.

CLIF Definition:

\[
(\text{forall} \ ((d1 \ duration) (d2 \ duration) d3) \\
\text{iff} \ 
(= \ d3 \ (\text{+} \ d1 \ d2))
\]
Axiom V.1 (Addition is closed): For all durations d1 and d2, there is a duration d3 such that d3 = d1 + d2.

Necessity: For each duration₁ and each duration₂ some duration₃ equals duration₁ plus duration₂.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration) (d2 duration))
(exists (d3 duration)
(= d3 (+ d1 d2)))

OCL Constraint: context duration
inv: duration->allInstances(forAll d2 |
duration->allInstances(exists d3 | d3 = self.plus(d2)) )

Corollary: The sum of two durations is unique.

Necessity: For each duration₁ and each duration₂ exactly one duration₃ equals duration₁ plus duration₂.

This follows from the transitivity of equality of durations in 8.3.1.

Axiom V.2 (Addition is Associative): If d1, d2, d3 are durations, then (d1 + d2) + d3 = d1 + (d2 + d3).

Necessity: If a duration₄ equals a duration₁ plus a duration₂, and a duration₅ equals duration₃ plus duration₄,
plus duration₅, and a duration₆ equals duration₂ plus duration₅, then duration₆ equals duration₁ plus duration₅.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration) (d2 duration) (d3 duration))
(= (+ (+ d1 d2) d3) (+ d1 (+ d2 d3)))

OCL Constraint: context duration
inv: duration.allInstances->
forAll(d2, d3 |
(self._'plus duration'(d2)
._'plus duration'(d3))
.equals(self._'plus duration'
(d2._'plus duration'(d3)))

Axiom V.3 (Addition is Commutative): If d1 and d2 are durations, then d1 + d2 = d2 + d1.

Necessity: Each duration₁ plus duration₂ equals duration₂ plus duration₁.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration))
(exists ((d2 duration)
(= (+ d2 d1) (+ d1 d2)))

OCL Constraint: context duration
inv: duration.allInstances->forAll(d2 |
self._'plus duration'(d2).equals
(d2._'plus duration'(self)))

Axiom V.4 (Additive Identity): There is a duration D0 such that, for every duration d1, d1 + D0 = d1.

CLIF Axiom: (exists (d1 duration)
(= d1 (+ d1 D0))

OCL Constraint: context duration
inv: duration.allInstances->forAll(d2 |
sameAs(self, d2))

Axiom V.5 (Additive Inverse): For every duration d1, there is a duration D1 such that d1 + D1 = D0.
D0

Synonym: zero duration
Definition: duration that is the additive identity whose existence is required by Axiom V.4.
Necessity: Each duration plus D0 = the duration.
CLIF Axiom: (and
  (duration D0)
  (forall (d duration) (= (+ d D0) d )))
OCL Constraint: context duration
inv: self = self._'plus duration'(D0)

Note: Declaring the individual concept (a logical “constant”) asserts its existence.
Note: D0 is unique. The uniqueness of D0 follows from the definition and the commutative axiom (V.3): If there is some other Dx such that d + Dx = d for all durations d, then D0 + Dx = D0, but D0 + Dx = Dx + D0 and Dx + D0 = Dx, by definition of D0.

duration_3 equals duration_1 minus duration_2

Synonymous Form: duration_3 = duration_1 - duration_2
Synonymous Form: duration_1 minus duration_2 gives duration_3
Synonymous Form: duration_1 - duration_2 gives duration_3
Synonymous Form: duration_1 minus duration_2
Synonymous Form: duration_1 - duration_2
Definition: duration_1 equals duration_3 plus duration_2

Note: There are no time intervals with negative durations, but negative durations can arise when subtracting one duration from another duration. In common usage, a negative duration is a combination of a direction and a magnitude.

Example: A business process consists of task A immediately followed by task B. In any instance of the business process, the duration of task B is the duration of the entire business process minus the duration of task A.

CLIF Definition: (forall ((d1 duration) (d2 duration) d3)
  (iff
    (= d3 (- d1 d2))
    (and
      (duration d3)
      ("duration3 = duration1 – duration2" d3 d1 d2) )))

Axiom V.5 (Additive Inverse): For each duration d1, there is a duration d2, such that d1 + d2 = D0.

Necessity: D0 equals each duration plus some duration.
CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration))
  (exists ((d2 duration))
    (= D0 (+ d1 d2))))
OCL Constraint: context duration
inv: duration.allInstances->exists(d2 | D0 = self + d2)
**duration**₂ equals **number** times **duration**₁

Syntemonic Form: duration₂ equals duration₁ times number

Definition: duration₂ is the result of duration₁ plus duration₁, repeated number times

Example: 50 seconds equals 50 times 1 second

Note: The following are noun forms of the above verb concept.

CLIF Definition: (forall ((d1 duration) (n number) d2)
  (iff
    (= d2 (times n d1))
    (and
      (duration d2)
      ("duration2 = number times duration1" d2 n d1 ))))

**Axiom V.6 (Scalar multiplication is closed):** If d1 is a duration and n1 is a number, n1 * d1 is a duration.

Necessity: For each number and each duration₁, some duration₂ is number times duration₁.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((n1 number) (d1 duration))
  (exists ((d2 duration))
    (= d2 (times n1 d1))))

OCL Constraint: context duration
  inv: Integer.allInstances->forAll(n |
    self.'times number'(n)
    .oclIsKindOf(duration))

**Corollary:** The product of a number and a duration is unique.

Necessity: For each duration₁ and each number exactly one duration₂ equals number times duration₁.

This follows from the transitivity of equality of durations in 8.3.1.

**Axiom V.7 (Scalar multiplication is distributive over durations):** If a duration₃ equals a number times (a duration₁ plus a duration₂) then duration₃ equals (number times duration₁) plus (number times duration₂).

Necessity: If a duration₃ equals a number times (a duration₁ plus a duration₂) then duration₃ equals (number times duration₁) plus (number times duration₂).

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((d1 duration) (d2 duration)
  (d3 duration) (n1 number))
  (if (= d3 (times n1 (+ d1 d2)))
    (= d3 (+ (* n1 d1) (times n1 d2))))

OCL Constraint: context duration
  inv: duration.allInstances->forAll(d2 |
    Integer.allInstances->forAll(n |
Axiom V.8 (Scalar multiplication is distributive over reals): if \( d1 \) is a \texttt{duration}, and \( n1 \) and \( n2 \) are \texttt{numbers}, \( (n1 + n2) \times d1 = n1 \times d1 + n2 \times d1 \).

Necessity:
\[
\text{If a } (\texttt{number}_1 \text{ plus a } \texttt{number}_2) \text{ times a } \texttt{duration}_1 \text{ equals a } \texttt{duration}_2, \text{ then } \texttt{duration}_2 \text{ equals } (\texttt{number}_1 \text{ times } \texttt{duration}_1) \text{ plus } (\texttt{number}_2 \text{ times } \texttt{duration}_1).
\]

CLIF Axiom:
\[
(\forall (\texttt{d1 duration}) (\texttt{n1 number}) (\texttt{n2 number}))
(\texttt{times (+ n1 n2) d1} = (\texttt{times n1 d1} \text{ times} \texttt{n2 d1})).
\]

OCL Constraint:
\[
\text{context } \texttt{duration}
\text{ inv: Integer.allInstances->forAll(n1, n2 |}
\text{self._'times number'(n1 + n2).equals(}
\text{self._'times number'(n1)_'plus duration'(}
\text{self._'times number'(n2))))}
\]

Corollary: For all \texttt{durations} \( d1 \), \( 0 \times d1 = \texttt{D0} \).

Necessity:
\[
\texttt{D0 equals } 0 \text{ times each } \texttt{duration}_1.
\]

CLIF Axiom:
\[
(\forall (\texttt{d1 duration}))
(\times 0 d1 \texttt{D0}).
\]

OCL Constraint:
\[
\text{context } \texttt{duration}
\text{ inv: self._'times duration' = D0}
\]

Corollary: If \( n1 \) is a \texttt{number} and \( d1 \) is a \texttt{duration}, then \( n1 \times d1 = \texttt{D0} \) iff \( n1 = 0 \) or \( d1 = \texttt{D0} \).

Necessity:
\[
\texttt{D0 equals } \texttt{a number}_1 \text{ times a } \texttt{duration}_1 \text{ if and only if } \texttt{number}_1 \text{ equals } 0 \text{ or } \texttt{duration}_1 \text{ equals } \texttt{D0}.
\]

CLIF Axiom:
\[
(\forall ((\texttt{n1 number}) (\texttt{d1 duration})))
(\texttt{iff} (= \texttt{D0} (* \texttt{n1 d1}))
(or
(= \texttt{n1 0})
(= \texttt{d1 D0}))).
\]

OCL Constraint:
\[
\text{context } \texttt{duration}
\text{ inv: Integer.allInstances->forAll( n |}
\text{(self._'times number'(n) = D0) eqv (self = D0 or n = 0) }}
\]

Corollary (Ratio): If \( d1 \) and \( d2 \) are \texttt{durations} and not \( d2 = \texttt{D0} \), then there exists a \texttt{number} \( n1 \) such that \( d2 = n1 \times d1 \).

Necessity:
\[
\text{If a } \texttt{duration}_1 \text{ does not equal } \texttt{D0}, \text{ then a } \texttt{duration}_2 \text{ equals a } \texttt{number}_1 \text{ times } \texttt{duration}_1.
\]

CLIF Axiom:
\[
(\forall (\texttt{d1 duration}))
(\texttt{if (not (= d1 D0))}
\text{(exists ((\texttt{d2 duration}) (\texttt{n1 number}))}
\text{(* d1 n1 d2))))
\]

OCL Constraint:
\[
\text{context } \texttt{duration}
\text{ inv: if (not (self = D0)) then}
\]
8.3.3 Relationships between 'Duration' and 'Time Interval'

The intent of the ‘duration’ concept is to measure time intervals, but the model presented above is a mathematical abstraction that does not depend on time intervals for its properties. What makes it useful is the following set of relationships between durations and time intervals.

Each time interval has a unique duration attribute that is a measure of its size, i.e., the amount of time the time interval occupies. This attribute is mathematically a function that maps time intervals into durations. This mapping function is sometimes called the “range” of a time interval, and some times called the “measure” of a time interval. Following SBVR practice, this specification calls it the duration of a time interval. This sub clause describes the only special cases in which the durations of constructed time intervals are well-defined.
**Figure 8.16 - Relationships between ‘Duration’ and ‘Time Interval’**

**particular duration**
- Concept Type: role
- General Concept: duration
- Definition: the amount of time in a given time interval
- Note: particular duration is an instance of particular quantity whose values are of the quantity kind ‘duration’.
- Example: Particular duration of a particular meeting.
time interval has particular duration

Synonymous Form: particular duration of time interval
Synonymous Form: time interval has duration
Synonymous Form: duration of time interval

Definition: the particular duration is the duration that is the amount of time in the time interval.

Note: This is a primitive concept. It is the fundamental relationship between time intervals and durations. It has no formal definition. But there is a corresponding CLIF function, and a corresponding UML operation, and they can be formally defined in terms of the primitive verb concept.

CLIF Definition: (forall (d ti) (iff (= d ("duration of time interval" ti)) (and ("time interval" ti) (duration d) ("time interval has duration" ti d)))))

Example: The duration of Henry V's life is given by the duration value "35 years."

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t d) (if ("time interval has duration" t d) (and ("time interval" t) (duration d))))

CLIF Definition: (forall (t d) (iff (= ("duration of" t) d) ("time interval has duration" t d)))

Axiom D.1: Each time interval has exactly one duration.

Necessity: Each time interval has exactly one duration.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((t "time interval") (d1 duration) (d2 duration)) (if (and ("time interval has duration" t d1) ("time interval has duration" t d2)) (= d1 d2)))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval' inv: self._'particular duration'->size() = 1

Axiom D.2: Every time interval has a positive duration.

Necessity: The duration of each time interval is greater than D0.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((t "time interval")) (> ("duration of" t) D0))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval' inv: self.duration > D0

Corollary: No time interval has duration D0.

Necessity: The duration of no time interval equals D0.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((t "time interval")) (not (= ("duration of" t) D0)))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval' inv: not self.duration = D0

Corollary: No time interval has a duration that is the additive inverse of the duration of any time interval. Thus, the vector space ‘duration’ is larger than the image of the time intervals.
Necessity: For each time interval \( t_1 \) there is no time interval \( t_2 \) such that the duration of time interval \( t_1 \) plus the duration of time interval \( t_2 \) equals \( D_0 \).

CLIF Axiom: (not (exists ((t1 t2))
  ("duration3 = duration1 plus duration2"
  D0 ("duration of time interval" t1) ("duration of time interval" t2)) ))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
  inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 |
  ((self.duration()) + t2.duration()) = D0))

Axiom D.3: If \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \) are time intervals such that \( t_1 \) is a part of \( t_2 \), then \( D(t_1) \leq D(t_2) \).

Necessity: For each time interval \( t_1 \) and each time interval \( t_2 \) that is a part of time interval \( t_1 \), the duration of time interval \( t_2 \) is less than or equal to the duration of time interval \( t_1 \).

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2)
  (if ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t1 t2)
    ("duration  duration" ("duration of" t1) ("duration of" t2)) ))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
  inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 |
  self._'is part of'(t2)
  implies self._'particular duration'._'is less than'(d2._'particular duration'))

Axiom D.4: If \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \) are time intervals such that \( t_1 \) meets \( t_2 \), \( D(t_1+t_2) = D(t_1) + D(t_2) \).

Necessity: For each time interval \( t_1 \) and each time interval \( t_2 \) that meets a time interval \( t_1 \), the duration of time interval \( t_1 \) plus time interval \( t_2 \) is equal to the duration of time interval \( t_1 \) plus the duration of time interval \( t_2 \).

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
  (if (and
    ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t1 t2)
    ("time interval3 equals time interval1 plus time interval2" t3 t1 t2)
  )
    (= (+ ("duration of" t1) ("duration of" t2)) ("duration of" t3)) ))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
  inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 |
  self.meets(t2)
  implies self.plus(t2)._'particular duration'.equals(self._'particular duration'._'plus duration'(t2._'particular duration')))}

Corollary: If \( t_1, t_2, \) and \( t_3 \) are time intervals such that \( t_1 \) starts \( t_2 \) complementing \( t_3 \), then \( D(t_1) = D(t_2) - D(t_3) \).

Necessity: For each time interval \( t_2 \) and each time interval \( t_3 \) that finishes time interval \( t_2 \), the duration of the time interval \( t_2 \) complementing time interval \( t_3 \) is equal to the duration of time interval \( t_2 \) minus the duration of time interval \( t_3 \).

CLIF Axiom: (forall (t1 t2 t3)
  (if ("time interval1 starts time interval2 complementing time interval3" t1 t2 t3)
    (= ("duration of" t1) (- ("duration of" t2) ("duration of" t3))) ))

OCL Constraint: context _'time interval'
  inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 |
  self.starts(t2)
implies t2._'minus starting interval'(self)._'particular duration'.equals(t2._'particular duration'. _'minus duration'(self._'particular duration'))

**Corollary:** If t1 and t2 are **time intervals** such that t1 finishes t2 complementing t3, then D(t1) = D(t2) – D(t3).

**Necessity:** For each time interval2 and each time interval3 that starts time interval2, the duration of the time interval1 that finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3 is equal to the duration of time interval2 minus the duration of time interval3.

**CLIF Axiom:**

\[ \forall (t1 \ t2 \ t3) \left( \text{if } \left( \text{time interval1 finishes time interval2 complementing time interval3} \right) \right. \]
\[ \left. \left( = \left( \text{"duration of" } t1 \right) \ ( - \left( \text{"duration of" } t2 \right) \ ( \text{"duration of" } t3)) \right) \right) \]

**OCL Constraint:**

context _'time interval'_ inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->forAll(t2 | self.finishes(t2) implies t2._'minus finishing interval'(self)._'particular duration'.equals(t2._'particular duration'. _'minus duration'(self._'particular duration')))

---

**Figure 8.17** - time interval2 is duration before time interval1.

**time interval2 is duration before time interval1**

**Synonymous Form:** time interval2 is duration after time interval1

**Synonymous Form:** time interval1 ends duration before time interval2

**Synonymous Form:** time interval2 starts duration after time interval1

**Synonymous Form:** duration is between time interval1 and time interval2

**Definition:** time interval1 meets some time interval3 that has the duration and meets time interval2

**Description:** The end of one time interval is duration before the start of the other time interval.

**Necessity:** Each duration that is between a time interval1 and a time interval2 is greater than or equal to D0.

**Example:** A time interval that "10:55 refers to is the duration that is quantified by "7 minutes" before a time interval that "11:02 refers to.

**CLIF Definition:**

(forall (t1 t2 d)

(iff ("time interval2 is duration before time interval1" t1 d t2)

and

("time interval" t1)

("time interval" t2)

(duration d)

("time interval1 is before time interval2" t2 t1)

(exists ("time interval" t3)

and

("time interval1 meets time interval2" t2 t3)
Figure 8.18 - **time interval**\_1 starts duration before **time interval**\_2

**time interval**\_1 starts duration before **time interval**\_2

**Definition:** **time interval**\_1 starts with the **time interval**\_3 that has the duration and meets **time interval**\_2.

**Description:** The start of one **time interval** is duration before the start of the other **time interval**.

**Note:** This says nothing about the relationship between **time interval**\_2 and the end of **time interval**\_1.

**CLIF Definition:**

\[
\text{(forall (t1 t2 d) )}
\]

\[
\text{ (iff ("time interval1 starts duration before time interval2" t1 d t2) )}
\]

\[
\text{ (and)}
\]

\[
\text{ ("time interval" t1) ("time interval" t2) (duration d) )}
\]

\[
\text{(exists (t3 "time interval") )}
\]

\[
\text{(and)}
\]

\[
\text{ ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t3 t2) )}
\]

\[
\text{ ("time interval1 starts with time interval2" t1 t3) )}
\]

\[
\text{ ("time interval has duration" t3 d) ) })
\]

**OCL Definition:**

\[
\text{context _'time interval'}
\]

\[
\text{def: _'starts duration before'(d: duration, t2: _'time interval'):Boolean =}
\]

\[
\text{ _'time interval'.allInstances->}
\]

\[
\text{exists(t3 |}
\]

\[
\text{ t2._'is before'(self) )}
\]

\[
\text{ and t2.meets(t3) )}
\]

\[
\text{ and t3.meets(self) )}
\]

\[
\text{ and t3._'particular duration'.equals(d))}
\]
Figure 8.19 - \textit{time interval}₁ \textit{finishes duration after} \textit{time interval}₂

\textbf{time interval}₁ \textit{finishes duration after} \textit{time interval}₂

\textbf{Definition:} \textit{time interval}₁ \textit{finishes with the} \textit{time interval}₃ \textit{that has the duration} and \textit{is met by} \textit{time interval}₂

\textbf{Description:} The end of one \textit{time interval} is \textit{duration} after the end of the other \textit{time interval}.

\textbf{Note:} This says nothing about the relationship between \textit{time interval}₂ and the beginning of \textit{time interval}₁.

\textbf{CLIF Definition:} (forall (t₁ t₂ d)
  (iff ("time interval1 finishes duration after time interval2" t₁ d t₂)
    (and
      ("time interval" t₁) ("time interval" t₂) (duration d)
      (exists (t₃ "time interval")
        (and
          ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t₃ t₂)
          ("time interval1 finishes with time interval2" t₁ t₃)
          ("time interval has duration" t₃ d) )) )))

\textbf{OCL Definition:} context _'time interval' def: _'finishes duration after'(d: duration, t₂: _'time interval'):Boolean = _'time interval'.allInstances->
  exists(t₃ |
    self._'finishes with'(t₃)
    and t₂.meets(t₃)
    and t₃._'particular duration'.equals(d))

Figure 8.20 - \textit{time interval}₁ \textit{is the duration preceding} \textit{time interval}₂

\textbf{time interval}₁ \textit{is the duration preceding} \textit{time interval}₂

\textbf{Synonymous Form:} \textit{the duration preceding} \textit{time interval}₂

\textbf{Definition:} \textit{time interval}₁ \textit{is the} \textit{time interval} that \textit{has the duration} and \textit{meets} \textit{time interval}₂

\textbf{Description:} The time interval of interest (\textit{time interval}₁) is the time period that has the given \textit{duration} and is immediately before the other time interval (\textit{time interval}₂).
Note: The word 'the' before the 'duration' phrase is a required part of the verb phrase.

Example: the two weeks preceding the meeting date

CLIF Definition:
(forall (t1 t2 d)
 (iff ("time interval1 is the duration preceding time interval2" t1 d t2)
 (and
 ("time interval" t1)
 ("time interval" t2)
 (duration d)
 ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t1 t2)
 ("time interval has duration" t1 d))))

OCL Definition:
context _'time interval' def: 'is the duration preceding'(d: duration, t2:'time interval'): Boolean =
 self.meets(t2)
 and self.'particular duration'.equals(d))

Necessity: For each time interval \(_2\) and for each duration, exactly one time interval \(_1\) is the duration preceding time interval \(_2\).

Note: This follows from the definition.

CLIF Axiom:
(forall (t1 d) (exists (t2)
 (and
 ("time interval1 is the duration preceding time interval2" t2 d t1)
 (forall (t3)
 (if
 ("time interval1 is the duration preceding time interval2" t3 d t1)
 (= t3 t2) ))
))

OCL Constraint:
context _'time interval' inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
 forAll(t2 |
 duration.allInstances->forAll(d |
 _'time interval'.allInstances->
 one(t3 | t3 = self.'is the duration preceding'(d, t2))))

Figure 8.21 - time interval\(_1\) is the duration following time interval\(_2\)

time interval\(_1\) is the duration following time interval\(_2\)

Synonymous Form: the duration following time interval\(_2\)

Definition: time interval\(_1\) is the time interval that has the duration and is met by time interval\(_2\)

Description: The time interval of interest (time interval\(_1\)) is the time period that has the given duration and is immediately after the other time interval (time interval\(_2\)).

Note: The word 'the' before the 'duration' phrase is a required part of the verb phrase.

Example: the week following next week
Example: The item is on sale during the two weeks following the holiday.

CLIF Definition:
(forall (t1 t2 d)
  (iff ("time interval1 is the duration following time interval2" t1 d t2)
    (and
      ("time interval" t1)
      ("time interval" t2)
      (duration d)
      ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t2 t1)
      ("time interval has duration" t1 d) )))

OCL Definition:
context _'time interval'
def: _'is the duration following'(d: duration, t2:'time interval'): Boolean' =
  t2.meets(self)
  and self._'particular duration'.equals(d)

Necessity: For each time interval2 and for each duration, exactly one time interval1 is the duration following time interval2.

Note: This follows from the definition.

CLIF Axiom:
(forall (t1 d) (exists (t2)
  (and
    ("time interval1 is the duration following time interval2" t2 d t1)
    (forall (t3)
      (if
        ("time interval1 is the duration following time interval2" t3 d t1)
        (= t3 t2) ))
  )))

OCL Constraint:
context _'time interval'
inv: _'time interval'.allInstances->
  forall(t2 |
    duration.allInstances ->forall(d |
      'time interval'.allInstances->
        one(t3 | t3 = self._'is the duration following'(d, t2)))))

8.4 Time Units

As with other quantity kinds, durations are measured in terms of units. Unlike other quantity kinds, common time units are not simple ratios of each other. This makes for considerable complexity in specifying these time units. The details of this complexity are deferred to Clause 10.

The fundamental source of the complexity is that one of the main time units, ‘year,’ is incommensurable with other time units, such as ‘month’ and ‘day.’ This fact is due to the derivation of “year” and “day” from physical characteristics of our world.
8.4.1 Time Unit Concepts

**time unit**
Definition: precise time unit or nominal time unit
Example: year, week, hour

**precise time unit**
Definition: measurement unit that is a duration
Note: [SI] defines 'hour', 'minute', and 'day' precisely. Although not addressed by [SI], 'week' also meets the definition of 'precise time unit'. Leap seconds are considered to introduce discontinuities in UTC, rather than variation in the definition of 'day'.
Example: second, minute, hour

**nominal time unit**
Definition: set of durations that is defined and adopted by convention, meaning some duration of the set
Note: Sets of durations are quantified as 'duration value sets' in sub clause 8.7.
Note: Each nominal time unit can be traced to counting cycles of some natural phenomenon. Historically the phenomena have been astronomical: the orbital cycles of the Earth and the Moon and the diurnal cycle of the Earth. Unfortunately for time keeping, these cycles are incommensurable, requiring intercalary time periods to maintain synchronization. Leap days have been used since 46 BC with the introduction of the Julian calendar to keep the calendar aligned with seasons of the year.
Note: 'Year' and 'month' are said to be nominal time units because of the effects of leap days.
Example: Year defined as (365 days, 366 days).
Example: Month defined as (28 days, 29 days, 30 days, 31 days). Each month on the Gregorian calendar is a choice of 28, 29, 30, or 31 days.
8.4.2 Standard Time Units

This sub clause provides standard concepts about times of day, as found in [ISO 8601] and [SI], and generally accepted around the world.

**second**
- **Synonym:** s
- **Synonym:** sec
- **Definition:** the precise time unit that is equal to the amount of time required for 9 192 631 770 periods of the radiation corresponding to the transition between the two hyperfine levels of the ground state of the caesium 133 atom
- **Dictionary Basis:** The **International System of Units (SI)** 2.1.1.3 'Unit of time (second)'
- **Note:** The duration of a second is a constant. In 1972, the second broke with astronomy and went to an atomic clock standard.

**millisecond**
- **Synonym:** ms
- **Source:** SI
- **General Concept:** derived unit
- **General Concept:** precise time unit
- **Definition:** 10^{-3} seconds

**microsecond**
- **Synonym:** µs
- **General Concept:** derived unit
- **General Concept:** precise time unit
- **Source:** SI
- **Definition:** 10^{-6} second

**nanosecond**
- **Synonym:** ns
- **General Concept:** derived unit
- **General Concept:** precise time unit
- **Source:** SI
- **Definition:** 10^{-9} second

**picosecond**
- **Synonym:** ps
- **General Concept:** derived unit
- **General Concept:** precise time unit
- **Source:** SI
- **Definition:** 10^{-12} second
**minute**

- **Synonym:** min
- **General Concept:** derived unit
- **General Concept:** precise time unit
- **Source:** ISO 31-1
- **Definition:** the precise time unit that is quantified by '60 seconds'

**hour**

- **Synonym:** h
- **General Concept:** derived unit
- **General Concept:** precise time unit
- **Source:** ISO 31-1
- **Definition:** the precise time unit that is quantified by '3600 seconds'

**day**

- **Synonym:** d
- **Definition:** the precise time unit that is quantified by 86 400 seconds
- **Note:** 'Day' is defined in [SI] as 86 400 seconds. Leap seconds are intercalary seconds of day that are inserted as needed into UTC. Leap seconds do not affect the definition of 'day'.
- **Note:** The duration of a calendar day is not necessarily 1 day, due to leap seconds and discontinuities arising when a locality switches between standard time and daylight time.
- **Note:** Different calendars may define "day" differently. Particularly, in calendars based on solar time rather than ephemeris time, the calendar day may be defined by sunrise to sunrise, sunset to sunset or noon to noon. In such cases, the duration of a calendar day varies cyclically through the calendar year by as much as half an hour, a phenomenon known as the Equation of Time. Solar time is measured by observations and instruments such as sun dials, ephemeris time is measured by clocks.

**year**

- **Definition:** the nominal time unit that is the duration of a time interval required for one revolution of the Earth around the Sun, approximated to an integer number of days
- **Source:** ISO 8601 (2.2.13, ('calendar year'))
- **Definition:** the nominal time unit that is quantified by \{365 days, 366 days\}
- **Note:** There are several methods for reckoning a year. The main method is the return of the Vernal Equinox. This is called a tropical year, whose length is 365.2424 days of 86 400 seconds. There are several other year schemes, whose length in days of 86 400 seconds varies from about 347 days to about 384 days, depending how a year is measured. Such schemes use the term 'year' for different nominal units.
- **Note:** The definition of a year is dependent on the use of a specific calendar. See "Gregorian year".
- **Note:** The business term 'n years' commonly refers to the duration of a specific consecutive sequence of 'year periods' (see 10.3).

**month**

- **Definition:** the nominal time unit that is the duration of a time interval required for one rotation of the Moon in its orbit around the Earth, approximated to a number of days.
Source: ISO 8601 (2.2.12, ‘month’)
Definition: the nominal time unit that is quantified by {28 days, 29 days, 30 days, 31 days}
Note: The business term ‘n months’ commonly refers to the duration of a specific consecutive sequence of 'month periods' (see 10.3).
Note: A lunar month is about 28 days, and is incommensurable with a year. Different calendars define the number of days in a month differently. And the same calendar may define different calendar months to have different numbers of days. The Gregorian calendar has 12 calendar months that were rather arbitrarily set to a certain number of days by Roman politicians, without synchronizing with the lunar cycle.

Source: ISO 8601 (2.2.9, ‘week’)
Definition: the precise time unit that is quantified by 7 days
Definition: the precise time unit that is quantified by 604 800 seconds

8.5 Time Scales
**time scale**

Definition: regular sequence that each member of the regular sequence is a time point

Necessity: Each time scale has exactly one granularity

Necessity: If a member of a time scale has a previous member then each time interval that is an instance of the member is met by some time interval that is an instance of the previous member.

Necessity: If a member of a time scale has a next member then each time interval that is an instance of the member meets some time interval that is an instance of the next member.

Note: These Necessities are really part of the definition of 'time scale'.

Dictionary Basis: IEC 60050-111, ("time scale")

Definition: system of ordered marks that can be associated with time intervals on the Time Axis, with one time interval being chosen as the reference point

Note: [from ISO 8601] A time scale may among others be chosen as:

- continuous, e.g., international atomic time (TAI) (see IEC 60050-713, item 713-05-18);
- continuous with discontinuities, e.g., Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) due to leap seconds, standard time due to summer time and winter time;
- successive steps, e.g., usual calendars, where the Time Axis is split up into a succession of consecutive time intervals and the same mark is attributed to all instants of each time interval;
- discrete, e.g., in digital techniques.

Note: [from ISO 8601] For physical and technical applications, a time scale with quantitative marks is preferred, based on a chosen initial instant together with a unit of measurement.

Note: [from ISO 8601] Customary time scales use various units of measurement in combination, such as second, minute, hour, or various time intervals of the calendar such as calendar day, calendar month and calendar year.

Note: [from ISO 8601] A time scale has a reference point which attributes one of the marks of the time scale to one of the instants, thus determining the attribution of marks to instants for the Time Scale.

Note: Each semantic community should agree on a closed set of time scales.

Example: The clock face of a traditional clock is a time scale.

**granularity**

Synonym: resolution

Concept Type: role

General Concept: time unit

Dictionary Basis: VIM (4.15, 'resolution (2)')

Definition: the smallest duration that can be distinguished with a given time scale

Necessity: Each time scale has exactly one granularity

Example: "Second" as the granularity for a time scale in which each time point has the duration "1 second".
**time scale has granularity**

Definition: The granularity of the time scale is the duration of the time points of the time scale.

---

**finite time scale**

Definition: time scale that has a first member and that has a last member

Note: A finite time scale has a cardinality.

Necessity: Each time point of a finite time scale is a relative time point

Example: the Gregorian year of months scale

Example: the hour of minutes scale

---

**indefinite time scale**

Definition: time scale that is not a finite time scale

Necessity: Each time point of an indefinite time scale is an absolute time point.

Note: An indefinite time scale has no cardinality because it has no first member, no last member, or both.

Example: the Gregorian years scale

---

**absolute time point**

Definition: time point that is of an indefinite time scale

Necessity: Each absolute time point corresponds to exactly one time interval.

Example: The absolute time coordinate 'September 11, 2011' indicates an absolute time point.

---

**relative time point**

Definition: time point that is of a finite time scale
Necessity: Each relative time point corresponds to more than one time interval.

Example: The relative time coordinate 'September 11' refers to multiple time intervals, one in each Gregorian year.

8.6 Time Points

Figure 8.25 - Time Points

**time point**

- Concept Type: concept type
- General Concept: time period
- Definition: concept that specializes the concept 'time interval' and that is a member of a time scale
- Necessity: The duration of each time interval that is an instance of the time point is the granularity of the time scale of the time point.
- Note: Each time point is a concept whose instances are time intervals.
- Reference Scheme: an occurrence at the time point
- Reference Scheme: a time coordinate that indicates the time point
- Reference Scheme: the time scale of the time point and the index of the time point
- Reference Scheme: the time point kind of the time point and the index of the time point
- Note: This is a total reference scheme: every time point is indicated by at least one time coordinate, and some time points may be indicated by multiple time coordinates.
- Example: The Battle of Hastings was on "14 October 1066". (This gives the Julian date of the battle at a granularity of "day". If desired, the battle could be given more precisely as a time period within that calendar day.)
**time scale has time point**

Synonymous Form: time point is on time scale

General Concept: sequence has member

Necessity: Each time scale has at least one time point.

Necessity: Each time point is of exactly one time scale.

**time point has index**

Definition: the index is the index of the sequence position that is in the time scale of the time point and that has a member that is the time point

Necessity: Each time point has exactly one index.

**time point₁ precedes time point₂**

Synonymous Form: time point₂ follows time point₁

Definition: the time scale of time point₁ is the time scale of time point₂ and the index of time point₁ is less than the index of time point₂

Note: This is a special case of member precedes member in the unique sequence that is the time scale of the two time points

**time point₁ is just before time point₂**

Synonymous Form: time point₂ is next after time point₁

Definition: the time scale of time point₁ is the time scale of time point₂ and the sequence position of time point₁, is just before the sequence position of time point₂ in the time scale of time point₁

**time interval starts on time point**

Synonymous Form: time point starts time interval

Definition: some time interval that is an instance of the time point starts the time interval

**time interval ends on time point**

Synonymous Form: time point ends time interval

Definition: some time interval that is an instance of the time point finishes the time interval

### 8.7 Time Periods and Time Point Sequences

This sub clause introduces a general mechanism for references to time intervals.

Many references to time intervals involve expressions using time points to denote the ends of the time interval, such as “2 p.m. to 4 p.m.” Formally, such time intervals may be said to instantiate consecutive sequences of time points on some time scale, what is here called a time point sequence. A single time point used to refer to a time interval may be regarded as a special case of a time point sequence. And like a time point, a time point sequence can refer to more than one time interval, e.g., “2 p.m. to 4 p.m. on Mondays.”

The time intervals that are specified in this way are common in business, and are considered a special class of time interval, called time period. The business user understands the names for the time points and the time period concept; the user need not be aware of the formal model.
**time point sequence**

**Concept Type:** `concept type`

**Definition:** `consecutive sequence of time points`

**Necessity:** All the `time points` of a given `time point sequence` are on the same `time scale`.

**Note:** This is formalized by the Definition and Necessity under 'time point sequence is on time scale'.

**Note:** A `time point sequence` is not necessarily a subsequence of a `time scale` because a `time point sequence` may "wrap around" a finite `time scale` by including `time points` from the end of the `time scale`, followed by `time points` from the start of the `time scale`.

**Reference Scheme:** The first `time point` of the `time point sequence` and the last `time point` of the `time point sequence`.

**Reference Scheme:** The first `time point` of the `time point sequence` and the duration of the `time point sequence`.

**Reference Scheme:** The last `time point` of the `time point sequence` and the duration of the `time point sequence`.

**Necessity:** Each `time point sequence` has at least one member.
Necessity: Each time point sequence has exactly one first time point.
Necessity: Each time point sequence has exactly one last time point.
Note: It is not possible to specify an indefinite time point sequence; i.e., one that has no first time point or no last time point. A time point sequence is a specific section of a calendar. It is possible to specify a time point sequence by specifying the first time point or last time point to be the date or time of an event, including primordiality and perpetuity, if appropriate. It is also possible to specify a time interval by means other than a time point sequence (see clause 16.7).

Necessity: The first time point of each time point sequence that is on an indefinite time scale and that has more than one member precedes the last time point of the time point sequence.
Note: In a time point sequence on an indefinite time scale, the time points are consecutive. But a time point sequence can "wrap around" the end of a finite time scale. For example, "December 25 through January 4". The definition of 'time point sequence corresponds to time interval' just requires the start and finish of the time interval to instantiate the first and last time point. The relationship of the time point sequence to the time scale follows from that requirement.

Example: 22:00 to 06:00
Example: The time point sequence from July 1, 2009 to August 3, 2010.

**time point sequence corresponds to time interval**

Synonymous Form: time interval instantiates time point sequence
Definition: the time interval starts on the first time point of the time point sequence and the duration of the time interval is the duration of the time point sequence
Necessity: Each time point sequence that is on an indefinite time scale corresponds to exactly one time interval.
Note: The corresponding time intervals are determined by the first time point and the cardinality of the time point sequence. This is correct even when the time point sequence "wraps around" the end of a finite time scale.

**time point sequence has duration**

Definition: the duration equals the cardinality of the time point sequence times the granularity of the time point sequence
Necessity: Each time point sequence that has a first time point and a last time point has exactly one duration.
Necessity: Each time point sequence that has no first time point or no last time point has no duration.
Note: The duration of such a time sequence is infinite.
Example: The duration of the time point sequence consisting of Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday is 3 days.

**time period**

Definition: time interval that instantiates some time point sequence
**Figure 8.27 - Time point sequence structure**

**time point sequence** is on **time scale**

- **Synonymous Form:** time scale of time point sequence
- **Definition:** each time point of the time point sequence is a member of the time scale
- **Necessity:** Each time point sequence is on exactly one time scale
- **Example:** A time point sequence consisting of seconds of day is on the day of seconds scale

**time point sequence**₂ is **time point sequence**₁ plus integer

- **Synonymous Form:** time point sequence₂ = time point sequence₁ + integer
- **Synonymous Form:** time point sequence₁, plus integer
- **Synonymous Form:** time point sequence₁ + integer
**Definition:**

time point sequence \(_2\) is on the time scale of time point sequence \(_1\) and the index origin position of time point sequence \(_2\) is the index origin position of time point sequence \(_1\) + the integer.

**Description:**
The time point sequence \(_1\) is shifted by the integer.

**Necessity:**
If a time point sequence \(_1\) is a time point sequence \(_2\) plus an integer, then time point sequence \(_1\) is on an indefinite time scale and time point sequence \(_2\) is on the indefinite time scale.

**Example:**
The time point sequence 2 July 2012 through 4 July 2012 is the time point sequence 1 July 2012 through 3 July 2012 plus \(\frac{1}{2}\).

---

**first time point**

Synonym:
start time point

Concept Type:
role

General Concept:
time point

**time point sequence has first time point**

Synonymous Form:
first time point of time point sequence

Definition:
the first time point is the first member of the time point sequence

Example:
The time coordinate of the first time point of the time point sequence from July 1, 2009 to August 3, 2010 is July 1, 2009.

---

**last time point**

Synonym:
end time point

Concept Type:
role

General Concept:
time point

**time point sequence has last time point**

Synonymous Form:
last time point of time point sequence

Definition:
the last time point is the last member of the time point sequence

Example:
The time coordinate of the last time point of the time point sequence from July 1, 2009 to August 3, 2010 is August 3, 2010.

---

**time point\(_1\) through time point\(_2\) defines time point sequence**

Synonymous Form:
time point sequence is from time point\(_1\) through time point\(_2\).

Definition:
time point\(_1\) is the first time point of the time point sequence and time point\(_2\) is the last time point of the time point sequence

---

**time point\(_1\) to time point\(_2\) defines time point sequence**

Synonymous Form:
time point sequence is from time point\(_1\) to time point\(_2\).

Definition:
time point\(_1\) is the first time point of the time point sequence, and if time point\(_2\) is the first member of the time scale of the time point sequence, the last time point of the time point sequence is the last member of the time scale. And if time point\(_2\) is not the first member of the time scale, the last time point of the time point sequence is the time point that is just before time point\(_2\) (on the time scale).
**time point**, \textit{through} \textit{time point}, 	extit{specifies} time period

Synonymous Form: \textit{time point}, \textit{through} \textit{time point}.

Definition: the \textit{time point sequence} that is from \textit{time point}, \textit{through} \textit{time point} corresponds to the time period.

Possibility: If the \textit{time scale of time point} is a \textit{finite time scale} then \textit{time point}, \textit{through} \textit{time point} \textit{specifies} more than one \textit{time period}.

Note: Contrast \textit{through} with \textit{to}. \textit{Through} is inclusive of \textit{time point}, while \textit{to} is exclusive of \textit{time point}.

Example: "\textit{January through March}", meaning the \textit{time interval} of 3 months duration that starts with January and ends with March.

**time point**, \textit{to} \textit{time point}, 	extit{specifies} time period

Synonymous Form: \textit{time point}, \textit{to} \textit{time point}.

Definition: the \textit{time point sequence} that is from \textit{time point}, \textit{to} \textit{time point} corresponds to the time period.

Possibility: If the \textit{time scale of time point} is a \textit{finite time scale} then \textit{time point}, \textit{through} \textit{time point} \textit{specifies} more than one \textit{time period}.

Note: Contrast \textit{through} with \textit{to}. \textit{Through} is inclusive of \textit{time point}, while \textit{to} is exclusive of \textit{time point}.

Example: "\textit{January to March}", meaning the \textit{time interval} of 2 months duration that starts with January and ends with February.
9   Duration Values (normative)

9.1 General

A duration value is a conceptual structure of meaning that serves to identify a duration. Duration values are amounts of time stated in terms of one or more time units. For example, “60 seconds” or “1 minute”. The concept ‘duration value’, and related concepts, specialize ‘quantity value’ (Annex D.2.3) and its related concepts. These concepts are restated here for clarification and to bring them into this normative text.

In this specification, a precise duration value quantifies a duration. The key difference between ‘duration value’ and ‘duration’ is that a single duration may be quantified by multiple precise duration values. For example, “60 seconds” and “1 minute” quantify the same duration: the two duration values are equivalent.

Complexity arises with duration values that use the nominal time units ‘month’ and ‘year’ because the number of calendar days varies among calendar months, and because some calendar years incorporate leap days. For example, “1 year” is equivalent to “12 months” but it is unclear in everyday usage how “12 months” compares to “365 days”. To help answer the question, this clause introduces the concept of duration value set. A duration value set specifies a set of duration values that are jointly considered equivalent to a nominal duration value. For example, “1 month” is any of (28 days, 29 days, 30 days, 31 days).

Furthermore, this clause specifies common arithmetic and comparison operations on nominal duration values defined as duration value sets. This helps to define what expressions such as “3 months” or “3 months plus 3 days” mean. The advantage of this approach is that it clarifies the results of comparisons such as “3 months < 30 days.”

---

Duration Values Vocabulary

General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Included Vocabulary: Time Infrastructure Vocabulary
Namespace URI: http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#DurationValuesVocabulary

9.2 Duration Values

duration value

Definition: precise duration value or nominal duration value
Definition: atomic duration value or compound duration value
Necessity: Each duration value has at least one atomic duration value.
Note: A duration value can be either atomic or compound and either nominal or precise (see sub clause 9.3).
Example: 45 seconds, 1 year 3 days
9.2.1 Atomic and Compound Duration Values

Duration values can be either atomic (have just one component, such as 10 minutes) or be compound (a combination of multiple atomic duration values, such as 1 year 5 months). Atomic duration values consist of a number and a time unit, such as “4 weeks.” Compound duration values comprise multiple atomic duration values. For example, “3 years 5 months”.

**Figure 9.1 - Duration Values**

**atomic duration value**

Definition: number and time unit together giving magnitude of a duration

Dictionary Basis: VIM 1.19 'quantity value'

Example: 55 seconds is an atomic duration value

**atomic duration value has number**

Definition: if the atomic duration value is a precise atomic duration value, then the number is the ratio of the duration quantified by the atomic duration value to the time unit of the atomic duration value

Definition: if the atomic duration value is a nominal atomic duration value, then the number is the ratio of exactly one of the elements of the duration value set that is specified by the atomic duration value to the time unit of the atomic duration value

Note: In the general case, the number is a mathematical real or complex number. Because the number is a ratio, rational fractions are commonly used in stating duration values. Thus, it is meaningful to say a task took 2.5 days to complete. Fractional numbers are not defined for nominal atomic duration values (except for ½ year, ¼ year, and ¾ year), because they have no clear meaning.

Example: 2.5 years, 5.6318 seconds

Note: When the number is a non-negative integer, it may be thought of as a count of the time units in the duration value. But that view only applies to certain measurement techniques, such as the count of ticks of a clock.

Example: 8 months

Possibility: The number is less than 0.
Note: Although there are no negative durations, the number of an atomic duration value may be negative. A duration may quantify a (positive) duration even though a component atomic duration value is negative. Typically, a negative atomic duration value arises as an intermediate result of a subtraction. "1 hour 12 minutes - 14 minutes equals 1 hour -2 minutes", which quantifies the same duration that is quantified by "58 minutes".

**atomic duration value has time unit**

Definition: if the atomic duration value is a precise atomic duration value, then the time unit is the reference duration to which the ratio of the duration quantified by the atomic duration value is taken

Definition: if the atomic duration value is a nominal atomic duration value, then the time unit is the reference duration to which the ratio of exactly one element of the duration value set specified by the atomic duration value is taken

Example: "45 minutes" has the time unit 'minute'

**compound duration value**

Definition: combination of two or more atomic duration values that have different time units

Example: "2 hours 20 minutes" quantifies the duration that may also be quantified as "140 minutes"

**duration value has atomic duration value**

Definition: the atomic duration value is one of the summands of the duration value

Example: 1 hour 5 minutes 3 seconds is a compound duration value that is composed of three atomic duration values: 1 hour, 5 minutes, 3 seconds

### 9.2.2 Precise Duration Values

**Time units** are either precise (such as seconds) or nominal (that is years, which can be either 365 days or 366 days; and months, which can be 28 days, 29 days, 30 days, or 31 days). **Duration values** are also nominal or precise according to whether they use nominal or precise time units.
Figure 9.2 - Precise Duration Values

precise duration value
Definition: precise atomic duration value or precise compound duration value
Example: 5 hours
Example: 3 days 5 hours

precise atomic duration value
Definition: quantity value that is an atomic duration value that has a precise time unit
Note: The duration quantified by a precise atomic duration value is the duration whose ratio to the time unit is the number.
Example: 30 seconds

precise compound duration value
Definition: compound duration value that is the combination of two or more precise atomic duration values that have different time units
Example: 5 minutes 30 seconds

Each precise time unit (i.e., the time units ‘second,’ ‘minute,’ ‘hour,’ ‘day,’ and ‘week’) is defined as quantifying a multiple of ‘second’ using the pattern ‘the precise time unit that quantifies <some number of> seconds’. Thus, every precise atomic duration value (i.e., an atomic duration value that uses one of those time units) quantifies a duration that is some multiple of ‘seconds’. For example, ‘3 hours’ quantifies a duration of 10 800 seconds.
**precise atomic duration value quantifies duration**

- **Synonymous Form:** duration is quantified by precise atomic duration value
- **Definition:** the ratio of the duration to the time unit of the precise atomic duration value is the number of the precise atomic duration value
- **Example:** "2 seconds" quantifies a duration that is twice the duration of the time unit 'second'
- **Example:** "1 minute 3 seconds" quantifies a duration that is 63 times the duration of the time unit 'second'

Precise compound duration values quantify durations via a computation that can be summarized as "quantify all the atomic duration values of the precise compound duration value as durations, and then sum them". For example, 2 hours 30 minutes 20 seconds quantifies a duration of '9 020 seconds'.

**precise compound duration value quantifies duration**

- **Synonymous Form:** duration is quantified by precise compound duration value
- **Definition:** the duration is the sum of the durations that are quantified by each precise atomic duration value of the precise compound duration value
- **Example:** 12 weeks 3 days quantifies the duration '8 380 800 seconds'

### 9.2.3 Nominal Duration Values

Nominal duration values are distinguished from precise nominal duration values because a nominal duration value is one of several durations as defined by a calendar. For example, the compound nominal duration value "1 year 1 day" is any of (366 days, 367 days) because 1 year plus 1 day could be either of those.
nominal duration value
Definition: nominal atomic duration value or nominal compound duration value
Necessity: The nominal duration value is the range of a time interval identified by a time period of a time calendar.
Example: 5 months, for example from February through June
Example: 2 years 6 months, for example from January 1990

nominal atomic duration value
General Concept: atomic duration value
Definition: number and nominal time unit together that specify a duration value set
Note: See sub clauses 9.3 and 9.4 for the detailed definition of this concept.
Example: 30 months

nominal compound duration value
Definition: compound duration value that has at least one atomic duration value that is a nominal atomic duration value
Possibility: An atomic duration value of the nominal compound duration value is a precise atomic duration value.
Date-Time Vocabulary v1.3

Example: 1 year 1 day

Each nominal time unit (i.e., the time units ‘year’ and ‘month’) is defined as specifying two or more choices among different numbers of ‘days’ using the pattern ‘the nominal time unit that specifies \{<number1> days, <number2> days, …, <numberm> days\}’. This captures the idea that a year is either 365 days or 366 days, and a month is anywhere from 28 to 31 days.

nominal atomic duration value specifies duration value set

Synonymous Form: duration value set is specified by nominal atomic duration value

Definition: the duration value set is a function of the nominal time unit of the nominal atomic duration value and the number of the nominal atomic duration value, and that function depends upon the nominal time unit.

Note: The meaning of this verb concept is further defined in specializations, two of which are defined in clauses 11.5 and 11.6: ‘year value specifies duration value set’ and ‘month value specifies duration value set’. Other vocabularies can add their own for other nominal time units.

Example: 2 years specifies \{730 days, 731 days\} because the nominal time unit ‘year’ specifies the duration value set \{365 days, 366 days\} and there are no two consecutive leap years.

Unlike precise atomic duration values, a nominal atomic duration value is not a simple multiple of the duration values of the duration value set specified by the nominal time unit of the nominal atomic duration value. For example, 2 years does not quantify ‘2 * 366 days’ because, in the Gregorian calendar, two successive years cannot both be leap years. Thus, 2 years specifies one of \{365 + 365 days, 365 + 366 days\}. Sub clauses 11.5 and 11.6 formally define this for the ‘year’ and ‘month’ nominal time units.

A nominal compound duration value comprises two or more nominal atomic duration values. Each of these nominal atomic duration values specifies a duration value set that is the summation of the individual duration value sets. The summation is computed by pairwise addition of each of the duration value sets that are quantified by the nominal atomic duration values. Adding two duration value sets is defined by the verb concept ‘duration set = duration set1 + duration set2’ in sub clause 9.5.

nominal compound duration value specifies duration value set

Synonymous Form: duration value set is specified by nominal compound duration value

Definition: the duration value set is the sum of the duration value sets that are specified by each atomic duration value of the nominal compound duration value.

Example: 14 months 3 days specifies the duration value set \{427 days, 428 days, 429 days, 430 days, 431 days\}

9.3 Duration Value Arithmetic

Addition and subtraction of duration values, and multiplication and division of duration values by scalar numbers, is defined in terms of the corresponding operations on the individual components of the duration values. For example, “1 year 5 months + 8 months 8 days” produces “1 year 13 months 8 days”. This avoids the complexities of mixed-base arithmetic, which are not resolvable in the case of nominal duration values. (As an example of those complexities, consider that “14 days + 14 days” might be equivalent to either “28 days” or “1 month” depending upon the particular month.)
Figure 9.4 - Duration Value Arithmetic

**duration value**3 = **duration value**1 + **duration value**2

- Synonymous Form: **duration value**1 + **duration value**2
- Synonymous Form: **duration value**3 = **duration value**1 + **duration value**2
- Synonymous Form: **duration value**1 + **duration value**2
- Definition: each **atomic duration value**3 of **duration value**3 equals the sum of the number1 of an **atomic duration value**1 of **duration value**1 and either the number2 of some **atomic duration value**2 of **duration value**2 that has the same time unit, or 0 if there does not exist an **atomic duration value**2 of **duration value**2 that has the same time unit

- Note: This does not use “carries” among atomic duration values of different time units, because they don’t work for nominal time units. The numbers of the atomic duration values that comprise **duration value**3 may be greater than defined in the corresponding time unit.

- Example: 6 years 367 days 4 hours 61 minutes equals 5 years 3 days 4 hours 3 minutes plus 1 year 364 days 58 minutes

- Note: Tools may represent the results of **duration value** addition using mixed-base “carries” when practical.

- Example: 1 hour 80 minutes equals 1 hour 35 minutes plus 45 minutes. A tool may choose to display this result as 2 hours 20 minutes.
**duration value**₃ equals **duration value**₁ minus **duration value**₂

Synonymous Form: **duration value**₁ minus **duration value**₂

Synonymous Form: **duration value**₃ = **duration value**₁ - **duration value**₂

Synonymous Form: **duration value**₁ - **duration value**₂

Definition: each atomic duration value₃ of duration value₃ equals the number₁ of an atomic duration value₁ of duration value₁ minus either the number₂ of some atomic duration value₂ of duration value₂ that has the same time unit, or 0 if there does not exist an atomic duration value₂ of duration value₂ that has the same time unit

Possibility: The number of some atomic duration value of duration value₃ may be negative.

Note: This does not use “borrows” among atomic duration values of different time units, because they don’t work for nominal time units. Negative atomic duration values may occur.

Example: 1 year -5 days equals 1 year 45 days minus 50 days

**duration value**₂ equals number times **duration value**₁

Synonymous Form: **duration value** equals duration value times number

Synonymous Form: number times **duration value**

Synonymous Form: **duration value** times number

Synonymous Form: **duration value** = number * duration value

Synonymous Form: duration value = duration value * number

Synonymous Form: number * duration value

Definition: each atomic duration value₁ of duration value₁, multiplied by the given number equals some atomic duration value₂ of duration value₂

Example: 5 days quantifies the duration that equals 5 times 1 day

Possibility: The number is negative.

Example: -5 days

Note: Negative duration values arise from arithmetic formulae. However, a negative duration value does not quantify any duration.

Possibility: If duration value₁ is a precise duration value then the number is fractional.

Example: 5.5 days quantifies the duration that equals 5.5 times 1 day

Necessity: 3 months equals ¼ times ‘year’.

Necessity: 6 months equals ½ times ‘year’.

Necessity: 6 months equals 2/₄ times ‘year’.

Necessity: 9 months equals ¾ times ‘year’.

Note: This specification defines only the fractional nominal duration values ¼ year, ½ year, 2/₄ year, and ¾ year because these are in common business use and they equal an integral number of months.

Example: 5.5 years quantifies the duration that equals 5.5 times 1 year
9.4 Duration Value Comparison

Comparison of duration values is defined in terms of the same operations on the quantified durations or specified duration value sets. The benefit of the unusual semantic for nominal duration values is that these comparisons have useful results for many nominal duration values. For example, the expression “1 year 1 day > 365 days” is true for both possible duration values that are specified by 1 year 1 day.

Figure 9.5 - Duration Value Comparison
precise duration value\textsubscript{1} is equivalent to precise duration value\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: precise duration value\textsubscript{1} equals precise duration value\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: precise duration value\textsubscript{1} = precise duration value\textsubscript{2}

Definition: precise duration value\textsubscript{1} quantifies duration\textsubscript{1} and precise duration value\textsubscript{2} quantifies duration\textsubscript{2}, and duration\textsubscript{1} = duration\textsubscript{2}

Example: “3 days 12 hours” is equivalent to “84 hours”

nominal duration value\textsubscript{1} is equivalent to nominal duration value\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value\textsubscript{1} equals nominal duration value\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value\textsubscript{1} = nominal duration value\textsubscript{2}

Definition: nominal duration value\textsubscript{1} = duration value set\textsubscript{1} and nominal duration value\textsubscript{2} = duration value set\textsubscript{2}, and duration value set\textsubscript{1} = duration value set\textsubscript{2}

Example: “1 month” is equivalent to “1 month”

Example: “1 year 1 day” is not equivalent to “366 days”

precise duration value is equivalent to nominal duration value

Synonymous Form: precise duration value equals nominal duration value

Synonymous Form: precise duration value = nominal duration value

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value is equivalent to precise duration value

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value equals precise duration value

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value = precise duration value

Definition: nominal duration value quantifies a duration value set and precise duration value quantifies a duration that = some duration of the duration value set

Example: “28 days” is equivalent to “1 month”

precise duration value\textsubscript{1} is less than or equal to precise duration value\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: precise duration value\textsubscript{2} is greater than or equal to precise duration value\textsubscript{1}

Synonymous Form: precise duration value\textsubscript{1} \leq precise duration value\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: precise duration value\textsubscript{2} \geq precise duration value\textsubscript{1}

Definition: precise duration value\textsubscript{1} quantifies duration\textsubscript{1} and precise duration value\textsubscript{2} quantifies duration\textsubscript{2}, and duration\textsubscript{1} \leq duration\textsubscript{2}

Example: “1 hour 30 minutes” is less than or equal to “2 days 30 minutes”

nominal duration value\textsubscript{1} is less than or equal to nominal duration value\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value\textsubscript{2} is greater than or equal to nominal duration value\textsubscript{1}

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value\textsubscript{1} \leq nominal duration value\textsubscript{2}

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value\textsubscript{2} \geq nominal duration value\textsubscript{1}

Definition: nominal duration value\textsubscript{1} quantifies duration value set\textsubscript{1} and nominal duration value\textsubscript{2} quantifies duration value set\textsubscript{2}, and duration value set\textsubscript{1} \leq duration value set\textsubscript{2}

Example: “1 month 1 day” is less than or equal to “1 month 2 days”
**precise duration value** is less than or equal to **nominal duration value**

Synonymous Form: precise duration value ≤ nominal duration value

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value is greater than or equal to precise duration value

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value ≥ precise duration value

Definition: precise duration value quantifies duration and nominal duration value quantifies duration value set and duration ≤ duration value set

Example: “366 days” is less than or equal to “1 year 1 day”

**nominal duration value** is less than or equal to **precise duration value**

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value ≤ precise duration value

Synonymous Form: precise duration value is greater than or equal to nominal duration value

Synonymous Form: precise duration value ≥ nominal duration value

Definition: nominal duration value quantifies duration value set and precise duration value quantifies duration and duration value set ≤ duration

Example: “2 years 1 day” is less than or equal to “732 days”

**precise duration value₁** is less than **precise duration value₂**

Synonymous Form: precise duration value₂ is greater than precise duration value₁

Synonymous Form: precise duration value₁ < precise duration value₂

Synonymous Form: precise duration value₂ > precise duration value₁

Definition: precise duration value₁ quantifies duration₁ and precise duration value₂ quantifies duration₂ and duration₁ < duration₂

Example: “1 hour 30 minutes” is less than “91 minutes”

**nominal duration value₁** is less than **nominal duration value₂**

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value₂ is greater than nominal duration value₁

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value₁ < nominal duration value₂

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value₂ > nominal duration value₁

Definition: nominal duration value₁ quantifies duration value set₁ and nominal duration value₂ quantifies duration value set₂ and duration value set₁ < duration value set₂

Example: “1 month 1 day” is less than “1 month 2 days”

**precise duration value** is less than **nominal duration value**

Synonymous Form: precise duration value < nominal duration value

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value is greater than precise duration value

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value > precise duration value

Definition: precise duration value quantifies duration and nominal duration value quantifies duration value set and duration < duration value set

Example: “366 days” is less than “1 year 2 days”

**nominal duration value** is less than **precise duration value**

Synonymous Form: nominal duration value < precise duration value

Synonymous Form: precise duration value is greater than nominal duration value
Synonymous Form:  
- precise duration value > nominal duration value

Definition:  
nominal duration value quantifies duration value set and precise duration value quantifies duration and duration value set < duration

Example:  
- "1 month 1 day is less than 34 days"

9.5 Duration Value Sets

This sub clause defines the concept ‘duration value set’ and those relationships of that concept that are needed to semantically ground other features of this specification.

**duration value set**

Definition:  
set of duration values

Possibility:  
the cardinality of a duration value set is 0

Example:  
the duration value set that is quantified by {60 seconds, 64 seconds}

The following concepts support comparison of two duration value sets.

Figure 9.6 - Duration Value Set Comparisons

**duration value set**₁ equals duration value set₂

**duration value set**₁ is less than or equal to duration value set₂

**duration value set**₁ is less than duration value set₂

**duration value set**₁ includes duration value

**set** (SBVR-DTV)

The following concepts support comparison of two duration value sets.

**duration value set**₁ equals duration value set₂

Synonymous Form:  
duration value set₁ is equal to duration value set₂

Synonymous Form:  
duration value set₁ is equivalent to duration value set₂
Synonymous Form:  \( \text{duration value set}_1 = \text{duration value set}_2 \)

Definition:  each duration of duration value set\(_1\) = some duration of duration value set\(_2\) and each duration of duration value set\(_2\) = some duration of duration value set\(_1\)

Example:  the duration value set \{1 week, 2 weeks\} equals the duration value set \{7 days, 14 days\}

Example:  the duration value set \{1 day, 2 days\} equals the duration value set \{2 days, 1 day\}

**duration value set\(_1\) is less than or equal to duration value set\(_2\)**

Synonymous Form:  \( \text{duration value set}_2 \) is greater than or equal to \( \text{duration value set}_1 \)

Synonymous Form:  \( \text{duration value set}_1 \) ≤ \( \text{duration value set}_2 \)

Synonymous Form:  \( \text{duration value set}_1 \) > \( \text{duration value set}_2 \)

Definition:  each duration of \( \text{duration value set}_1 \) is less than or equal to each duration of \( \text{duration value set}_2 \)

Example:  the duration value set \{1 day, 2 days\} is less than or equal to the duration value set \{2 days, 4 days\}

**duration value set\(_1\) is less than duration value set\(_2\)**

Synonymous Form:  \( \text{duration value set}_2 \) is greater than \( \text{duration value set}_1 \)

Synonymous Form:  \( \text{duration value set}_1 \) < \( \text{duration value set}_2 \)

Synonymous Form:  \( \text{duration value set}_1 \) > \( \text{duration value set}_2 \)

Definition:  each duration of \( \text{duration value set}_1 \) is less than each duration of \( \text{duration value set}_2 \)

Example:  the duration value set \{1 day, 2 days\} is less than the duration value set \{3 days, 4 days\}

**Durations** can be compared with **duration value sets**.
### Figure 9.7 - Comparisons among Duration Value Sets and Durations

#### duration value set equals duration

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration} = \text{duration value set} \)

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration value set} = \text{duration} \)

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration equals duration value set} \)

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration value set is equivalent to duration} \)

**Definition:** each duration value of the duration value set equals the given duration

**Example:** the duration value set \{1 day\} equals the duration that is quantified by 1 day

#### duration value set is less than or equal to duration

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration is greater than or equal to duration value set} \)

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration value set < duration} \)

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration > duration value set} \)

**Definition:** each duration value of the duration value set is less than or equal to the given duration

**Example:** the duration value set \{1 day, 2 days\} is less than or equal to the duration that is quantified by 2 days

#### duration is less than or equal to duration value set

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration value set is greater than or equal to duration} \)

**Synonymous Form:** \( \text{duration < duration value set} \)
Synonymous Form: \textbf{duration value set} \textgreater \textbf{duration}

Definition: \textbf{duration} \textit{is less than or equal to} each \textbf{duration value} of the \textbf{duration value set}

Example: the \textbf{duration} that \textit{is quantified by 28 days} \textit{is less than or equal to} the \textbf{duration value set} \{28 days, 29 days\}

duration value set \textit{is less than} duration

Synonymous Form: \textbf{duration} \textit{is greater than} \textbf{duration value set}

Synonymous Form: \textbf{duration value set} \textless \textbf{duration}

Synonymous Form: \textbf{duration} \textgreater \textbf{duration value set}

Definition: each \textbf{duration value} of the \textbf{duration value set} \textit{is less than} the given \textbf{duration}

Example: the \textbf{duration value set} \{1 day, 2 days\} \textit{is less than} the \textbf{duration} that \textit{is quantified by} 3 days

duration \textit{is less than} duration value set

Synonymous Form: \textbf{duration value set} \textit{is greater than} duration

Synonymous Form: \textbf{duration} \textless \textbf{duration value set}

Synonymous Form: \textbf{duration value set} \textgreater \textbf{duration}

Definition: \textbf{duration} \textit{is less than} each \textbf{duration value} of the \textbf{duration value set}

Example: the \textbf{duration} that \textit{is quantified by 364 days} \textit{is less than} the \textbf{duration value set} \{365 days, 366 days\}

Specification of \textbf{compound nominal duration values} as \textbf{duration value sets} requires addition and subtraction among \textbf{durations} and \textbf{duration value sets}, and addition and subtraction among two \textbf{duration value sets}. 
Figure 9.8 - Duration Value Set Arithmetic

**duration value set** \(_2\) equals **duration value set** \(_1\) plus **duration**

Synonymous Form:  
\[
\text{duration value set}_2 \text{ equals duration value set}_1 \text{ plus duration}
\]

\[
\text{Synonymous Form: duration value set}_2 = \text{duration value set}_1 + \text{duration}
\]

\[
\text{Synonymous Form: duration value set}_2 = \text{duration} + \text{duration value set}_1
\]

\[
\text{Synonymous Form: duration value set}_1 \text{ plus duration}
\]

\[
\text{Synonymous Form: duration} + \text{duration value set}_1
\]

\[
\text{Synonymous Form: duration plus duration value set}_1
\]
Synonymous Form: duration value set, plus duration
Definition: each duration value of the duration value set equals some duration value of duration value set, plus the duration
Necessity: For each duration value set, and for each duration, exactly one duration value set is the duration value set, plus the duration.
Example: the duration value set ({3 days, 4 days}) equals the duration that is quantified by 2 days plus the duration value set ({1 day, 2 days}).

duration value set equals duration value set, plus duration value set
Synonymous Form: duration value set = duration value set + duration value set
Definition: each duration value of duration value set = some duration value of duration value set, plus some duration value of duration value set, where the duration value and duration value are selected to form a Cartesian product of duration value set and duration value set.
Note: The result set disregards duplicates. Hence the cardinality of duration value set may be less than the product of the cardinalities of duration value set and duration value set.
Necessity: For each duration value set, and for each duration value set, exactly one duration value set is the duration value set, plus the duration value set.
Example: the duration value set ({4 days, 5 days, 6 days}) equals the duration value set ({1 day, 2 days}) plus the duration value set ({3 days, 4 days}).

duration value set equals duration value set, minus duration
Synonymous Form: duration value set = duration value set – duration
Synonymous Form: duration value set = duration value set, minus duration
Synonymous Form: duration value set – duration
Definition: each duration value of duration value set ≥ the duration and each duration value of duration value set = some duration value of duration value set – the duration
Necessity: For each duration value set, and for each duration that is less than or equal to each duration value of duration value set, exactly one duration value set is the duration value set, minus the duration.
Example: the duration value set ({2 days, 0 days}) = the duration value set ({3 days, 1 day}) – the duration that is quantified by 1 day.

duration value set equals duration minus duration value set
Synonymous Form: duration value set = duration – duration value set
Synonymus Form: duration = duration value set
Synonymus Form: duration minus duration value set
Definition: each duration value of duration value set ≤ the duration and each duration value of duration value set = the duration minus some duration value of duration value set.
Necessity: For each duration value set \(_1\) and for each duration that is greater than or equal to each duration value \(_1\) of duration value set \(_1\), exactly one duration value set \(_2\) is the duration minus the duration value set \(_1\).

Example: the duration value set \(\{1 \text{ day, 0 days}\}\) is the duration that is quantified by \(2 \text{ days}\) - the duration value set \(\{1 \text{ day, 2 days}\}\).

duration value set \(_3\) equals duration value set \(_1\) minus duration value set \(_2\)

Synonymous Form: duration value set \(_3\) = duration value set \(_1\) – duration value set \(_2\)
Synonymous Form: duration value set \(_1\) minus duration value set \(_2\)
Synonymous Form: duration value set \(_1\) – duration value set \(_2\)
Definition: duration value set \(_2\) \(\leq\) duration value set \(_1\) and each duration value \(_3\) of duration value set \(_3\) = some duration value \(_1\) of duration value set \(_1\) - some duration value \(_2\) of duration value set \(_2\), where the duration value \(_1\) and duration value \(_2\) are selected to form a Cartesian product of duration value set \(_1\) and duration value set \(_2\).

Note: The result set disregards duplicates. Hence the cardinality of duration value set \(_3\) may be less than the product of the cardinalities of duration value set \(_1\) and duration value set \(_2\).

Necessity: For each duration value set \(_1\) and for each duration value set \(_2\) that is less than or equal to duration value set \(_1\), exactly one duration value set \(_3\) is the duration set \(_1\) minus the duration value set \(_2\).

Example: the duration value set \(\{-1 \text{ days, 0 days, 2 days, 3 days}\}\) is the duration value set \(\{3 \text{ days, 4 days}\}\) - the duration value set \(\{1 \text{ days, 4 days}\}\).
10 Calendars (normative)

10.1 General

Calendars use time scales to impose structure on time.

---

Calendars Vocabulary

General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Included Vocabulary: Time Infrastructure Vocabulary

10.2 Calendar Fundamentals

This sub clause contains definitions true of calendars in general.

![Figure 10.1 - Calendars](image)

**calendar**

Definition: system of time scales specified by a combination of concepts and rules

Note: This concept of calendar can include any date-time conceptual schema, of any granularity. This is more general than the usual calendar concept, which limits the finest granularity to "day". The two most prominent calendars are the Gregorian, whose finest granularity is "day", and the Universal Coordinated Time (UTC), whose finest granularity is "second". UTC uses the Gregorian calendar to get to a day and extends it to define the time of day down to a second calendar.

Note: There are many different calendars, some standard, some cultural, some defined for particular business needs.

Example: Gregorian calendar, lunar calendars, fiscal calendars, manufacturing calendars, tax calendars, religious calendars.

Reference Scheme: the time scales that are defined by a calendar

**calendar defines time scale**

Synonymous Form: time scale is defined by calendar
Synonymous Form: time scale of calendar
Synonymous Form: time scale on calendar
Definition: the calendar specifies the details of the time scale

Example: The Gregorian calendar defines the Gregorian year time scale with other time scales.

10.3 Calendar Time Points and Time Periods

This sub clause defines categories of time points and time periods that indicate time intervals with duration ‘day’, ‘month’, or ‘year’, but are independent of any particular calendar design. These concepts are intended to apply to religious and cultural calendars as well as the Gregorian calendar.

Figure 10.2 - Calendar Time Points

**calendar year**

- Dictionary Basis: ISO 8601 (2.2.13, 'calendar year'
- Concept Type: concept type
- Definition: time point that is defined by a given calendar as a consecutive sequence of calendar days, during which approximately one orbital rotation of the Earth around the Sun is completed
- Note: See "Gregorian year".
- Example: the year 2008 (as defined by the Gregorian calendar)
- Example: the 15th year of the reign of the Pharaoh Akhenaton

**calendar month**

- Concept Type: concept type
Definition: time point that is defined by a given calendar as a consecutive sequence of calendar days in a calendar year, during which approximately one rotation of the Moon in its orbit around the Earth is completed.

Example: August, 1945 (as defined by the Gregorian calendar)

Example: Ramadan in the 63rd year of the Prophet Mohammed

calendar week
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: time point that is defined by a given calendar as 7 consecutive calendar days
Dictionary Basis: ISO 8601 (2.2.8, 'calendar week')
Note: ISO 8601 adds “starting on a Monday” to this definition. This vocabulary drops that phrase because it is culture-specific.
Note: This specification introduces two specific calendar week concepts: 'ISO week' and 'ISO week of year', both of which adopt the ISO 8601 convention that weeks start on Monday. See Clause 12.
Example: The third calendar week of 2009.

calendar day
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: time point that is defined by a given calendar, and that corresponds to time intervals during which approximately one revolution of the Earth occurs on its axis
Necessity: For each calendar, each instance of each calendar day that is defined by the calendar is met by at most one instance of a calendar day that is defined by the calendar.
Example: July 4, 1776 (as defined by the Gregorian calendar)
Example: The time period from sunrise in Rome on the Ides of March in the year 753 after the founding of the City to the following sunrise.

time of day
Definition: time point that is on a time scale that has a granularity that is less than 1 day
Note: time of day time points are defined and discussed in detail in sub clause 13.2. The intent here is that such time scales may be defined by a calendar.
Example: hour of day, second of minute
**year period**

Dictionary Basis: ISO 8601 (2.2.14, note 1)

Definition: time period which starts at a certain time of day at a certain calendar date of the calendar year and ends at the same time of day at the same calendar date of the next calendar year, if it exists. In other cases, the ending calendar date is defined by agreement.

Note: A calendar year corresponds to time periods that start and end as defined by a calendar. A year period starts at any time within an instance of a calendar year.

Example: The concept "fiscal year" defined as the year period from midnight of July 1 of one calendar year to midnight of July 1 of the following calendar year.

**month period**

Source: ISO 8601 (2.2.12, note 1)

Definition: time period that starts at a certain time of day at a certain calendar date of the calendar month and ends at the same time of day at the same calendar date of the next calendar month, if it exists. In other cases, the ending calendar date is defined by agreement.

Note: A calendar month corresponds to time periods that start and end as defined by a calendar. A month period starts at any time within an instance of a calendar month.

Example: From July 15 at noon to August 15 at noon.

**week period**

Definition: time period that starts at a certain time of day on a certain calendar day of the calendar week and ends at the same time of day at the same calendar day of the next calendar week.

Note: A calendar week is a period that starts and ends as defined by a calendar. A week period starts and ends at any time within a calendar week.

Example: Tuesday to Tuesday.
**day period**

Definition: time period that begins and ends at the same local time of day on consecutive calendar days.

Note: A calendar day corresponds to time periods that start and end as defined by a calendar. A day period starts at any time of day within an instance of a calendar day.

Note: A day period is defined by starting and ending at the same local time of day. When the local time of day is affected by a change of time offset between the starting and ending time intervals, the day period can have a duration that is not 24 hours. The duration of a month period or a year period may also be affected by changes in the time offset for the local time of day.

Example: Noon one calendar day to noon the following calendar day.

### 10.4 Time Point Subdivision

The purpose of finite time scales is to provide finer-grained resolution of time intervals within the time intervals that are instances of time points with coarser granularities. In this specification, the relationship between a finite time scale and a coarser time point is called “time point subdivision”. Many finite time scales are defined by the category of time point they subdivide and the granularity of the time points they contain.
Figure 10.4 - Time Point Subdivision

time point kind
Definition: concept that has an extension that is the set of members of exactly one time scale
Necessity: Each time point kind specializes the concept 'time point'.
Necessity: The concept 'time point kind' is a categorization type that is for the concept 'time point'.
Note: 'Time point kind' is a partial categorization of 'time point'. A concept like 'time of day' specializes 'time point', but its extension is not just the members of one time scale.
Concept Type: categorization type

time point kind has time scale
Synonymous Form: time scale defines time point kind
Definition: each time point that is an instance of the time point kind is a member of the time scale
Necessity: Each time point kind has exactly one time scale.
Necessity: Each time scale defines exactly one time point kind.
time point kind has granularity
Definition: the granularity is the granularity of the time scale of the time point kind
Necessity: Each time point kind has exactly one granularity.

finite time scale subdivides time point
Definition: each instance of the time point is an instance of a time point sequence that is on the finite time scale and that has a first time point that is the index origin member of the finite time scale
Note: This verb concept is defined primarily to simplify other definitions.

finite time scale subdivides time point kind
Definition: the finite time scale subdivides each time point that is an instance of the time point kind
Note: This verb concept describes the purpose of the finite time scale: each time point of the finite time scale corresponds to time intervals according to their position relative to the start of a time interval that is an instance of some time point of the time point kind. The first time point of the finite time scale corresponds to time intervals that start the larger time intervals and have a duration equal to the granularity of the finite time scale.
Necessity: The granularity of each finite time scale is less than the granularity of each time point kind that the finite time scale subdivides.
Note: The time point sequence may correspond to more time intervals than the instances of the time point. For example, the day of hours time scale subdivides ISO day of week and day of month, but the time point sequence that is hour of day 0 to hour of day 23 corresponds to every one day time interval, not just every Tuesday and every first of the month.
Example: The day of hours scale subdivides Gregorian calendar day. Every time point that is a Gregorian calendar day is subdivided into 24 hour of day time points, and each corresponding time interval is divided into 24 time intervals, each of which is an instance of one hour of day.
Note: The time point sequence may correspond to more time intervals than the instances of the time point. For example, the day of hours time scale subdivides day of week and day of month, but the time point sequence that is hour of day 0 to hour of day 23 corresponds to every one day time interval, not just every Tuesday and every first of the month.
Example: The Gregorian month of days scale subdivides month of year. Every time point that is a Gregorian month of year is subdivided into some number of day of month time points, and the time point sequences all begin with day of month 1, but the length of the time point sequence depends on which month time point is subdivided.

subdivision
Concept Type: role
General Concept: time point sequence
Definition: time point sequence that is coextensive with a given time point

time point has subdivision
Definition: the subdivision is a time point sequence that corresponds to each instance of the time point and that is on some finite time scale that subdivides the time point
Possibility: A time point has no subdivision.
Possibility: A time point has more than one subdivision.
**time point** sub 1 is subdivided into time point 2

Definition: the subdivision of time point 1 includes time point 2

Note: This verb concept describes the relationship between a time point 1 and each individual time point 2 of a kind that subdivides it. In this specification it is used primarily to express the cardinality of subdivisions.

Example: Gregorian day 3 January 2010 is subdivided into exactly 24 'hour of day' time points. The time interval corresponding to Gregorian date 3 January 2010 is implicitly subdivided into 24 time intervals, each of which is an instance of one hour of day. But that same 24-hour time point sequence is the subdivision of every Gregorian day, and it corresponds to every time interval that is an instance of a Gregorian day.

**finite time scale exactly subdivides time point kind**

Definition: for each time point that is an instance of time point kind, the time point sequence that is the finite time scale corresponds to each time interval that is an instance of the time point

Necessity: Each finite time scale that exactly subdivides a time point kind subdivides the time point kind.

Necessity: If a finite time scale exactly subdivides a time point kind 1, and each time point of the finite time scale is an instance of a time point kind 2, then the number of time point kind 2 that each time point that is an instance of time point kind 1 has is the cardinality of the finite time scale.

Example: The day of hours scale exactly subdivides Gregorian day of month. Every Gregorian day of month therefore has 24 of 'hour of day', because 24 is the cardinality of ’day of hours'.

---

Figure 10.5 - Time Scale Renumbering
**time point maps to time scale**

**Definition:**

The **time point** is not on the **time scale** and each **time interval** that is an instance of the **time point** is an instance of some **time point** of the **time scale**.

**Note:**

This concept is introduced in order to simplify the definitions of **time scale**₁, renumbers **time scale**₂ and **time point**, renumbers **time point**.  

**Example:**

Every **day-of-year** on the **year of days** time scale (see xxx) maps to the indefinite time scale of calendar days. All of the time intervals involved are instances of **calendar day**.

**time point₁ renumbers time point₂**

**Synonymous Form:**

**time point₂ is renumbered by time point₁**

**Definition:**

**time point₁** maps to the **time scale** of **time point₂** and **time point₂** specializes **time point₁**.

**Description:**

Every time interval that is an instance of **time point₂** is also an instance of **time point₁**.

**Possibility:**

A **time point₁** renumbers more than one **time point**.

**Note:**

In particular, a time point on a finite time scale can renumber an indefinite number of time points on an indefinite time scale

**Example:**

Every day-of-year on the year of days time scale renumbers a set of time points on the indefinite time scale of calendar days.

**time scale₁ renumbers time scale₂**

**Definition:**

Each **time point** of **time scale₁** renumbers some **time point** of **time scale₂** and each **time point** of **time scale₂** is renumbered by some **time point** of **time scale₁**.

**Necessity:**

The granularity of each **time scale₂** that a **time scale₁** renumbers is the granularity of **time scale₁**.

**finite time scale repeats over indefinite time scale**

**Definition:**

The **finite time scale** renumbers the **indefinite time scale** and each **time point₁** of the **indefinite time scale** is renumbered by the **time point₄** that is on the **finite time scale** and that is just before the **time point₄** that renumbers the **time point₃** that is next after **time point₁**, if **time point₂** is not renumbered by the index origin member of the **finite time scale**.

**Description:**

Consecutive time points on the finite time scale renumber consecutive time points on the infinite time scale, and at some point the finite time scale starts over beginning with the origin time point.

**Note:**

Figure 10.6 shows the relationship of a finite time scale to an indefinite time scale that it repeats over. The arrows show correspondence to time intervals. The time points of the finite time scale, beginning at the origin, correspond to time intervals that are instances of time points on the indefinite time scale. So, in particular, time point O renumbers time point M and time point N, because it corresponds to the same time intervals. Further, time points M+1 and N+1 are renumbered by time point O+1, and similarly time points M+2 and N+2 are renumbered by time point O+2, and so on. This is the requirement stated in the definition above. Some “last” time point (T) on the finite time scale, however, renumbers the time point that is just before time point N, because the origin time point (O) renumbers time point N.
Figure 10.6 - Time point renumbering

Note: It is possible that time point (T) does not renumber the time point that is just before time point (M). Some other time point on the finite time scale (e.g., T-1) may renumber that time point. It is not a requirement that the entire finite time scale is repeated in every instance. For example, the month of days (finite) time scale renumbers the Gregorian days (indefinite) time scale. The month of days has 31 day of month time points, but the repeating process can start over after index 30, or 29, or 28, as well.

10.5 Time Coordinates

A time coordinate is a conceptual structure of meaning that refers to time intervals using time scales. A time coordinate that refers to exactly one time interval is called an absolute time coordinate. When a time coordinate incorporates a year number, it is always an absolute time coordinate. For example, “January 3, 2011” refers to exactly one day over all time. A time coordinate that refers to more than one time interval is called a relative time coordinate. When a time coordinate omits the year, it is usually relative. For example, “January 3” refers to one day in every calendar year.

An atomic time coordinate is said to indicate a time point on some time scale, either by its name or by its number (called its index). For example, “January” indicates a Gregorian month of year time point, and “day of month 3” indicates a day of month time point. The atomic time coordinate refers to all the time intervals that are instances of that time point.

A compound time coordinate describes a category of the concept ‘time interval’, by combining multiple time coordinates to create a set of atomic time coordinates on different time scales. The compound time coordinate refers to the time intervals that are instances of the smallest granularity time point and that are contained in instances of the larger ones. For example, “July 1” is a compound time coordinate that refers to instances of ‘day of month 1’ that are part of an instance of July. Compound time coordinates don’t always indicate time points. (“July 1” does not indicate a time point; because of leap years, it is not always the same day of year. “July 1, 2011”, however, indicates a time point on the indefinite time scale of Gregorian days.)

Examples are “July 1, 2010 12:43:55”, “ISO week of year 41 ISO day of week 6”, and “1999 day 45”. Clauses 11, 12, and 13 specify which combinations of atomic time coordinates form legitimate compound time coordinates. Invalid combinations typically omit intermediate time units. For example, “2011 12:43:55” makes no sense.
This specification does NOT specify how time coordinates are externally represented, for example on a monitor or in printed form. Many different external formats are employed among different languages and cultures. Representation formats are the choice of individual tools.

When more than one time coordinate refers to exactly the same time intervals, they are said to be equivalent. For example, “January 3, 2011” is equivalent to “2011 day 3” because the two time coordinates refer to the same calendar day time interval. Determining equivalence is not easy because of the incorporation of leap days in some calendar years. For example, whether the 182nd day of the calendar year is before or the same as July 1 of the same calendar year depends upon whether the calendar year is a leap year.

10.5.1 General

![Diagram of time coordinate relationships]

**Figure 10.7 - Time Coordinate**

**time coordinate**

- **Synonym:** time stamp
- **Definition:** conceptual structure of meaning that characterizes a category of the concept 'time interval'
- **Reference Scheme:** an expression that represents the time coordinate
- **Example:** January 2009, 2009 month 1, 2009
- **Note:** Time coordinates may be either absolute or relative (see sub clause 10.5.2).
- **Note:** Time coordinates may be either atomic or compound (see sub clause 10.5.3).
- **Necessity:** Each time coordinate is either an absolute time coordinate or a relative time coordinate.
- **Necessity:** Each time coordinate is either an atomic time coordinate or a compound time coordinate.
- **Note:** Particular kinds of time coordinates are defined in Clauses 11, 12, and 13.

**time coordinate indicates time point**

- **Definition:** the time coordinate characterizes the time point, either by instantiating a reference scheme for the concept 'time point', or by characterizing the time intervals that the time point corresponds to
- **Necessity:** Each time coordinate indicates at most one time point.
Possibility: A time point is indicated by more than one time coordinate.

Note: Atomic time coordinates and compound time coordinates indicate time points in different ways. Each is specified separately below.

Note: See 'compound time coordinate indicates time point' for definitions of exactly how a compound time coordinate indicates a time point.

time coordinate refers to time interval

Note: The purpose of time coordinates is to identify time intervals, but atomic time coordinates and compound time coordinates do that in different ways. So this concept is separately defined for the two categories of time coordinate.

Necessity: Each time coordinate refers to at least one time interval.

10.5.2 Absolute and Relative Time Coordinates

It is convenient to distinguish between absolute time coordinates (time coordinates that include a calendar year and hence can be located on the Time Axis) and relative time coordinates (time coordinates that are relative to some larger time unit).

![Diagram of time coordinates and intervals]

Figure 10.8 - Absolute and Relative Time Coordinates

absolute time coordinate

Definition: time coordinate that refers to exactly one time interval
Necessity: If an absolute time coordinate indicates a time point, the time point is on an indefinite time scale.

Necessity: No absolute time coordinate is a relative time coordinate.

**relative time coordinate**

Definition: time coordinate that refers to more than one time interval

Necessity: If a relative time coordinate indicates a time point, the time point is on a finite time scale.

Necessity: No relative time coordinate is an absolute time coordinate.

Note: A relative time coordinate refers to one time interval within each time period that is an instance of some time point with a greater granularity (e.g., an hour of day is part of a calendar day). Thus the relative time coordinate “recurs” in each instance of the larger time point.

Example: 12 November (which recurs every calendar year)

### 10.5.3 Atomic and Compound Time Coordinates

As with duration values, time coordinates can be atomic (reference just one time scale, as in “5 p.m.”) or compound (referencing multiple time scales, as in “5:00 p.m.”, which combines an hour-of-day and a minute-of-hour).
**atomic time coordinate**

**Definition:** A *time coordinate* that is a term for a *time point* or that uses the index of a *time point* and the *time point kind* of the *time point*.

**Necessity:** No *atomic time coordinate* is a *compound time coordinate*.

**Note:** The two possible forms for an atomic time coordinate are based on two of the reference schemes for a time point. Expressions of these forms directly represent time points.

**Note:** In this specification, the syntax

```
<time point kind term> <index number>
```

indicates a time point by representing the atomic time coordinate that consists of the time point kind of the time point and the index of the time point.
Example: Tuesday
Example: ISO week of year 53
Example: 2010 (understood as a reference to the time point kind Gregorian year and index ’2010’)

atomic time coordinate uses time point kind

Synonymous Form: time point kind of atomic time coordinate
Definition: the time scale of the time point kind is the time scale of the time point that the atomic time coordinate indicates
Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate uses at most one time point kind.
Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate that uses a time point kind uses an index.
Note: Each time point kind is associated with exactly one time scale, and thus one set of time points and their indices.

index

Concept Type: role
General Concept: integer
Definition: integer that is equal to the index of the time point that a given atomic time coordinate indicates

atomic time coordinate uses index

Synonymous Form: index of atomic time coordinate
Definition: the index is an integer that is equal to the index of the time point that is indicated by the atomic time coordinate
Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate uses at most one index.
Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate that uses an index uses a time point kind.
Note: The time point kind specifies a time scale. The index origin value and index origin member of each time scale, which define the relationship of index values to time points, is specified in defining the time scale. In all relative time scales, the index origin member is the first member of the time scale. In the calendar time scales introduced in clauses 11, 12 and 13, the index origin value for Gregorian month of year, Gregorian day of month, Gregorian day of year, ISO week of year, and ISO day of week, use index origin value 1, while time-of-day scales (hour of day, minute of hour and second of minute) use index origin value 0. On the other hand, the index origin members and index origin values of absolute time scales are established by tradition or treaty, and related to events.

atomic time coordinate indicates time point

General Concept: time coordinate indicates time point
Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate indicates exactly one time point.
Note: The following rules define how the two forms of atomic time coordinate indicate time points.
Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate that is a term for a time point indicates the time point.
Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate that uses a time point kind and that indicates the time point that is on the time scale of the time point kind and that has an index that is equal to the index.

atomic time coordinate has time scale

Synonymous Form: time scale of atomic time coordinate
Definition: the time point that is indicated by the atomic time coordinate is on the time scale

Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate has exactly one time scale.

**atomic time coordinate has granularity**

Synonymous Form: granularity of atomic time coordinate

Definition: the granularity is the granularity of the time scale of the time point that is indicated by the atomic time coordinate

Necessity: Each atomic time coordinate has exactly one granularity.

**compound time coordinate**

Definition: time coordinate that is a set of atomic time coordinates

Necessity: The cardinality of each compound time coordinate is greater than 1.

Necessity: No compound time coordinate is an atomic time coordinate.

Necessity: A compound time coordinate refers to a time interval if and only if each time point that is indicated by an atomic time coordinate of the compound time coordinate corresponds to some time interval that includes time interval, and exactly one atomic time coordinate of the compound time coordinate indicates a time point that corresponds to time interval.

Note: Each atomic time coordinate indicates one time point; and each time interval that the compound time coordinate refers to is an instance of the time point with the smallest granularity and is a part of some instance of each other time point.

Note: The set of time intervals to which a compound time coordinate refers may or may not be the extension of some time point. "March 3 at noon" uses a compound time coordinate to refer to time intervals, but there is no corresponding time point. It refers to instances of noon that are part of a March and part of a day of month 3.

Example: "January 2010" represents January on the Gregorian year of months scale, and '2010' on the Gregorian years scale, combined to indicate a particular Gregorian month on the Gregorian months scale.

Example: "'1 February' is the first day of February" mentions (rather than uses) "1 February". The mention means February on the Gregorian year of months scale, day 1 on the Gregorian month of days scale, combined to indicate Gregorian day 32 on the Gregorian year of days scale.

Example: "'1 March' is the first day of March" mentions (rather than uses) "1 March". The mention means March on the Gregorian year of months scale, day 1 on the Gregorian month of days scale, combined to indicate the time set (Gregorian day 60, Gregorian day 61) on the Gregorian year of days scale. The time set models the idea that the meaning of "1 March" depends upon whether it is a common year or a leap year.

Example: "Tax returns are due each 15 April." The quantifier and the use (rather than mention) of "15 April" mean a set of Gregorian days, one in each Gregorian year.

**compound time coordinate includes atomic time coordinate**

Synonymous Form: atomic time coordinate of compound time coordinate

Synonymous Form: compound time coordinate has atomic time coordinate

General Concept: set includes thing

Definition: the atomic time coordinate is an element of the compound time coordinate
Necessity: If a compound time coordinate includes an atomic time coordinate, and an atomic time coordinate that is not atomic time coordinate, the time scale of atomic time coordinate is not the time scale of atomic time coordinate.

Note: That is, no two elements of a compound time coordinate indicate time points on the same time scale.

Example: "2010 month 3" includes {Gregorian year 2010, Gregorian month of year 3} to indicate Gregorian month 24111 and refer to its unique instance.

Compound time coordinates are constructed using the combines verb concept, which specifies a combination of time coordinates. The atomic time coordinates that are combined, and the atomic time coordinates that are elements of any compound time coordinates that are combined, together compose the set that is the compound time coordinate.

Compound time coordinate combines time coordinate
Definition: if the time coordinate is an atomic time coordinate, the time coordinate is an element of the compound time coordinate; and if the time coordinate is a compound time coordinate, each atomic time coordinate of the time coordinate is an element of the compound time coordinate.

Example: A date time coordinate combines a date coordinate and a time of day coordinate. The date coordinate is a compound time coordinate that includes Gregorian year, month of year and day of month atomic time coordinates. The time of day may be given as hour of day and minute of hour atomic time coordinates. The set that is the date time coordinate includes exactly the year, month, day, hour, and minute atomic time coordinates.

Compound time coordinate indicates time point
Synonymous Form: time point indicated by compound time coordinate
General Concept: time coordinate indicates time point
Definition: the compound time coordinate refers to each instance of the time point, and each time interval that the compound time coordinate refers to is an instance of the time point.

Note: This definition says that a compound time point indicates any time point that is coextensive with the category of time interval that the compound time coordinate characterizes. In practice, some algorithm relates the set of atomic time coordinates to a specific time point on an entirely different time scale.

Possibility: A time point is indicated by more than one compound time coordinate.

Note: See sub clauses 11.6, 12.4, and 13.3 for details about how atomic time coordinates are combined in the compound time coordinates that are defined by standard calendars.

Example: "January 4, 2010" indicates Gregorian day 733778.

The meaning of every time coordinate is defined with respect to a particular time scale. For example, year time coordinates are defined on the Gregorian years scale. Commonly-used time coordinates are specified earlier in this document. Less commonly-used time coordinates are defined here.

A time coordinate can be absolute or relative, and atomic or compound. This yields four combinations.
absolute atomic time coordinate
Definition: absolute time coordinate that is an atomic time coordinate
Example: 2010

absolute compound time coordinate
Definition: absolute time coordinate that is a compound time coordinate
Example: 5 April 2010

relative atomic time coordinate
Definition: relative time coordinate that is an atomic time coordinate
Example: January

relative compound time coordinate
Definition: relative time coordinate that is a compound time coordinate
Example: 10:00

10.5.4 Time Coordinate Equivalence

Equivalence of time coordinates captures the idea that they can mean the same thing though given differently. For example, “February 15” and “day 46” are equivalent.
Figure 10.11 - Time Coordinate Equivalence

time coordinate₁ is equivalent to time coordinate₂

**Definition:**

time coordinate₁ refers to each time interval that time coordinate₂ refers to and time coordinate₂ refers to each time interval that time coordinate₁ refers to.

**Necessity:**

If time coordinate₁ indicates some time point₁ and time coordinate₂ indicates some time point₂ then time point₁ is time point₂.

**Example:**

"2010 day 3" is equivalent to "January 3, 2010"

**Example:**

"March" is equivalent to "month 3"

**Example:**

"March 1" refers to the set {Gregorian day of year 60 in common years, Gregorian day of year 61 in leap years}. Therefore March 1 is not equivalent to Gregorian day of year 61.

### 10.6 Time Sets

A **time set** represents a choice of one or more possible **time point sequences** on a given **time scale**. Each **time point sequence** may contain one or more **time points**. This concept models the idea that a **relative time point** may **convert to** one of several different **time point sequences** on a related **relative time scale**, depending on the **absolute time point** that the **relative time scales** subdivide.

In particular, every **Gregorian month of year converts to** a **time set** on the **Gregorian year of days scale**, which depends upon whether the **Gregorian year** is a **common year** or a **leap year**. The **time set** concept may be needed for other calendars with variable-length subdivisions.
**time set**

Definition: 

set of time point sequences

Necessity: 

the cardinality of a time set is greater than 0

Necessity: 

Some time scale, is the time scale of each time point sequence that is in a given time set

Example: 

the time set {Gregorian day of year 59, Gregorian day of year 60}

**time set1 is equivalent to time set2**

Synonymous Form: 

time set1 equals time set2

Synonymous Form: 

time set1 = time set2

Definition: 

each time point sequence1 of time set1 is some time point sequence2 of time set2 and each time point sequence2 of time set2 is some time point sequence1 of time set1

Example: 

{Gregorian day of year 59 through Gregorian day of year 60, Gregorian day of year 60 through Gregorian day of year 61} is equivalent to {Gregorian day of year 60 through Gregorian day of year 61, Gregorian day of year 59 through Gregorian day of year 60}

**time point sequence matches time set**

Synonymous Form: 

time set matches time period

General Concept: 

thing is in set

Definition: 

time point sequence is some time point sequence of time set
Example: **Gregorian day of year 60** matches **March 1** because **March 1** is either **Gregorian day of year 60** or **Gregorian day of year 61**

**Figure 10.13 - Time Set Relations**

**time set** is on or before **time set**

Synonymous Form: **time set** is on or after **time set**

Synonymous Form: **time set** < **time set**

Synonymous Form: **time set** > **time set**

Definition: each **time point sequence** of **time set** corresponds to a **time interval** that is before the **time interval** that instantiates each **time point sequence** of **time set**

Example: **Gregorian day of year 100 through Gregorian day of year 101** is on or before **Gregorian day of year 101 through Gregorian day of year 102**

**time period** is on or before **time set**

Synonymous Form: **time set** is on or after **time period**

Synonymous Form: **time period** < **time set**

Synonymous Form: **time set** > **time period**

Definition: **time period** is before the **time interval** that instantiates each **time point sequence** of **time set**

Example: **Gregorian day of year 102** is on or before **Gregorian day of year 102, Gregorian day of year 103**

Example: "**January**" is on or before **Gregorian day of year 102 through Gregorian day of year 103**

**time set** is on or before **time period**

Synonymous Form: **time period** is on or after **time set**

Synonymous Form: **time set** < **time period**
Synonymous Form: \( \text{time period} > \text{time set} \)
Definition: the time interval that instantiates each time point sequence of time set is before time period
Example: 
\( \{\text{Gregorian day of year 102, Gregorian day of year 103}\} \) is on or before Gregorian day of year 103

**\text{time set}_1 \text{ is before } \text{time set}_2**

Synonymous Form: \( \text{time set}_2 \text{ is after } \text{time set}_1 \)
Synonymous Form: \( \text{time set}_1 < \text{time set}_2 \)
Synonymous Form: \( \text{time set}_2 > \text{time set}_1 \)
Definition: the time interval\(_1\) that instantiates each time point sequence\(_1\) of time set\(_1\) is before the time interval\(_2\) that instantiates each time period\(_2\) of time set\(_2\)
Example: 
\( \{\text{Gregorian day of year 100 through Gregorian day of year 101}\} \) is before \( \{\text{Gregorian day of year 102 through Gregorian day of year 103}\} \)

**\text{time period} \text{ is before } \text{time set}**

Synonymous Form: \( \text{time set} \text{ is after } \text{time period} \)
Synonymous Form: \( \text{time period} < \text{time set} \)
Synonymous Form: \( \text{time set} > \text{time period} \)
Definition: the time period precedes the time interval that instantiates each time point sequence of time set
Example: 
Gregorian day of year 101 is before \( \{\text{Gregorian day of year 102 through Gregorian day of year 103}\} \)

**\text{time set} \text{ is before } \text{time period}**

Synonymous Form: \( \text{time period} \text{ is after } \text{time set} \)
Synonymous Form: \( \text{time set} < \text{time period} \)
Synonymous Form: \( \text{time period} > \text{time set} \)
Definition: the time interval that instantiates each time point sequence of time set precedes time period
Example: 
\( \{\text{Gregorian day of year 102 through Gregorian day of year 103}\} \) is before Gregorian day of year 104

### 10.7 Dates and Times of Day

The most common references to specific time intervals are to specific days (calendar days) and to specific times of day. This section introduces the general concepts calendar date (coordinate), which refers to a calendar day, and time of day coordinate, which refers to a specific time period within a calendar day. A calendar date may be combined with a time of day coordinate to produce a date time coordinate.
**calendar date**

- **Synonym:** date
- **Synonym:** date coordinate
- **Synonym:** calendar date coordinate
- **Definition:** absolute time coordinate that indicates a calendar day
- **Note:** Most calendar dates are compound time coordinates.
- **Example:** The Gregorian date coordinate “January 25, 2012” is a calendar date.

**time of day coordinate**

- **Definition:** relative time coordinate that indicates a time of day
- **Note:** Each time of day coordinate indicates a time point on a finite time scale whose granularity is smaller than 1 day. That is, a time of day coordinate refers to time intervals that are within a calendar day.
- **Example:** The standard time coordinate "15:00" is a time of day coordinate.

**date time**

- **Synonym:** date time coordinate
- **Synonym:** date and time
- **Definition:** absolute compound time coordinate that combines a calendar date and that combines a time of day coordinate
- **Necessity:** Each date time refers to exactly one time interval.
- **Necessity:** Each date time refers to the time interval that the time of day coordinate of the date time refers to and that is during the time interval that the calendar date of the date time refers to.
- **Note:** That is, the date time refers to the unique time interval that is at that time of day and on that date.
Example: 
June 9, 1990 5:49:03 p.m.
Example: 
13:00 on 1949 day 53
Example: 
6 p.m. on 2010 August 6

date time combines calendar date

Synonymous Form: calendar date of date time
General Concept: compound time coordinate combines time coordinate
Note: This verb concept wording provides a term for the date coordinate that the date time combines.
Necessity: Each date time combines exactly one calendar date.

date time combines time of day coordinate

Synonymous Form: time of day coordinate of date time
General Concept: compound time coordinate combines time coordinate
Note: This verb concept wording provides a term for the time of day coordinate that the date time combines.
Necessity: Each date time combines exactly one time of day coordinate.

10.8 Time Scale Comparison and Conversion

Two time points are commensurable (comparable) if and only if they are on the same time scale, or can both be converted to a common time scale. For example, “hour 10” is commensurable with “11:30” because “hour 10” can be converted to a minute of day on the day of minutes scale, and “11:30” is on already that time scale. “hour 10” is not commensurable with “March” because they cannot be converted to any common time scale.
Figure 10.15 - Time Scale Commonality and Conversion

The concept “*time point*, shares common scale with *time point*,” is used below to declare specific combinations of *time points* that can be compared if they are converted to particular *common time scales*. Other combinations are not commensurable.

**common time scale**

- **Concept Type:** role
- **General Concept:** time scale

*time point*₁ shares common time scale with *time point*₂

- **Definition:** some *time point sequence*₁ on the *common time scale* corresponds to each *time period* that *instantiates* *time point*₁ and some *time point sequence*₂ on the *common time scale* corresponds to each *time period* that *instantiates* *time point*₂

The concept “*time point converts to* *time point sequence*” describes conversion of a *time point* on some *time scale*₁ to a *time point sequence* on some *time scale*₂. The *time point* and the *time point sequence* correspond to the same *time intervals*. The target *time scale*₂ always has a *granularity* that is less than or equal to the *granularity* of *time scale*₁. For example, the *Gregorian month of year* that *is indicated by* “January” (on the *Gregorian year of months scale*) converts to the *time point sequence* from *Gregorian day of year 1 through* *Gregorian day of year 31* on the *Gregorian year of days scale*.

Clause 11.8 uses this concept to define specific conversions for Gregorian calendar time points. The concept applies to absolute time points and relative time points.
time point converts to time point sequence
Definition: the time point is coextensive with the time point sequence
Necessity: The granularity of the time scale of a time point is greater than the granularity of the time scale of each time point sequence that the time point converts to.
Possibility: A time point that converts to a time point sequence is an absolute time point or is a relative time point.
Description: The time point and the time point sequence are two different ways to identify the same time intervals.
Note: The method _"time point"._"converted to time scale" returns the time point sequence(s) that the time point converts to on the given time scale. It is provided for convenience in formulating OCL rules.
Note: The specific conversions supported by this document are defined below in verb concepts that specialize "time coordinate converts to time point sequence on time scale." The time point that is indicated by the time coordinate January 2012 converts to the time point sequence 2012 day 1 through 2012 day 31 on the Gregorian days scale.

time point converts to time set
Definition: each instance of the time point is an instance of at least one time point sequence of the time set
Necessity: The granularity of the time scale of a time point is greater than the granularity of the time scale of each time point sequence that is in a time set that the time point converts to.
Possibility: A time point that converts to a time set is an absolute time point or is a relative time point.
Description: The time scale is defined with discontinuities (e.g., leap days), such that the time set identifies several alternative time intervals that may correspond to the time point.
Example: The time point that is indicated by the time coordinate 'February' converts to the time set (Gregorian day of year 32 through Gregorian day of year 59, Gregorian day of year 32 through Gregorian day of year 60) on the Gregorian year of days scale.

compound time coordinate converts to time set on time scale
Definition: each time point sequence of the time set corresponds to some time interval that the compound time coordinate refers to, and each time interval that the compound time coordinate refers to is an instance of exactly one time point sequence of the time set
Note: In most cases of interest, each of the time point sequences will consist of a single time point. "15 June" refers to one calendar day in each Gregorian year, but in common years it is Gregorian day of year 165 and in leap years it is Gregorian day of year 166. So, "15 June" converts to the time set {Gregorian day of year 165, Gregorian day of year 166} on the Gregorian year of days scale.

10.9 Mixed Base Time Arithmetic

Addition of a duration value to a time coordinate, subtraction of a duration value from a time coordinate, and subtraction of one time coordinate from another all employ “mixed-based time arithmetic.” This is an extension of traditional mixed-base arithmetic as employed, for example, in the old-style English currency of pounds, shillings, and pence. The variation of mixed-base arithmetic that is described here accommodates the special issues raised by the nominal time units ‘year’ and
‘month’, and by the fact that ‘week’ is incommensurate with ‘year’. This procedure is described in text, rather than as a set of SBVR concept definitions, because SBVR is not adapted to defining complex procedures.

Both addition and subtraction apply from the start of a time coordinate. For example, “9 April + 10 hours” is “9 April 10:00”, while “9 April – 10 hours” is “8 April 14:00”.

Mixed-base arithmetic is performed by separately adding or subtracting the individual components of a time coordinate, and then, if necessary, performing a “carry” (for addition) or “borrow” (for subtraction) from the number of the atomic time coordinate that has the next coarser time unit. The result may be either compound or atomic. For example, “9 days 20 minutes = 6 days 13 hours 27 minutes + 2 days 10 hours 53 minutes” by the following steps:

27 minutes + 53 minutes $\Rightarrow$ 80 minutes $\Rightarrow$ 20 minutes with 1 hour carry
13 hours + 10 hours + 1 hour carry $\Rightarrow$ 24 hours $\Rightarrow$ 0 hours with 1 day carry
6 days + 2 days + 1 day carry $\Rightarrow$ 9 days

The following list gives equivalences among most of the precise time units for use in determining when “carries” and “borrows” are needed. Equivalences between years and days, years and weeks, and months and days are discussed below because these are special cases.

Each minute is equivalent to 60 seconds.
Each hour is equivalent to 60 minutes.
Each day is equivalent to 24 hours.
Each week is equivalent to 7 days.
Each year is equivalent to 12 months.

A “carry” is applied if the number of an atomic time coordinate that is formed as an intermediate calculation result is greater than shown in the equivalences given above. To perform a “carry,” divide the number of the intermediate result by the equivalence shown above, add the result to the number of the notional next coarser atomic time coordinate (which may be 0), and set the number of the finer component to the remainder. Note that “carries” may propagate across multiple components. See the example given above.

A “borrow” is performed if the number of an atomic time coordinate, formed as an intermediate calculation result, is negative. To apply a “borrow,” divide the number of the absolute value of the intermediate result by the equivalence shown above, subtract the result for the number of the notional next coarser atomic time coordinate (which may be 0), and set the the number of the finer component to the remainder. Note that “borrows” may propagate across multiple components. For example, “22 minutes 15 seconds = 35 minutes – 12 minutes 45 seconds” by the following steps:

0 seconds – 45 seconds $\Rightarrow$ 15 seconds with 1 minute borrow
35 minutes – 12 minutes – 1 minute borrow 22 minutes

The procedure described above works even when an atomic duration value has a number that is greater than an equivalence shown above. For example, “23 hours = 2 days – 25 hours”.

When adding or subtracting values of ‘days’ from time coordinates of the nominal time units ‘year’ and ‘month’, the interpretation of any “carries” or “borrows” depends upon the particular year or month coordinate. For a year coordinate, a “carry” occurs if the number of days exceeds 365 for a common year, and 366 for a leap year, and a “borrow” is made from 365 if the year is a common year, and from 366 otherwise. For example, “2007 day 331 = 2008 – 35 days” but “2006 day 330 = 2007 – 35 days”.

For a month coordinate, “carries” and “borrow” are made according to the following number of days per particular calendar month:
Note that, in some cases, repeated “carries” or “borrows” may be required across multiple calendar months. For example, “2 March 2010 = 31 January 2010 + 30 days”.

Subtraction is defined for most combinations of two time coordinates. For example, “30 days = 2 March 2010 – 31 January 2010”. However, subtraction of date coordinates that span the end of February is not defined if the calendar years are not specified. For example, “3 days = 2 February – 30 January” but “2 March – 28 February” is either “2 days” or “3 days” depending upon whether these dates are in a leap year or not.

Arithmetic involving weeks and years presents a special problem - determine which concept of ‘year’ is intended. That is because the Gregorian year (clause 11) and the ISO week-based year (clause 12) are of different lengths and are only loosely aligned.

When the time coordinates are Gregorian time coordinates, additions and subtractions involving years, months, weeks, and days is done in Gregorian terms, treating each week as 7 days. For example: 20 December 2008 plus 1 year and 8 weeks is 20 December 2009 + 56 days = 14 February 2010.

When the time coordinates are ISO year week or ISO year week day coordinates, additions and subtractions involving years and weeks is done in terms of the ISO week-based year. That is, each ‘year’ that is added or subtracted is taken to be exactly 52 weeks or exactly 53 weeks, according to the “First Thursday Rule” (see 12.2). For example: “2008 week 50 plus 1 year and 8 weeks” is 2009 week 50 plus 8 weeks = 2010 week 5. Following the logic above, week 50 + 8 weeks gives 58 weeks, which causes a carry into the ‘year’ position. But Gregorian year 2009 started on a Thursday, so the ISO week-based year 2009 has 53 weeks, and the residue is 5 weeks. By comparison, 2010 week 50 plus 8 weeks is 2011 week 6, because the ISO week-based year 2010 has only 52 weeks.

The ISO day of week is not affected by variation in the duration of ISO week-based years. Every week has exactly 7 days. Carrying or borrowing out of the 'day' (of week) position modifies the ISO week of year value in the obvious way.

Additions or subtractions to relative ISO week of year coordinates and ISO week-day coordinates that carry or borrow into the 'years' position is not well-defined. Some ISO week-based years have 52 weeks and some have 53.

Explicit subtraction between Gregorian calendar time coordinates and ISO weeks calendar time coordinates is best accomplished by reducing both time coordinates to indices on the indefinite scale of Gregorian days. The difference is then an exact duration in days, which can be converted to any convenient compound duration value.

Table 10.1 - Number of Calendar Days per Gregorian Month

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gregorian Month</th>
<th>Equivalent Number of Calendar Days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>28 in common years, 29 in leap years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April, June, September, November</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January, March, May, July, August, October, December</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11  Gregorian Calendar (normative)

11.1  General

This clause provides terminology for the concepts in the Gregorian calendar.

The Gregorian calendar concepts depend on concepts and terminology introduced in the Calendars Vocabulary and the Duration Values Vocabulary.

---

**Gregorian Calendar Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Concept:</th>
<th>terminological dictionary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Included Vocabulary:</td>
<td>Calendars Vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Included Vocabulary:</td>
<td>Duration Values Vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace URI:</td>
<td><a href="http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#GregorianCalendarVocabulary">http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#GregorianCalendarVocabulary</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

11.2  Gregorian Calendar

The Gregorian calendar was standardized for international commerce by the Convention du Mètre, and is widely used in business and everyday activities.
Gregorian calendar
Source: ISO 8601 (2.2.15, 'Gregorian calendar')
Definition: calendar in general use, introduced in 1582 to define a calendar year that more closely approximated the tropical year than the Julian calendar
Note: The Gregorian Calendar was defined in 1582 in [Inter Gravissimas] and was adopted at various times by various countries. It is now the international standard calendar.
Note: The interpretation of any date depends upon the calendar used. Caution should be used with historical dates because the standard calendar varied by locality as well as time. The Gregorian Calendar was adopted in 1582 in Italy and a few other countries, and at various times as late as 1926 in other countries.

Convention du Mètre
Definition: occurrence that is the signing of the Convention du Mètre
Necessity: The Convention du Mètre occurred within 20 May 1875.
Necessity: The particular Gregorian day on which the signing of the *Convention du Mètre* occurred establishes the index origin of the various Gregorian scales.

Note: [ISO 8601] establishes the date of the signing of the *Convention du Mètre, 20 May 1875*, as the reference date for the *Gregorian calendar*.

**Gregorian years scale**

Definition: the indefinite time scale that has granularity year and that has time points that are Gregorian years

Necessity: The index origin value of the *Gregorian years scale equals 1875*.

Necessity: The time interval that Gregorian year 1875 corresponds to is started by the time interval that is the Gregorian day 684 467.

Note: Gregorian day 684 467 is January 1, 1875.

Note: The starting Gregorian day and the rules for the duration of Gregorian years define a unique time interval.

Note: This definition applies to the *Gregorian calendar* as recognized at the Prime Meridian at Greenwich in England during Standard Time. Other *Gregorian years scales* may be obtained by adding or subtracting time offsets, as discussed in sub clause 13.5.

**Gregorian months scale**

Definition: the indefinite time scale that has granularity month and that has time points that are Gregorian months

Necessity: The index origin value of the *Gregorian months scale equals 22 493*.

Note: 22 493 is 12 * (1875 - 1) + 5 (for the month of May)

Necessity: The time interval that Gregorian month 22 493 corresponds to is a May and is started by the time interval that is the Gregorian day 684 587.

Note: Gregorian day 684 587 is May 1, 1875.

Note: The starting Gregorian day, and the fact that the Gregorian month is a May (and therefore has 31 days) defines a unique time interval.

Note: This definition applies to the *Gregorian calendar* as recognized at the Prime Meridian at Greenwich in England during Standard Time. Other *Gregorian months scales* may be obtained by adding or subtracting time offsets, as discussed in sub clause 13.5.

**Gregorian days scale**

Definition: the indefinite time scale that has granularity day and that has time points that are Gregorian days

Necessity: The index origin value of the *Gregorian days scale equals 684 606*.

Note: Gregorian day 684 606 is May 20, 1875.

Note: The calendar reform instituted by Pope Gregory XIII and promulgated in the bull [Inter Gravissimas] started the use of the Gregorian calendar with the date 15 October 1582, which is the same as 05 October 1582 in the Julian calendar. That calendar day had index 577 738 on the Julian calendar, computed as 1581 years of 365 days plus 395 leap days from 1 January of year 1 (calendar day 1) to 1 January 1582 + 277 days from 1 January 1582 to 5 October 1582. From 15 October 1582 to the Convention du Mètre on 20 May 1875, there were 106 868 calendar days (including leap days). Therefore, the Convention happened on calendar day 684 606 of the *Gregorian days scale*. 

Date-Time Vocabulary v1.3
Necessity: The Convention du Mètre occurred within the time interval that is the Gregorian day 684 606.

Necessity: The duration of the time interval that is the Gregorian day 684 606 is 1 day.

Necessity: The time interval that is the Gregorian day 684 606 is started by a time interval that is the 12 hours preceding an observation of noon at the Greenwich observatory.

Note: The combination of the above necessities identifies a unique time interval. The reference origin for the Gregorian months scale and the Gregorian years scale are defined in terms of that time interval.

Note: Noon at the Greenwich observatory was the reference point for Gregorian days until 1884. The [International Meridian Conference] of 1884 established the Greenwich Meridian as the international standard for zero degrees longitude. It also established a uniform international time standard called the 'universal day' – a mean solar day of 24 hours measured from midnight on the Greenwich Meridian. This time standard was formally replaced by Universal Coordinated Time in 1972. This definition applies to the Gregorian calendar as recognized at the Prime Meridian at Greenwich in England during Standard Time. Other Gregorian days scales may be obtained by adding or subtracting time offsets, as discussed in 13.5.

Figure 11.2 - Gregorian Finite Time Scales and Time Points
Gregorian year of months scale

Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 month and that has cardinality 12 and that exactly subdivides each Gregorian year.

Necessity: Each Gregorian year subdivides into exactly 12 Gregorian months of year.
Necessity: The index origin value of the Gregorian year of months scale equals 1.
Necessity: The first member of the Gregorian year of months scale is the index origin member of the Gregorian year of months scale.

Gregorian year of days scale

Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 day and that has cardinality 366 and that subdivides 'Gregorian year'.

Note: Each leap year is subdivided into 366 Gregorian day of year time points. Each common year is subdivided into 365 Gregorian day of year time points.
Necessity: The index origin value of the Gregorian year of days scale equals 1.
Necessity: The first member of the Gregorian year of days scale is the index origin member of the Gregorian year of days scale.
Note: This time scale has 366 Gregorian days of year in order to accommodate leap years.

Gregorian month of days scale

Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 day and that has cardinality 31 and that subdivides 'Gregorian month of year'.

Note: Each Gregorian month of year is subdivided into a specific number of Gregorian day of month time points. The subdivision of February is a set of two time sequences.
Necessity: The index origin value of the Gregorian month of days scale equals 1.
Necessity: The first member of the Gregorian month of days scale is the index origin member of the Gregorian month of days scale.
Note: This time scale has 31 Gregorian days of month in order to accommodate the longest Gregorian month.
11.3 Gregorian Time Points

**common year**
- Concept Type: `concept type`
- **Definition:** `calendar year` that *is on the Gregorian years scale* and the number of the calendar year, when divided by 4, generates a remainder that is not zero, or *that is a centennial year*.
- Necessity: Each `common year` *subdivides into exactly 365 Gregorian days of year*.
- Note: This is an *absolute time point* because it is on an *indefinite time scale*.

**leap year**
- Concept Type: `concept type`
- **Definition:** `calendar year` that *is on the Gregorian years scale* and the number of the calendar year, when divided by 4, generates a remainder that is zero, and *that is not a centennial year*.
- Necessity: Each `leap year` *subdivides into exactly 366 Gregorian days of year*.
- Note: The rules for leap years were established by Pope Gregory XIII in [Inter Gravissimas]. These rules were eventually adopted by various civil governments and incorporated into [ISO 8601].
- Note: This is an *absolute time point* because it is on an *indefinite time scale*. 
**centennial year**
Source: [ISO 8601](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_8601) (2.2.18, 'centennial year')
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: calendar year that is on the Gregorian years scale that is not a quadricentennial year, and the number of the calendar year, when divided by 100, generates a remainder that is zero
Note: This is an absolute time point because it is on an indefinite time scale.

**quadricentennial year**
Source: [ISO 8601](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_8601) (2.2.18, 'centennial year')
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: calendar year that is on the Gregorian years scale and the number of the calendar year, when divided by 400, generates a remainder that is zero
Note: This is an absolute time point because it is on an indefinite time scale.

**Gregorian year**
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: common year or leap year that is on the Gregorian years scale
Note: This is an absolute time point because it is on an indefinite time scale.

**Gregorian month**
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: calendar month that is on the Gregorian months scale
Note: This is an absolute time point because it is on an indefinite time scale.

**Gregorian month of year**
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: calendar month that is on the Gregorian year of months scale
Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.

**Gregorian calendar month**
Definition: Gregorian month or Gregorian month of year
Concept Type: concept type

**Gregorian day**
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: calendar day that is on the Gregorian days scale
Note: This is an absolute time point because it is on an indefinite time scale.

**Gregorian day of year**
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: calendar day that is on the Gregorian year of days scale
Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.
Necessity: Each Gregorian day of year corresponds to a set of Gregorian days.
Note: In general each Gregorian day of year corresponds to one calendar day in each Gregorian year but Gregorian day of year 366 occurs only in leap years.
**Gregorian day of month**

Concept Type: concept type  
Definition: calendar day that is on the Gregorian month of days scale  
Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.  
Necessity: Each Gregorian day of month corresponds to a set of Gregorian days.  
Note: In general each Gregorian day of month corresponds to one calendar day in each Gregorian month but Gregorian day of month 29, 30, and 31 do not occur in every Gregorian month.

**Gregorian calendar day**

Definition: Gregorian day or Gregorian day of year or Gregorian day of month  
Concept Type: concept type

### 11.4 Gregorian Months of Year

Because of the cyclic usage of the finite time scales associated with calendars, the names of months, days of the week, and holidays designate many time intervals and so are general concepts. However, these names are traditionally capitalized like proper names and also seem like individual concepts. Using this specification, when the name of a time point is used, it designates the general concept (the time point) and denotes the corresponding time intervals, in the same way that a term for any general concept denotes its instances. Such usage commonly involves quantifiers and qualifiers, such as “every April” or “next April” or “April (in) 2001”, which select specific time intervals. When the intent is to refer to the time point itself – the individual thing that appears on the calendar – the name is qualified as referring to a time point, as in “the time point 'April'” or “the Gregorian month of year 'April'”, which is a short form of “the Gregorian month of year that is designated by 'April'”.

All named time points are treated in this way, including the Gregorian months of year, the days-of-week, and recurring holidays and anniversaries.

Some holidays, like Easter and Ramadan, recur irregularly, so additional information, such as an ephemeris, is required to resolve the name to particular Gregorian calendar dates. Formalizing such definitions is beyond the scope of this specification.

The following defines the common names for Gregorian month of years as individual concepts because they identify specific months on the Gregorian year of months scale.
January
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that has duration 31 days and that starts an instance of a Gregorian year
Necessity: The concept 'January' is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 1 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point 'January' subdivides into exactly 31 Gregorian days of month.
Necessity: Each January is met by a December.
Note: "January 2008" and "2008 month 01" are expressions for a calendar date.
Note: "January 2008" is an expression for a calendar date for a Gregorian month of year using a reference scheme involving a Gregorian month and a calendar year.

February
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by a January and that has a duration that is 28 days if the time interval is part of an instance of a common year, or that is 29 days if the time interval is part of an instance of a leap year
Necessity: The time point 'February' subdivides into exactly 28 Gregorian days of month or exactly 29 Gregorian days of month.
Necessity: The time point sequence that is Gregorian day of month 1 through Gregorian day of month 28 corresponds to each February that is during a common year.

Necessity: The time point sequence that is Gregorian day of month 1 through Gregorian day of month 29 corresponds to each February that is during a leap year.

Note: The set of these two time point sequences is how Gregorian month of days subdivides February.

Note: The subdivision of the time point is fixed. day-of-month 29 is part of the sequence, but not every February has 29 day-of-month subintervals.

Note: The rules for leap years were established by Pope Gregory XIII in [Inter Gravissimas]. These rules were eventually adopted by various civil governments and incorporated into [ISO 8601].

March
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by a February and that has a duration that is 31 days
Necessity: The concept ‘March’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 3 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘March’ subdivides into exactly 31 Gregorian days of month.

April
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by a March and that has a duration that is 30 days
Necessity: The concept ‘April’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 4 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘April’ subdivides into exactly 30 Gregorian days of month.

May
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by an April and that has a duration that is 31 days
Necessity: The concept ‘May’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 5 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘May’ subdivides into exactly 31 Gregorian days of month.

June
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by a May and that has a duration that is 30 days
Necessity: The concept ‘June’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 6 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘June’ subdivides into exactly 30 Gregorian days of month.

July
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by a June and that has a duration that is 31 days
Necessity: The concept ‘July’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 7 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘July’ subdivides into exactly 31 Gregorian days of month.
August
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by a July and that has a duration that is 31 days
Necessity: The concept ‘August’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 8 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘August’ subdivides into exactly 31 Gregorian days of month.

September
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by an August and that has a duration that is 30 days
Necessity: The concept ‘September’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 9 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘September’ subdivides into exactly 30 Gregorian days of month.

October
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by a September and that has a duration that is 31 days
Necessity: The concept ‘October’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 10 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘October’ subdivides into exactly 31 Gregorian days of month.

November
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by an October and that has a duration that is 30 days
Necessity: The concept ‘November’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 11 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘November’ subdivides into exactly 30 Gregorian days of month.

December
Source: ISO 8601 (Table 1)
Definition: time interval that is met by a November and that has a duration that is 31 days
Necessity: The concept ‘December’ is the Gregorian month of year that is in sequence position 12 of the Gregorian year of months scale.
Necessity: The time point ‘December’ subdivides into exactly 31 Gregorian days of month.
Necessity: Each December finishes an instance of a Gregorian year.

11.5 Gregorian Year Values
This sub clause defines the meaning of nominal atomic duration values that use the nominal time unit ‘year’. It accounts for the varying numbers of calendar days in Gregorian years, due to leap years, centennial years, and quadricentennial years.

Note: this sub clause defines some concepts, such as ‘year remainder’, that are only needed to support the concept ‘year value specifies duration value set’. These supporting concepts need not be explicitly defined in versions of this specification in other modeling systems.
Figure 11.5 - Year Values

**year value**
Definition: nominal atomic duration value that has the time unit 'year'

**years remainder**
Concept Type: role
General Concept: nonnegative integer

**years remainder of year value**
Definition: the years remainder is the remainder produced by dividing the number of the year value by 4
Note: Each 4-year cycle includes exactly 1 leap day.
Example: the years remainder of '5 years' is 1
**years quotient**

- **Concept Type:** role
- **General Concept:** nonnegative integer

**Definition:**
The *years quotient* is the quotient produced by dividing the number of the *year value* by 4.

**Note:** Each 4-year cycle includes exactly 1 leap day.

**Example:**
- The *years quotient* of *11 years* is 2.

---

**years centennial quotient**

- **Concept Type:** role
- **General Concept:** nonnegative integer

**Definition:**
The *years centennial quotient* is the quotient produced by dividing the number of the *year value* by 100.

**Note:** According to [Inter Gravissimas], a leap day is omitted for each *centennial year* that is not a *quadricentennial year*.

**Example:**
- The *years centennial quotient* of *5 years* is 0.
- The *years centennial quotient* of *301 years* is 3.

---

**years centennial remainder**

- **Concept Type:** role
- **General Concept:** nonnegative integer

**Definition:**
The *years centennial remainder* is the remainder produced by dividing the number of the *year value* by 100.

**Example:**
- The *years centennial remainder* of *601 years* is 1.

---

**year value has years centennial remainder**

**Definition:**
The *years centennial remainder* is the remainder produced by dividing the number of the *year value* by 100.

**Example:**
- The *years centennial remainder* of *601 years* is 1.

---

**years quadricentennial remainder**

- **Concept Type:** role
- **General Concept:** nonnegative integer

**Definition:**
The *years quadricentennial remainder* is the remainder produced by dividing the number of the *year value* by 400.

**Example:**
- The *years quadricentennial remainder* of *601 years* is 201.

---

**years quadricentennial quotient**

- **Concept Type:** role
- **General Concept:** nonnegative integer

**Definition:**
The *years quadricentennial quotient* is the quotient produced by dividing the number of the *year value* by 400.

---

**years quadricentennial quotient of year value**

**Definition:**
The *years quadricentennial quotient* is the quotient produced by dividing the number of the *year value* by 400.
Note: According to [Inter Gravissimas], a leap day is included for each quadricentennial year even though it is a centennial year.

Example: the years quadricentennial quotient of '301 years' is 0
Example: the years quadricentennial quotient of '401 years' is 1

**base duration value**

Concept Type: role
General Concept: duration value

**year value has base duration value**

Definition: the base duration value is the number of the year value times $365$ days plus $1$ day times (the years quotient of the year value – the years centennial quotient of the year value + the years quadricentennial quotient of the year value).

Note: That is, if $Y$ is the year value, the base duration value $B(Y)$ is given by:

$$B(Y) = Y \times 365 + Y/4 - Y/100 + Y/400 \text{ days},$$

where the / denotes the quotient of the integer division.

Note: [Inter Gravissima] specifies that a leap day occurs every 4 years, except every 100 years, with a further exception that a leap day does occur every 400 years.

Note: The base duration value is the number of days in a number of years that does not involve two conditions:
- the year value is not a multiple of 4 and the particular calendar years involved include one more leap year; or
- the year value is not a multiple of 100 and the particular calendar years involved include one more centennial year (which may be a quadricentennial year)

Example: The base duration value of 400 years is $146\,000 + 100 - 4 + 1 = 146\,097$ days, and neither of the two conditions can apply. 400 years is actually a precise duration value.

Example: The base duration value of 111 years is $40\,515 + 27 - 1 + 0 = 40\,541$, but it is possible that either of the two conditions above is met.

**years duration value set**

Concept Type: role
Definition: duration value set

**year value specifies years duration value set**

General Concept: nominal atomic duration value specifies duration value set

Definition: the years duration value set is the duration value set that consists of the following duration values:
- the base duration value of the year value,
- the base duration value of the year value minus 1 day, only if the years centennial remainder of the year value is greater than zero,
- the base duration value of the year value plus 1 day, only if the years remainder of the year value is greater than zero or the years quadricentennial remainder of the year value is greater than zero,

Note: If $Y$ is the year value, and $B(Y)$ is the base duration value, the duration set specified by $Y$ is given by:

$$S(Y) = \{B(Y)\} \cup \{B(Y) - 1\}, \text{ if } Y \mod 100 > 0,$$
\{B(Y) + 1\}, if \(Y \mod 4 > 0\) or \(Y \mod 400 > 0\).

where ‘mod’ denotes the remainder of the integer division.

Note: The duration value set includes only the base duration value when the year value is exactly divisible by 400 (none of the remainders is greater than zero).

Example: The duration value set for 400 years is \{146 097 days\}.

Example: The duration value set for 111 years is \{40 541 days, 40 540 days, 40 542 days\}.

Example: For example, the 111 years could be between 1903 and 2014, which includes the 27 leap years between 1903 and 2011 (including the quadricentennial year 2000), but also the leap year in 2012. So the actual value is 40 542. By comparison, the 111 years between July 1,1796 and July 1, 1907 includes two centennial years and thus only 25 leap years, so the actual value is 40 540.

Example: The duration value set for 100 years is \{36 524 days, 36 525 days\}. For example, the 100 years from 1814 and 1914 is 36 524 days. The 100 years from 1914 to 2014 is 36 525 days.

### 11.6 Gregorian Month Values

This sub clause defines the meaning of nominal atomic duration values that use the nominal time unit ‘month.’ It accounts for the varying numbers of calendar days in the calendar months of the Gregorian calendar. It accounts for leap years by considering that 48 months (4 years of 12 months) includes one leap day (February 29). The computation adjusts for the fact that centennial years have no leap days, but quadricentennial years have one leap day.
Note: this sub clause defines some concepts, such as ‘month remainder’, that are only needed to support the concept ‘month value specifies duration value set’. These supporting concepts need not be explicitly defined in versions of this specification in other modeling systems.

**month value**
Definition: nominal atomic duration value that has the time unit ‘month’

**months remainder**
Concept Type: role
General Concept: nonnegative integer

**months remainder of month value**
Definition: the months remainder is the remainder produced by dividing the number of the month value by 48
Note: 48 is the number of months in a 4-year cycle that includes one leap day.
Example: the months remainder of ‘50 months’ is 2

**months quotient**
Concept Type: role
General Concept: nonnegative integer

**months quotient of month value**
Definition: the months quotient is the quotient produced by dividing the number of the month value by 48
Note: 48 is the number of months in a 4-year cycle that includes one leap day.
Example: the months quotient of ‘50 months’ is 1

**months centennial quotient**
Concept Type: role
General Concept: nonnegative integer

**months centennial quotient of month value**
Definition: the months centennial quotient is the remainder produced by dividing the number of the month value by 1 200
Note: 1 200 is 100 years of 12 months. According to [Inter Gravissimas], a leap day is omitted for each centennial year that is not a quadricentennial year.
Example: the months centennial quotient of ‘60 months’ is 0
Example: the months centennial quotient of ‘2405 months’ is 2

**months quadricentennial quotient**
Concept Type: role
General Concept: nonnegative integer

**months quadricentennial quotient of year value**
Definition: the months quadricentennial quotient is the remainder produced by dividing the number of the month value by 4 800
Note: 4 800 is 400 years of 12 months. According to [Inter Gravissimas], a leap day is included for each quadricentennial year even though it is a centennial year.

Example: the months quadricentennial quotient of '10 months' is 0
Example: the months quadricentennial quotient of '4805 months' is 1

**months duration value set**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concept Type:</th>
<th>role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Definition:</td>
<td>duration value set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**months duration value set of month value**

| Definition: | the months duration value set is specified by the following table, according to the months remainder of the month value |

### 11.7 Gregorian Time Coordinates

This sub clause defines several Gregorian time coordinates and their meaning in terms of time scales. It also “anchors” the Gregorian calendar on the Time Axis per the signing of the Convention du Mètre.
Figure 11.7 - Gregorian Absolute Time Coordinates
A Gregorian year coordinate indicates a Gregorian year, for example “2010”.

A Gregorian month coordinate indicates a Gregorian month, for example “January”.

A Gregorian day of year coordinate indicates a Gregorian day of year, for example “Gregorian day of year 360”.

A Gregorian day of month coordinate indicates a Gregorian day of month, for example “Gregorian day of month 14”.

A Gregorian year month coordinate combines a Gregorian year and a Gregorian month of year, to indicate a Gregorian month, for example “July 2010”.

A Gregorian year day month coordinate day coordinate combines a Gregorian year, a Gregorian month of year, and a Gregorian day of month, for example “9 July 2010”.

A Gregorian year day coordinate combines a Gregorian year and a Gregorian day of year to indicate a Gregorian day, for example “2010 day 33”.

A Gregorian month day coordinate combines a Gregorian month of year and a Gregorian day of month to refer to one time interval in each Gregorian year, for example “9 July”, but only the first 60 of them (January 1 to February 29) indicate Gregorian day of year time points.
**Gregorian year coordinate**

Definition: absolute atomic time coordinate that indicates a Gregorian year

Necessity: Each Gregorian year coordinate indicates a Gregorian year that has an index equal to the index of the Gregorian year coordinate.

Description: A Gregorian year coordinate directly gives the Gregorian year number.

Example: 2010

**Gregorian month coordinate**

Definition: relative atomic time coordinate that indicates a Gregorian month of year

Necessity: Each Gregorian month coordinate indicates a Gregorian month of year that has an index equal to the index of the Gregorian month coordinate.

Description: A Gregorian month coordinate directly gives the index of a calendar month within a calendar year.

Necessity: Each Gregorian month coordinate is greater than or equal to 1.

Necessity: Each Gregorian month coordinate is less than or equal to 12.

Example: "January" and "month 1" indicate the same Gregorian month of year

**Gregorian day of year coordinate**

Definition: relative atomic time coordinate that indicates a Gregorian day of year

Necessity: Each Gregorian day of year coordinate indicates a Gregorian day of year that has an index equal to the index of the Gregorian day of year coordinate.

Description: A Gregorian day of year coordinate directly gives the index of a calendar day within a calendar year.

Necessity: Each Gregorian day of year coordinate is greater than or equal to 1.

Necessity: Each Gregorian day of year coordinate is less than or equal to 366.

Example: "day 45" and "14 February" indicate the same Gregorian day of year

**Gregorian day of month coordinate**

Definition: relative atomic time coordinate that indicates a Gregorian day of month

Necessity: Each Gregorian day of month coordinate indicates a Gregorian day of month that has an index equal to the index of the Gregorian day of month coordinate.

Description: A Gregorian day of month coordinate directly gives the index of a calendar day within a calendar month.

Necessity: Each Gregorian day of month coordinate is greater than or equal to 1.

Necessity: Each Gregorian day of month coordinate is less than or equal to 31.

Example: "Gregorian day of month 14" indicates the Gregorian day of month that has index 14

These absolute compound time coordinates support various combinations of Gregorian years, Gregorian months of year, and calendar days.

**Gregorian year month coordinate**

Definition: absolute compound time coordinate that combines a Gregorian year coordinate and that combines a Gregorian month coordinate and that indicates a Gregorian month

Necessity: Each Gregorian year month coordinate indicates a Gregorian month that has index 12 times (the index of the Gregorian year coordinate minus 1) plus (the index of the Gregorian month coordinate minus 1).
Description: The Gregorian year coordinate and the Gregorian month coordinate of the Gregorian year month coordinate jointly identify the Gregorian month on the infinite Gregorian months scale.

Note: The definition subtracts 1 from the indices of the Gregorian year coordinate and Gregorian month coordinate because these are index origin value 1.

Example: "2010 month 3" combines the set of {2010, month 3}, and indicates the Gregorian month that has index 24 123.

starting day

Concept Type: role
Definition: Gregorian day that is the first calendar day of some Gregorian year

Gregorian year has starting day

Definition: the starting day is the Gregorian day that corresponds to the time interval that is part of the Gregorian year and that is an instance of day-of-year 1

Necessity: Each Gregorian year has exactly one starting day.

Necessity: The index of the starting day of each Gregorian year that follows Gregorian year 1600 equals 584 391 plus 365 times (index of the Gregorian year minus 1601) plus ((index of the Gregorian year minus 1601) divided by 4) minus ((index of the Gregorian year minus 1601) divided by 100) plus ((index of the Gregorian year minus 1601) divided by 400).

Necessity: The index of each Gregorian year is greater than 1581.

Note: The Gregorian calendar was adopted in different places at different times between 1582 and 1918. The formula is only valid for Gregorian dates.

Note: In mathematical form, the definition above is:

\[ sd = 584 \ 391 + (365 \times y) + (y/4) - (y/100) + (y/400) \]

where:

- \( sd \) is the index of the starting day
- \( y \) is the index of a Gregorian year - 1601
- \( y \geq 0 \)
- / is integer division

Note: 584 391 is the index of 1 January 1601, computed as 577 738 (index of 15 October 1582) plus 6653 days from 15 October 1582 through 1 January 1601.

Note: 1 January 1601 is used as the basis for this formula because the pattern of leap days is consistent since 1601. It is the first day after the first quadricentennial year after [Inter Gravissimas]. This day is picked because the first day of a Gregorian year does not include any leap day that occurs during that Gregorian year.

Note: The definition compensates for leap days by adding 1 for each 4th year, subtracting 1 for each 100th year (because most centurial years are not leap years), and adding 1 for each 400th year (because quadricentennial years are leap years), per [Inter Gravissimas].

Note: This formula is valid only for Gregorian calendar years after 1600.

Example: The first calendar day of 2010 is Gregorian day 733775.

day-of-common-year

Concept Type: role
General Concept: non-negative integer
Definition: the number of days between the beginning of a Gregorian year and the beginning of a given Gregorian month of year in a common year

**Gregorian month of year has day-of-common-year**
Definition: the day-of-common-year is the number of days between the beginning of a common year and the instance of the Gregorian month of year that is part of the common year
Note: The day-of-common-year for each Gregorian month-of-year is given in Table 11.1.
Example: The day-of-common-year for April is 90 (days). The duration of the time period from January to April in a common year is 31 days (of January) + 28 days (of February) + 31 days (of March).

**day-of-leap-year**
Concept Type: role
General Concept: non-negative integer
Definition: the number of days between the beginning of a Gregorian year and the beginning of a given Gregorian month of year in a leap year
Note: The day-of-leap-year for each Gregorian month-of-year is given in Table 11.1.
Example: The day-of-leap-year for April is 91. The duration of the time period from January to April in a leap year is 31 days (of January) + 29 days (of February) + 31 days (of March).

**Gregorian month of year has day-of-leap-year**
Definition: the day-of-leap-year is the number of days between the beginning of a leap year and the instance of the Gregorian month of year that is part of the leap year
Note: The day-of-leap-year for each Gregorian month-of-year is given in Table 11.1.
Example: The day-of-leap-year for April is 91. The duration of the time period from January to April in a leap year is 31 days (of January) + 29 days (of February) + 31 days (of March).

**Gregorian year month day coordinate**
Definition: Gregorian date that combines a Gregorian year coordinate and that combines a Gregorian month coordinate and that combines a Gregorian day of month coordinate, and that indicates a Gregorian day
Necessity: Each Gregorian year month day coordinate indicates the Gregorian day that equals the starting day of the Gregorian year that is indicated by the Gregorian year coordinate, plus the value taken for the start of each month from the table of calendar days (below) as indexed by the index of the Gregorian month coordinate and whether the Gregorian year coordinate indicates a leap year, plus the index of the Gregorian day of month coordinate minus 2.
Description: The index of the Gregorian day on the Gregorian days scale is computed from the three components of the Gregorian year coordinate.
Example: "2010 month 3 day 15" combines the set of (2010, month 3, day 15), and indicates the Gregorian day that has index 733 848. The index is 149 457 calendar days after January 1, 1601, which has index 584 391 (the reference point for the formula). The 149 457 days is calculated as: $365*(2010 - 1601) + (2010 - 1601)/4 - (2010-1601)/100 + (2010 – 1601)/ 400$ (number of calendar days from Jan 1, 1601 to Jan 1, 2010) plus 59 (to day 1 of month 3, from the table) plus 14 (from day 1 to day 15).
The table shown above is derived from Table 1 of [ISO 8601].

**Gregorian year day coordinate**

**Definition:** A **Gregorian day** combines a **Gregorian year coordinate** and that indicates a **Gregorian day**.

**Necessity:** Each **Gregorian year day coordinate** indicates a **Gregorian day** that equals the index of the starting day of the **Gregorian year** that is indicated by the **Gregorian year coordinate**, plus the index of the **Gregorian day of year coordinate** minus 1.

**Description:** A **Gregorian day year coordinate** combines a **Gregorian year coordinate** and a **Gregorian day of year coordinate** to identify a particular **Gregorian day**.

**Example:** "2010 day 45" combines the set of **{2010, day 45}**, and indicates the **Gregorian day that has index 733 819**. The index is 149 428 calendar days after January 1, 1601, which has index 584 391 (the reference point for the formula). The 149428 days is calculated as:

\[
\]

(number of calendar days from Jan 1, 1601 to Jan 1, 2010) plus 44 (from day 1 to day 45).

**Gregorian month day coordinate**

**Definition:** A **relative compound time coordinate** that combines a **Gregorian month coordinate** and a **Gregorian day of month coordinate**, and that refers to one instance of **Gregorian day in a given Gregorian year**.

**Necessity:** Each **Gregorian month day coordinate** converts to the time set (Gregorian day of year from the start of the calendar year to the calendar month that has the index of the Gregorian month coordinate) in common years. **Gregorian day of year** from the start of the calendar year to the calendar month that has the index of the **Gregorian month**.
coordinate in leap years } plus the index of the Gregorian day of month coordinate minus 1 day

Note: A Gregorian month day coordinate does not include a year number, so there is no way to know whether a March date follows a 28-day or 29-day February. For this reason, every Gregorian month coordinate after February 28 does not consistently indicate either of two possible Gregorian days of year. But it converts to the time set that includes both of them.

Example: "15 June" combines "June" and "(Gregorian day of month) 15". It refers to one calendar day in each Gregorian year, but in common years it is Gregorian day of year 165 and in leap years it is Gregorian day of year 166. So, "15 June" converts to the time set {Gregorian day of year 165, Gregorian day of year 166}.

Example: "15 January" combines "January" and "(Gregorian day of month) 15". It always indicates Gregorian day of year 15.

Gregorian date

Synonymous Form: Gregorian date coordinate
Definition: calendar date that indicates a Gregorian day
Dictionary Basis: ISO 8601 (2.1.9, 'calendar date')
Note: Gregorian date coordinates may be combined with time offsets, see clause 10.3.
Example: 1989 September 3
Example: 2005 day 49

11.8 Gregorian Indefinite Scale Comparisons and Conversions

These verb concepts enable comparison of time points that are on different indefinite time scales. These are absolute time points, meaning that each corresponds to exactly one time interval.
Figure 11.9 - Gregorian Year Conversions

The following Necessities identify the Gregorian calendar time points that can be converted to a common ‘shared’ time scale. Conversions to other time scales, such as International Atomic Time, are possible.

**Necessity:** Each Gregorian year shares the Gregorian days scale with each Gregorian month.

**Example:** 1979 shares the Gregorian days scale with June 1990

**Necessity:** Each Gregorian year shares the Gregorian days scale with each Gregorian day.

**Example:** 1949 shares the Gregorian days scale with 23 June 1990

**Necessity:** Each Gregorian month shares the Gregorian days scale with each Gregorian day.

**Example:** June 1990 shares the Gregorian days scale with 23 June 1990

Conversions to other time scales, such as International Atomic Time, are possible.

The following concepts relate Gregorian years to the Gregorian days scale.

**Gregorian days sequence**

**Definition:** time point sequence that is on the Gregorian days scale

**Gregorian year has Gregorian days sequence**

**General Concept:** time point converts to time point sequence
Definition: the **Gregorian year converts to the Gregorian days sequence**

Necessity: Each **Gregorian year converts to exactly one Gregorian days sequence**.

Necessity: The first time point of the Gregorian days sequence of a **Gregorian year** is the starting day of the Gregorian year.

Necessity: The **Gregorian days sequence** of a **Gregorian year** has cardinality 365 if the **Gregorian year** is a common year, and has cardinality 366 if the **Gregorian year** is a leap year.

Note: The Gregorian year converts to the time point sequence whose first time point is the first Gregorian day of the year (the starting day) and that has as many Gregorian day time points as the year has days. The last time point will be the starting day plus length of year minus 1.

Example: The **Gregorian year** that is indicated by “2010” converts to **Gregorian day 733 775 through Gregorian day 734 140**.

The following concepts support conversion of **Gregorian months** to the **Gregorian days scale**. Note that the first two concepts associate the Gregorian month with “month-of-year” and “year” time points, and thus with common time coordinates.

**Gregorian month** **has** **Gregorian year**

Definition: the **Gregorian month** is part of the **Gregorian year**

Necessity: Each **Gregorian month** has exactly one **Gregorian year**.

Necessity: The index of the **Gregorian year** of a **Gregorian month** equals 1 plus the integer quotient of dividing the index of the **Gregorian month** by 12.

Example: **Gregorian month 24108 has** **Gregorian year 2010**

**Gregorian month** **has** **Gregorian month of year**

Definition: the **Gregorian month of year** corresponds to the time interval that is the instance of the **Gregorian month**

Necessity: Each **Gregorian month** has exactly one **Gregorian month of year**.

Necessity: The index of the **Gregorian month-of-year** of a **Gregorian month** equals 1 plus the integer remainder of dividing the index of the **Gregorian month** by 12.

Example: **Gregorian month 24108 has** **Gregorian month of year 1**, i.e., January.

**Gregorian month** **has** **Gregorian days sequence**

General Concept: time point converts to time point sequence

Definition: the **Gregorian month** converts to the **Gregorian days sequence**

Necessity: Each **Gregorian month** has exactly one **Gregorian days sequence**.

Necessity: The duration of the **Gregorian days sequence** of a **Gregorian month** is equal to the duration of the time period that is the instance of the **Gregorian month**.

Necessity: The index of the first time point of the **Gregorian days sequence** of a **Gregorian month** is equal to the index of the starting day of the **Gregorian year** of the **Gregorian month** minus 1 plus the day-of-common-year of the **Gregorian month-of-year** of the **Gregorian month** if the **Gregorian year** is a common year, or the day-of-leap-year of the **Gregorian month-of-year** if the **Gregorian year** is a leap year.

Description: the **Gregorian month** converts to a sequence of **Gregorian days** on the indefinite **Gregorian days scale**, using the starting day of the **Gregorian year** of the **Gregorian month** and the day-of-common-year or day-of-leap-year of the **Gregorian month-of-year** of the **Gregorian month**.
Note: The day-of-common-year and the day-of-leap-year for a Gregorian month-of-year are given in Table 11.1.

The Gregorian month that is indicated by “June 2010” converts to Gregorian day 733,926 through Gregorian day 733,955 on the Gregorian days scale. The starting day of 2010 has index 733,775, the day of common year of June is 152, and 2010 is a common year.

11.9 Gregorian Month of Year Comparisons and Conversions

These verb concepts enable comparison of time points that are on the Gregorian year of days scale and the Gregorian year of months scale.

![Diagram](image-url)

**Figure 11.10 - Gregorian Month of Year Conversion**

The following Necessity identifies the fact that Gregorian months of year and Gregorian days of year can be compared by conversion of the former to the Gregorian year of days scale:

Necessity: Each Gregorian month of year shares the Gregorian year of days scale with each Gregorian day of year.

Example: "May" can be compared with "day 33" on the Gregorian year of days scale.

Because of leap days, a Gregorian month of year converts to a time set on the Gregorian year of days scale, rather than to an individual time point sequence. The following concepts characterize these conversions.

**Gregorian year of days set**

Definition: time set on the Gregorian year of days scale

**Gregorian month of year has Gregorian year of days set**

General Concept: time point converts to time set

Definition: the Gregorian month of year converts to the Gregorian year of days set

Necessity: Each Gregorian month of year converts to exactly one Gregorian year of days set.

Necessity: Each Gregorian month of year converts to the time set on the Gregorian year of days scale that is given for the Gregorian month of year in Table 11.2.
Note: The time set for January has only one member. All of the others have one time point sequence for common years and one time point sequence for leap years.

Note: These time sets could be formulated "intensionally" in much the same way as the Gregorian day time point sequences are formulated for Gregorian months, but since there are only 12, it is simpler to enumerate the extension of the verb concept.

Example: The Gregorian month of year that is indicated by 'August' converts to the time set \{Gregorian day of year 213 through Gregorian day of year 243, Gregorian day of year 214 through Gregorian day of year 244\}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gregorian month of year index</th>
<th>Gregorian month of year term</th>
<th>Gregorian year of days set</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>January</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 1 through Gregorian day of year 31}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>February</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 32 through Gregorian day of year 59, Gregorian day of year 32 through Gregorian day of year 60}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>March</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 60 through Gregorian day of year 90, Gregorian day of year 61 through Gregorian day of year 91}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 91 through Gregorian day of year 120, Gregorian day of year 92 through Gregorian day of year 121}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 121 through Gregorian day of year 151, Gregorian day of year 122 through Gregorian day of year 152}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>June</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 152 through Gregorian day of year 181, Gregorian day of year 153 through Gregorian day of year 182}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>July</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 182 through Gregorian day of year 212, Gregorian day of year 183 through Gregorian day of year 213}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 213 through Gregorian day of year 243, Gregorian day of year 214 through Gregorian day of year 244}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 244 through Gregorian day of year 273, Gregorian day of year 245 through Gregorian day of year 274}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 274 through Gregorian day of year 304, Gregorian day of year 275 through Gregorian day of year 305}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>November</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 305 through Gregorian day of year 334, Gregorian day of year 306 through Gregorian day of year 335}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>December</td>
<td>{Gregorian day of year 335 through Gregorian day of year 365, Gregorian day of year 336 through Gregorian day of year 366}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table shown above is derived from Table 1 of [ISO 8601].
12 ISO Week Calendar (normative)

12.1 General

The week calendar has been used for centuries, separate from and in combination with the Gregorian calendar, even though they are incommensurate. This calendar supports human discourse using weekday names such as “Monday”, “Tuesday”, and so forth.

This specification follows [ISO 8601] in defining “Monday” as the first day of the week. Various cultures and religions define other initial week days. Users of this specification are welcome to redefine the weekday concepts according to their preferences.

We define January 3, 2000 to be a Monday, and thereby define an indefinite sequence of time intervals that are ISO weeks. That is the basis for the ISO weeks time scale.

These ISO weeks are further gathered into ISO week-based years – time periods of exactly 52 or 53 ISO weeks that correspond roughly to Gregorian years. (The correspondence algorithm is given in ISO 8601. It is based on the ‘first Thursday rule’ – the first week of an ISO week-based year is the ISO week that contains the first Thursday in the Gregorian year, and it may contain days from the prior Gregorian year.) The ISO week-based year forms the basis for the ISO year of weeks time scale and the ISO year of weekdays time scale, which number the weeks and days, respectively, within an ISO week-based year. These scales then provide the basis for time coordinates of the ISO year-week form, such as “year 2000 week 6”, and the ISO year-week-day form, such as “2004 week 37 day 2” or “Tuesday of 2004 week 37”.

ISO Week Calendar Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Concept:</th>
<th>terminological dictionary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Included Vocabulary:</td>
<td>Gregorian Calendar Vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace URI:</td>
<td><a href="http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvbr.xml#ISOWeekCalendarVocabulary">http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvbr.xml#ISOWeekCalendarVocabulary</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.2 ISO Week Time Scales

**Figure 12.1 - ISO Week Calendar time scales and time points**

ISO weeks scale

**Definition:** indefinite time scale that has granularity week and that has time points that are ISO weeks

**Necessity:** The index origin value of the ISO weeks scale is 104 304.

**Necessity:** The index origin member of the ISO weeks scale corresponds to the time interval that has duration 1 week and that is started by the time interval that is the Gregorian day 730 124.

**Note:** Gregorian day 730 124 is Monday, January 3, 2000. This date was chosen for consistency with ISO 8601, which defines the origin of the ISO weeks calendar as Saturday, January 1, 2000, but that date is part of the last week of Gregorian year 1999 according to the algorithm in ISO 8601.

**Note:** ISO week 104 303 ended on Gregorian day 730 123 and not 730 121 (a multiple of 7), because Gregorian day 1 was a Saturday, and ISO week 1 began the following Monday (per ISO 8601).

**Note:** A more convenient reference for the ISO weeks scale is that January 1, 1601 was the Monday of calendar week 83 485.

ISO week of days scale

**Definition:** the finite time scale that has granularity 1 day and that has cardinality 7 and that exactly subdivides 'ISO week'
Necessity: Each ISO week subdivides into exactly 7 ISO days of week.
Necessity: The index origin value of the ISO week of days scale equals 1.
Necessity: The first time point of the ISO week of days scale is the index origin member of the ISO week of days scale.
Necessity: The index origin member of the ISO week of days scale is Monday.

ISO year of weeks scale
Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 week and that has cardinality 53 and that repeats over the ISO weeks scale.
Description: From [ISO 8601] clause 3.2.2: A calendar year has 52 or 53 weeks of year.
Note: The ISO year of weeks scale repeats over the indefinite scale of ISO weeks and renumbers the weeks within a year from 1 to 52 or 53.
Necessity: The index origin value of the ISO year of weeks scale equals 1.
Necessity: The first time point of the ISO year of weeks scale is the index origin member of the ISO year of weeks scale.
Necessity: The first time point of the ISO year of weeks scale corresponds to each time interval that is the instance of the starting week of a Gregorian year.
Note: From the definition of the starting week, it follows that the Thursday of a first ISO week of year is one of the first 7 days of the year, but the Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday might be part of the previous year.
Note: Any Gregorian year that begins on Thursday, and any leap year that begins on Wednesday, has 53 ISO week of year time intervals. Any other year has 52 ISO week of year time intervals.

ISO year of weekdays scale
Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 day and that has cardinality 371 and that subdivides each ISO week-based year.
Note: The ISO year of weekdays scale subdivides the ISO week-based year in parallel to the way the Gregorian year of days subdivides the Gregorian year. But the two kinds of year are of different lengths and are only loosely aligned.
Necessity: The index origin value of the ISO year of weekdays scale equals 1.
Necessity: The first time point of the ISO year of weekdays scale is the index origin member of the ISO year of weekdays scale.
Necessity: Each instance of the first time point of the ISO year of weekdays is a Monday and is part of the instance of the starting week of a Gregorian year.
Note: An instance of ISO weekday of year 1 may be as late as January 4 of the Gregorian year or as early as December 29 of the previous Gregorian year.

ISO week
Dictionary Basis: ISO 8601 (2.2.8, ‘ISO week’)
Concept Type: concept type
Definition: calendar week that is on the ISO weeks scale and that corresponds to a time interval that is started by a Monday
Note: The ISO weeks scale is an indefinite time scale; so each ISO week corresponds to exactly one time interval.
Note: This is an absolute time point because it is on an indefinite time scale.

### ISO week-based year

**Definition:**

A time period that has duration 52 weeks or 53 weeks and that is started by an ISO week of year 1 and that meets an ISO week of year 1.

**Necessity:**

The ISO year of weeks scale subdivides each ISO week-based year.

**Necessity:**

Each ISO week-based year is an instance of a time point sequence of ISO weeks.

**Note:**

There is an indefinite sequence of ISO week-based years that covers the Time Axis in parallel to the indefinite sequence of Gregorian years. But it was not necessary to model it. ISO week-based years are identified by Gregorian year numbers and the ‘first Thursday rule’.

**Necessity:**

First Thursday Rule: The first Thursday in an ISO week-based year is the first Thursday of a Gregorian year.

**Necessity:**

Each ISO week-based year is started by a time interval that is the 3 days preceding the first Thursday of a Gregorian year.

**Note:**

The last Thursday of a Gregorian year is part of the last week of the corresponding ISO week-based year. That determines whether the ISO week-based year has 52 weeks or 53 weeks. Any Gregorian year that begins on Thursday, and any leap year that begins on Wednesday, relates to an ISO week-based year that has 53 ISO week of year time intervals and 371 ISO weekday of year time intervals. The first ISO week of year includes 2 or 3 days from the prior year (from the Monday to the start of the year), and the 53rd ISO week of year includes 2 or 3 days from the following year (from the Thursday or Friday that is December 31st through the following Sunday). Any other year has 52 ISO week of year time intervals and 364 ISO weekday of year time intervals, but it may include 1 or 2 days of the prior year or 1 or 2 days from the following year, while losing 1 to 3 days to the other of them.

### ISO day of week

**Concept Type:**

concept type

**Definition:**

A calendar day that is on the ISO week of days scale.

**Note:**

This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.

**Necessity:**

ISO day of week 1 is the concept ‘Monday’.

ISO day of week 2 is the concept ‘Tuesday’.

ISO day of week 3 is the concept ‘Wednesday’.

ISO day of week 4 is the concept ‘Thursday’.

ISO day of week 5 is the concept ‘Friday’.

ISO day of week 6 is the concept ‘Saturday’.

ISO day of week 7 is the concept ‘Sunday’.

**Source:**

ISO 8601 (Table 2)

**Note:**

Other day of week time scales may choose a different numbering.

### ISO week of year

**Concept Type:**

concept type

**Definition:**

A time point that is on the ISO year of weeks scale.

**Necessity:**

Each ISO week of year renumbers at least 1 ISO week.
Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.

**ISO weekday of year**
- **Concept Type:** concept type
- **Definition:** calendar day that is on the ISO year of weekdays scale
- **Necessity:** Each ISO weekday of year renumbers at least 1 Gregorian day.
- **Note:** Each ISO weekday of year time point is a calendar day of each ISO week-based year. The usual time coordinate has “week and day” form, i.e., an ISO week of year coordinate and an ISO day of week coordinate. See Clause 18.

The following concepts were created to support the formal definition of the ISO year of weeks and ISO year of weekdays time scales.

Figure 12.2 - Starting week

**first Thursday**
- **Concept Type:** role
- **General Concept:** Gregorian day
- **Description:** the Gregorian day that is the first Thursday in a given Gregorian year

**Gregorian year has first Thursday**
- **Definition:** the first Thursday is the Gregorian day that corresponds to the time interval that is a Thursday and that is part of the Gregorian year and that is not after a Thursday that is part of the Gregorian year
- **Necessity:** The index of the first Thursday of a Gregorian year equals the index of the starting day of the Gregorian year plus 6 minus the remainder of dividing the index of the starting day of the Gregorian year by 7.
- **Note:** If the remainder of dividing the index of the starting day by 7 is 0, the starting day is a Friday, if the remainder is 1, it is a Saturday, and so on. So, 6 minus the remainder is the number of days from the starting day to the first Thursday.
- **Note:** This concept is introduced only to define the starting week concept.
**starting week**

**Concept Type:** role

**General Concept:** ISO week

**Definition:** the ISO week that includes the first Thursday of a given Gregorian year

**Note:** This definition follows the specifications in ISO 8601.

**Note:** It is possible that the Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday of the starting week are part of the previous Gregorian year. It is also possible that January 1st, 2nd, and 3rd, are not part of the starting week and are part of the last week of the previous year.

**Example:** January 1, 2000 is a Saturday. So the first Thursday of 2000 is January 6 and the starting week of 2000 begins on Monday, January 3. Thus January 1, 2000 and January 2, 2000 are part of the last week of 1999.

**Example:** January 1, 2002 is a Tuesday. So the first Thursday of 2002 is January 4, and the starting week of 2002 begins on Monday, December 31, 2001.

**Gregorian year has starting week**

**Definition:** the starting week is the ISO week that includes the first Thursday of the Gregorian year

**Necessity:** The index of the starting week of a Gregorian year equals the index of the starting day of the Gregorian year divided by 7 plus 1.

**Note:** This formula works because Gregorian day 1 was a Saturday. The quotient is the number of complete weeks though a Friday that is on or before the starting day. So the quotient is greater by 1 exactly when January 1 falls on a Friday, Saturday, or Sunday, and the following Monday begins the starting week. Otherwise the starting week begins on or before the starting day, and there is one less complete week before it.

### 12.3 Days of the week

The concepts in this clause are the traditional days of the week, each of which is treated as a concept that corresponds to time intervals. They are defined to correspond to specific Gregorian days, by requiring that January 1, 2000 is a Saturday.

The days of the week are not ‘time points’ as defined. They become time points when they are chosen to be members of a time scale. This allows different time scales to make different choices for the first day of the week, without changing the relationship between the day of week and the actual time intervals.

![Figure 12.3 - Week days](image-url)

**Monday**

**Definition:** time interval that has duration 1 day and that meets a Tuesday
**Tuesday**
Definition: time interval that has duration 1 day and that meets a Wednesday

**Wednesday**
Definition: time interval that has duration 1 day and that meets a Thursday

**Thursday**
Definition: time interval that has duration 1 day and that meets a Friday

**Friday**
Definition: time interval that has duration 1 day and that meets a Saturday

**Saturday**
Definition: time interval that has duration 1 day and that meets a Sunday
Necessity: One Saturday is the time interval that has duration 1 day and that starts Gregorian year 2000.
Note: This requirement anchors the repeating sequence of days of week to specific Gregorian days. It requires that January 1, 2000 is a Saturday. It follows that January 2, 2000 must be the Sunday that it meets, and so on.

**Sunday**
Definition: time interval that has duration 1 day and that meets a Monday

### 12.4 ISO Week Time Coordinates

This sub clause supports the following time coordinates based on weeks:

- An ISO day of week coordinate indicates an ISO day of week, for example “Tuesday”
- An ISO week of year coordinate indicates an ISO week of year, for example “week 15”
- An ISO week day coordinate combines an ISO week of year coordinate and an ISO day of week to indicate an ISO weekday of year, for example “Tuesday week 15”
- An ISO year week coordinate combines a Gregorian year and an ISO week of year coordinate to indicate an ISO week, for example “2010 week 15.”
- An ISO year week day coordinate combines a Gregorian year, an ISO week of year coordinate, and an ISO day of week to indicate a calendar day, for example “Tuesday 2010 week 15.”

The detailed definitions of these time coordinates follow.
**ISO day of week coordinate**

**Definition:** A relative atomic time coordinate that indicates an ISO day of week.

**Necessity:** Each ISO day of week coordinate indicates an ISO day of week that has the index equal to the index of the ISO day of week coordinate.

**Description:** An ISO day of week coordinate directly identifies an ISO day of week.

**Necessity:** Each ISO day of week coordinate is greater than or equal to 1.

**Necessity:** Each ISO day of week coordinate is less than or equal to 7.

**Example:** Wednesday

**ISO week of year coordinate**

**Synonym:** ISO week number

**Definition:** A relative atomic time coordinate that indicates an ISO week of year.

**Necessity:** Each ISO week of year coordinate indicates the ISO week of year that has an index equal to the index of the ISO week of year coordinate.

**Description:** An ISO week of year coordinate gives the number of an ISO week within a calendar year.
ISO week day coordinate

Definition: relative compound time coordinate that combines an ISO week of year coordinate and that combines an ISO day of week coordinate and that indicates an ISO weekday of year

Necessity: Each week day coordinate indicates the weekday of year that has an index equal to \( 7 \) times the index of the week of year coordinate minus \( 1 \) plus the index of the day of week coordinate.

Description: An ISO week day coordinate combines an ISO week of year coordinate and an ISO day of week coordinate to identify an ISO weekday of year, i.e., a calendar day within an ISO week-based year.

Note: The first ISO week of year may start up to 3 days before the first calendar day of a Gregorian year, and the last ISO week of year may include up to 3 calendar days from the following Gregorian year. See [ISO 8601] clause 3.2.2 for details.

Example: Wednesday week 35 indicates ISO weekday of year 241

Example: Sunday week 1 indicates ISO weekday of year 7

ISO year week coordinate

Definition: absolute compound time coordinate that combines a Gregorian year coordinate and that combines a ISO week of year coordinate, and that indicates an ISO calendar week

Necessity: Each ISO year week coordinate indicates the ISO calendar week that has the index that equals the index of the ISO week of year coordinate minus \( 1 \) plus the index of the starting week of the Gregorian year that is indicated by the Gregorian year coordinate.

Description: A ISO year week coordinate identifies a calendar week time interval by the Gregorian year in which it occurs and its relative position within the Gregorian year. Note that the relationship between week of year 1 and January 1 is complex.

Example: 2010 week 35 indicates the ISO calendar week 104860. January 1, 2010 is a Friday. So the starting week of 2010 begins on the following Monday, and is calendar week 104826. Calendar week 104860 = 104826 + 35 – 1.

ISO year week day coordinate

Definition: Gregorian date that combines a Gregorian year coordinate and that combines an ISO week of year coordinate and that combines an ISO day of week coordinate

Description: An ISO year week day coordinate indicates a calendar day by a combination of a Gregorian year coordinate, an ISO week of year coordinate, and an ISO day of week coordinate.

Necessity: Each ISO year week day coordinate indicates the Gregorian day that has an index that equals \( 7 \) times the index of the ISO week of year coordinate of the ISO year week day coordinate.
plus the **index of the ISO day of week coordinate** of the ISO year week day coordinate minus 11
plus the **index of the first Thursday of the Gregorian year** that is indicated by the Gregorian year coordinate of the ISO year week day coordinate.

Note: That is, the **ISO year week day coordinate** \((y, w, d)\) indicates the **Gregorian day** whose index is
\[
7 \times (w - 1) + (d - 1) + \text{firstThursday}(y) - 3, \text{ or }
7 \times w + d + \text{firstThursday}(y) - 11.
\]
The beginning day of the **starting week** is the Monday before the **first Thursday**, so its index is the index of the **first Thursday** minus 3.

Example: **Wednesday 2010 week 35** indicates **Gregorian day 834 647** (starting week day of 2010) + **238** (7 \*(35–1)) + **3–1** \(\Rightarrow\) **Gregorian day 834 887**.
13 Time of Day (normative)

13.1 General

Time of Day Vocabulary
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Included Vocabulary: Calendars Vocabulary
13.2 Time of Day Time Scales

**Figure 13.1 - Time of Day Time Scales, Time Points, and Time Periods**

**day of hours scale**
- **Definition:** the finite time scale that has granularity 1 hour and that has cardinality 24 and that exactly subdivides the Gregorian calendar day.
- **Necessity:** Each calendar day subdivides into exactly 24 hours of day.
- **Necessity:** The index origin value of the day of hours scale equals 0.
- **Necessity:** The first position of the day of hours scale is the index origin member of the day of hours scale.
day of minutes scale
Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 minute and that has cardinality 1440 and that exactly subdivides 'Gregorian calendar day'.
Necessity: Each calendar day subdivides into exactly 1440 minutes of day.
Necessity: The index origin value of the day of minutes scale equals 0.
Necessity: The first position of the day of minutes scale is the index origin member of the day of minutes scale.

day of seconds scale
Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 second and that has cardinality 86400 and that exactly subdivides 'Gregorian calendar day'.
Necessity: Each calendar day subdivides into exactly 86400 seconds of day.
Necessity: The granularity of the day of seconds scale is 'second'.
Necessity: The index origin value of the day of seconds scale equals 0.
Necessity: The first position of the day of seconds scale is the index origin member of the day of seconds scale.

hour of minutes scale
Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 minute and that has cardinality 60 and that exactly subdivides 'minute of hour'.
Necessity: Each hour of day subdivides into exactly 60 minutes of hour.
Necessity: The index origin value of the hour of minutes scale equals 0.
Necessity: The first position of the hour of minutes scale is the index origin member of the hour of minutes scale.

minute of seconds scale
Definition: the finite time scale that has granularity 1 second and that has cardinality 60 and that exactly subdivides 'minute of hour'.
Necessity: Each minute of hour subdivides into exactly 60 seconds of minute.
Necessity: The index origin value of the minute of seconds scale equals 0.
Necessity: The first position of the minute of seconds scale is the index origin member of the minute of seconds scale.

13.3 Time of Day Time Points

midnight
Definition: second of day 0
Necessity: time point 0 on the day of seconds time scale corresponds to time intervals that have duration 1 second and start an instance of a calendar day.

noon
Definition: second of day 43 200
Note: 43 200 = 12 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds
**hour of day**

Dictionary Basis: ISO 8601 (3.2.3)

Concept Type: concept type

Definition: time point that is on the day of hours scale where the index of the time point represents the number of full hours that have elapsed since midnight at the start of each time interval that the time point corresponds to.

Necessity: Each time interval is an instance of hour of day 0 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 hour and starts an instance of a calendar day.

Necessity: For each hour of day 1 that has an index that is greater than 0, each time interval is an instance of hour of day 1 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 hour and is met by an instance of the hour of day that precedes hour of day 1 on the day of hours scale.

Note: The standard that the hour of day is counted since midnight was established by the International Meridian Conference of 1884 [International Meridian].

Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.

**minute of day**

Concept Type: concept type

Definition: time point that is on the day of minutes scale where the index of the time point represents the number of full minutes that have elapsed since midnight at the start of each time interval that the time point corresponds to.

Necessity: Each time interval is an instance of minute of day 0 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 minute and starts an instance of a calendar day.

Necessity: For each minute of day 1 that has an index that is greater than 0, each time interval is an instance of minute of day 1 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 minute and is met by an instance of the minute of day that precedes minute of day 1 on the day of minutes scale.

Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.

Example: "03:15" is the minute-of-day that has index 195

**second of day**

Concept Type: concept type

Definition: time point that is on the day of seconds scale where the index of the time point represents the number of full seconds that have elapsed since midnight at the start of each time interval that the time point corresponds to.

Necessity: Each time interval is an instance of second of day 0 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 second and starts an instance of a calendar day.

Necessity: For each second of day 1 that has an index that is greater than 0, each time interval is an instance of second of day 1 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 second and is met by an instance of the second of day that precedes second of day 1 on the day of seconds scale.

Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.

Example: "03:15:48" is the second-of-day that has index 11 748
**leap second**

Concept Type: **concept type**  
Definition: **second of day** that is used to adjust **UTC** to ensure appropriate agreement with the rotation of the Earth  
Dictionary Basis: **ISO 8601** (2.2.2, 'leap second')  
Note: Leap seconds are added or deleted at 23:59:59 on specific calendar days of UTC. These intercalary seconds of day adjust midnight of the next calendar day to match Earth’s rotation. The International Earth Rotation and Reference Systems Service [IERS] announces leap seconds whenever the difference between UTC and the Earth’s rotation exceeds 0.6 seconds.  
Note: As of 2012, there is a proposal to drop the 'leap second' concept. This proposal will be formally considered at the World Radio Conference in 2015.

**minute of hour**

Dictionary Basis: **ISO 8601** (3.2.3)  
Concept Type: **concept type**  
Definition: **time point** that is on the **hour of minutes scale** where the index of the time point represents the number of full minutes that have elapsed since the last full hour at the start of each time interval that the time point corresponds to  
Necessity: Each time interval is an instance of minute of hour 0 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 minute and starts an instance of an hour of day.  
Necessity: For each minute of hour 1 that has an index that is greater than 0, each time interval is an instance of minute of hour 1 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 minute and is met by an instance of the minute of hour 2 that precedes minute of hour 1 on the hour of minutes scale.  
Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.

**second of minute**

Dictionary Basis: **ISO 8601** (3.2.3)  
Concept Type: **concept type**  
Definition: **time point** that is on the **minute of seconds scale** where the index of the time point represents the number of full seconds that have elapsed since the last full minute at the start of each time interval that the time point corresponds to  
Necessity: Each time interval is an instance of second of minute 0 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 second and starts an instance of a minute of day.  
Necessity: For each second of minute 1 that has an index that is greater than 0, each time interval is an instance of second of minute 1 if and only if the time interval has duration 1 second and is met by an instance of the second of minute 2 that precedes second of minute 1 on the minute of seconds scale.  
Note: This is a relative time point because it is on a finite time scale.

**hour period**

Definition: **time period** that begins and ends at the same minute of hour on consecutive hours of day  
Example: 1:05 to 2:05
13.4 Time of Day Time Coordinates

This sub clause defines the following relative time coordinates and time scales for these combinations of time of day time units:

- An hour coordinate indicates an hour of day, for example “hour 10” or “10 a.m.”
- A minute coordinate indicates a minute of hour, for example “minute 33”
- A second coordinate indicates a second of minute, for example “second 27”
- An hour minute coordinate combines an hour of day and a minute of hour, to indicate a minute of day, for example “10:33”
- An hour minute second coordinate combines an hour of day, a minute of hour, and a second of minute, to indicate a second of day, for example “10:33:27”

This specification does not define time coordinates and time scales for fractions of seconds (e.g., milliseconds). Business vocabularies may extend this specification as needed to address fractional seconds.

Figure 13.2 - Time of Day Coordinates

**hour coordinate**

Definition: relative atomic time coordinate that indicates an hour of day

Necessity: Each hour coordinate indicates an hour of day that has the index equal to the index of the hour coordinate.

Description: An hour coordinate directly indicates an hour of day.

Necessity: Each hour coordinate is greater than or equal to 0.
Necessity: Each hour coordinate is less than or equal to 23.

Example: "11 p.m." and "23:00" indicate the same hour of day.

**minute coordinate**

Definition: relative atomic time coordinate that indicates a minute of hour

Necessity: Each minute coordinate indicates a minute of hour that has the index equal to the index of the minute coordinate.

Description: A minute coordinate directly indicates a minute of hour.

Necessity: Each minute coordinate is greater than or equal to 0.

Necessity: Each minute coordinate is less than or equal to 59.

Example: minute 23

Note: This type of time coordinate is not common in everyday use, but is defined here to support the concepts 'hour minute coordinate' and 'hour minute second coordinate'

**second coordinate**

Definition: relative atomic time coordinate that indicates a second of minute

Necessity: Each second coordinate indicates a second of minute that has the index equal to the index of the second coordinate.

Necessity: Each second coordinate is greater than or equal to 0.

Necessity: Each second coordinate is less than or equal to 59.

Example: second 45

Note: This type of time coordinate is not common in everyday use, but is defined here to support the concept 'hour minute second coordinate'

**hour minute coordinate**

Definition: relative compound time coordinate that combines an hour coordinate and that combines a minute coordinate, and that indicates a minute of day

Necessity: Each hour minute coordinate indicates a minute of day that has index 60 times the index of the hour coordinate plus the index of the minute coordinate.

Description: An hour minute coordinate combines an hour coordinate and a minute coordinate to indicate a minute of day.

Example: "11:23 a.m." combines the set of {11 a.m., minute 23}, and indicates the minute of day that has index 683.

**hour minute second coordinate**

Definition: relative compound time coordinate that combines an hour coordinate and that combines a minute coordinate and that combines a second coordinate and that indicates a second of day

Necessity: Each hour minute second coordinate indicates a second of day that has index 3600 times the index of the hour coordinate plus 60 times the index of the minute coordinate plus the index of the second coordinate.

Example: "11:23:49 a.m." combines the set of {11 a.m., minute 23, second 49}, and indicates the second of day that has index 36432.
**standard time coordinate**

Definition: time of day coordinate that is an hour coordinate or hour minute coordinate or hour minute second coordinate

Dictionary Basis: ISO 8601 (2.1.9, 'calendar date')

Note: standard time coordinates may be combined with time offsets, see clause 10.3.

Example: 3 p.m.
Example: 15:00
Example: 15:00:35

### 13.5 Time of Day Comparisons and Conversions

*Hours of day, minutes of day,* and *seconds of day* may be compared with each other.

![Diagram of time conversions](image)

**Figure 13.3 - Time of Day Conversions**

The following Necessities identify which *time of day time points* can be compared by conversion to a common 'shared' *time scale*:

**Necessity:** Each *hour of day* shares the *day of minutes scale* with each *minute of day*.

**Example:** "10 a.m." can be compared with "10:39" on the *day of minutes scale*.

**Necessity:** Each *hour of day* shares the *day of seconds scale* with each *second of day*.

**Example:** "10 a.m." can be compared with "10:39:42" on the *day of seconds scale*.

**Necessity:** Each *minute of day* shares the *day of seconds scale* with each *second of day*.

**Example:** "10:39" can be compared with "10:54:48" on the *day of seconds scale*.

**Necessity:** *Hours of day and minutes of day* can be converted to the *day of seconds scale*.

**General Concept:** time point converts to time point sequence on the day of seconds scale

**Definition:** the time point sequence is on the day of seconds scale and the index of the first time point of the time point sequence equals 3 600 times the index of the
The hour of day converts to a sequence of seconds of day whose indices are computed by the formula.

Example: The hour of day that is indicated by "hour 0" converts to second of day 0 through second of day 3,599 on the day of seconds scale.

The minute of day converts to time point sequence on the day of seconds scale.

General Concept: time point converts to time point sequence on time scale

Definition: the time point sequence is on the day of seconds scale and the index of the first time point of time point sequence equals 60 times the index of minute of day, and the index of the last time point of time point sequence is the index of the first time point plus 59.

Description: The minute of day converts to a sequence of seconds of day whose indices are computed by the formula.

Example: The minute of day that is indicated by "1:48" converts to second of day 6,480 through second of day 6,539 on the day of seconds scale.

13.6 Time Zones

In order to make local noon (12:00) coincide approximately with the Sun’s zenith at the locale, authorities in each locale specify one or more local calendars to be used, during different seasons of a year, for commerce in the locale. A locale in which a standard calendar is used is called a “time zone.” The governing authority over time zones is the national or state government of the locale. Many local calendars are named. For example, Pacific Daylight Time, Eastern Standard Time, British Summer Time. Two or more time zones may have the same name, e.g., there is an Eastern Standard Time in the U.S. and another in Australia, and they are different time zones.

A local calendar is UTC with a characteristic time offset from UTC by up to ±12 hours. These offsets are usually an integer number of hours or half hours. The nominal offset is zero at the Prime Meridian, +1 hour for each 15º of longitude east of the Prime Meridian, and −1 hour for each 15º of longitude west of the Prime Meridian. ‘+’ means a particular reading of a clock set to the time of the local calendar occurs before a clock that is set to UTC has the same reading; ‘−’ means the local reading occurs after the UTC reading. The duration between corresponding readings is the time offset. The 180º meridian is nominally the International Date Line: a date in locales west of the International Date Line (e.g., longitude 179ºE) is one day ahead of the date in locales east of the International Date Line (e.g., longitude 179ºW).

The time offset from UTC affects more than time of day for a local calendar: At any UTC time there is some locale that has a different local date that is one day before or after the UTC date: the date can be different as well as the hour and minute. For example, during periods when standard time is used in Australia (early April to early October), 18:00 UTC (19:00 BST in London) is 04:00 local time the next day in Sydney (UTC+10 hours); 04:00 UTC is 18:00 local time the previous day in Honolulu (UTC–10 hours); Honolulu and Sydney, being 20 hours apart, are on different dates for all but four hours each day (10:00 – 14:00 UTC that day). The approach adopted in this specification is to consider that each time zone has one or two distinguished local calendars.

A complete literal specification of a time interval includes a calendar specification as part of the time coordinate; otherwise there is a 24 hour ambiguity. For example, compare “July 4, 2010 12:00 PDT” to “July 4, 2010 12:00” or “July 4, 2010 PDT”
to “July 4, 2010.” Note the 24-hour ambiguity when the calendar specification is left out, not knowing where in the world the time is meant.

The intended calendar is often implied by the locale of the utterance of a time coordinate, or by the locale of the associated event, or by other context, but a calendar specification should be provided explicitly when necessary to remove all doubt. This is especially important in discourses that involve multiple time zones. When time coordinates are used in a discourse without specifying the time zone, it is assumed for purposes of comparison and date-time arithmetic that they are on the same calendar. Time references without calendar specifications in different discourses also without locale references are not prima facie comparable to within less than 24 hours.

A representation of a time offset may be combined with a date coordinate, a time of day coordinate, or a date time coordinate to indicate that the time coordinate is specified according to a local calendar that has that offset. The effect of the time offset is to shift the interpretation of the time coordinate with respect to UTC.

### 13.6.1 Calendar Offsets

This subclause defines the basic relationship between calendars that use the same nominal time scales and time points but use the time points to refer to different time intervals.

![Diagram](#)

**Figure 13.4 - Calendars and Time Offsets**

---

184 Date-Time Vocabulary v1.3
**indefinite time scale**, 1 *is duration ahead of indefinite time scale*, 2  
Synonymous Form: indefinite time scale*, 2 *is duration behind indefinite time scale*, 1  
Synonymous Form: indefinite time scale*, 1 *= indefinite time scale*, 2 + duration  
Synonymous Form: indefinite time scale*, 2 *= indefinite time scale*, 1 - duration  
Definition: the granularity of indefinite time scale*, 1 *is the granularity of indefinite time scale*, 2 and each time point, 1 of indefinite time scale*, 1 *corresponds to a time interval, 1 that starts duration before the time interval that is the instance of the time point, 2 that is a time point of indefinite time scale*, 2 and that has an index that is equal to the index of time point*, 1.  
Note: That is, the time scales have the same nominal time points but the correspondence to time intervals is adjusted by the time offset.  
Note: In particular, the time point on indefinite time scale*, 2 that has the same index as the time point that defines the reference time interval for the indefinite time scale, 1 corresponds to a time interval that starts duration before the reference time interval.  

**calendar, 1 *is duration ahead of calendar, 2*  
Synonymous Form: calendar, 2 *is time offset behind calendar*, 1  
Synonymous Form: calendar, 1 *= calendar*, 2 + duration  
Synonymous Form: calendar, 2 *= calendar*, 1 - duration  
Definition: each indefinite time scale, 1 that is defined by calendar*, 1 *is duration ahead of the indefinite time scale*, 2 that is defined by calendar*, 2 and that has the granularity of indefinite time scale*, 1.  
Description: The two calendars have the same time scales, and the time scales correspond to time intervals that are duration apart.  
Note: All of the time scales defined by calendar*, 1 are considered to be the same duration ahead of the corresponding time scales of calendar*, 2, because the finite time scales are defined relative to time points on the indefinite time scales.  
Example: Eastern Standard Time (EST) is UTC - 5 hours, and Pacific Standard Time (PST) is UTC - 8 hours. Therefore, EST is 3 hours ahead of PST, and PST is 3 hours behind EST.  
Example: India Standard Time (IST) = UTC + 5 hours 30 minutes. Therefore IST is 13 hours 30 minutes ahead of PST. And each Gregorian day in India begins 13 hours 30 minutes before the same Gregorian day in California.
13.6.2 Time Zones and Standard Time

**time of day scale**
Definition: time scale that has members that are times of day
Necessity: Each time point of each time of day scale is a time of day.

**UTC**
Synonym: Coordinated Universal Time
Source: International Bureau of Weights and Measures (BIPM)
Source: ISO 8601 (2.1.12)
Source: IEC 60050-713
Dictionary Basis: time scale which forms the basis for the coordinated dissemination of standard frequencies and time signals; it corresponds exactly in rate with International Atomic Time, but differs from it by an integral number of seconds
Definition: calendar that combines the Gregorian Calendar with a day of seconds scale based on TAI, to identify time intervals by date and time of day
Necessity: UTC defines the day-of-hours scale, the hour-of-minutes scale, and the minute-of-seconds scale
Note: UTC is defined to be a calendar, because it defines the relationship of the Gregorian day time points to time intervals, as well as defining time of day scales.
Note: All time zone calendars are correlated to UTC.
Note: UTC is officially maintained by the BIPM in cooperation with national metrology institutes or observatories around the world. See http://www.bipm.org/en/scientific/tai/time_server.html.
Note: The UTC day of seconds scale differs from TAI by the insertion of leap seconds (about every 18 months) to ensure approximate agreement with the time derived from the rotation of the Earth to within one second. The leap second adjustments make UTC a discontinuous time scale, because the Gregorian days in which the leap seconds occur have 86401 seconds. Thus, the UTC day of seconds scale is the current number of leap seconds behind TAI. Businesses that are sensitive to elapsed seconds of day may prefer to use TAI instead.

**TAI**

**Synonym:** Temps Atomique International
**Synonym:** International Atomic Time
**Definition:** indefinite time scale that is defined in a geocentric reference frame with the SI second as realized on the rotating geoid as the scale unit
**Source:** SI

**Note:** SI cites the “declaration of the CCDS, BIPM Com. Cons. DZF. Seconde, 1980, 9, S 15 and Metrologia, 1981, 17, 70”.

**Necessity:** The granularity of the TAI Scale is second.
**Necessity:** The index origin of TAI is midnight Gregorian day 2443145 (1 January 1977 00:00:00), Julian Date 2443144.5

**Note:** TAI is a continuous time scale of seconds, maintained by the Bureau international des poids et mesures (BIPM) as the average of over 200 hundred atomic clocks located in over 50 national laboratories.

**Note:** Time coordinates for TAI are given as Julian date and time of day, where each Julian day is exactly 86 400 seconds. Businesses that are sensitive to the discontinuities of UTC should instead use TAI.

**UTC time**

**Source:** ISO 8601 (2.1.13)
**Concept Type:** concept type
**Definition:** time point within a calendar day in accordance with UTC

**standard time**

**Source:** ISO 8601 (2.1.14)
**Source:** IEC 60050-111

**Definition:** time scale derived from Coordinated Universal Time, UTC, by a time offset established in a given location by the competent authority

**locale**

**Definition:** A place or region whose time of day is specified by a competent authority

**local time**

**Synonym:** local time of day
**Concept Type:** role
**Source:** ISO 8601 (2.1.16)
**Dictionary Basis:** locally applicable time of day based on standard time, or a non-UTC based time of day
**Definition:** time of day scale that is applicable to a given locale
**locale has local time**
Definition: the *local time* is the *time of day scale* that is applicable for the *locale* at a given time.

**time offset**
Definition: specification of the difference between a *local calendar* and *UTC*.
Description: A time offset involves a direction – whether the local calendar is ahead of UTC or behind UTC – and the *duration* by which the local calendar is ahead of or behind UTC.
Example: Difference between a given indication (e.g., 12:00:00.000) on a clock set to local time and the same indication on a clock set to UTC time, where both of the clocks change at the same rate.
Note: Conventionally, a time offset is prefixed + to indicate that the local clock indication occurs before (is ahead of) the UTC indication, and – to indicate the local clock indication occurs after (is behind) the UTC indication. These are noun forms of 'calendar₁ is duration ahead of calendar₂' (above). The number of a duration is always non-negative.
Example: Indian Standard Time – UTC = +5½ hours.

**time offset has duration**
Definition: the *local calendar* that *has the time offset* is the *duration* ahead of UTC or is the *duration* behind UTC.
Description: The duration is the amount of time between the local calendar time intervals and the corresponding UTC time intervals without regard to the direction.

**time offset is ahead**
Definition: the *local calendar* that *has the time offset* is the *duration* of the *time offset* ahead of UTC.

**time offset is behind**
Definition: the *local calendar* that *has the time offset* is the *duration* of the *time offset* behind UTC.

**local calendar**
Definition: *calendar* that *is exactly one duration* ahead of UTC or that *is exactly one duration* behind UTC.
Reference Scheme: the time offset of the *local calendar*
Example: Pacific Daylight Time (UTC–7 hours), Eastern Standard Time (UTC–5 hours), British Summer Time (UTC+1 hour), Indian Standard Time (UTC+5½ hours)
Note: Many, but not all, local calendars are named. Calendar names are not unique, e.g., EST in the US and Australia. Many named local calendars may have the same time offset. For example, both Central European Standard Time and Algeria Standard Time are UTC+1 hour. A local calendar does not need to be named; it is identified by its time offset from UTC.
Note: ISO 8601 abbreviates time offsets by using only a signed four-digit number representing hours and minutes, omitting the “UTC” and “hours”. Thus, IST is “+0530”.
Note: Time references that are intended to be independent of changes to *local calendars* should be specified as UTC and a *time offset*.
Example: Most locations in the United States change between daylight time and summer time twice a year, and the specifications for when the changes happen have themselves changed on occasion. To specify noon in standard time in NY independent of *local calendar*, use ‘12:00 -05:00’.
**local calendar specifies time offset**
- Synonymous Form: time offset of local calendar
- Definition: the time offset is the difference between the local calendar and UTC
- Necessity: Each local calendar specifies exactly one time offset.

**locale uses local calendar**
- Necessity: Each locale uses exactly one local calendar at any given time.

**time zone**
- Definition: locale in which one or two local calendars is used
- Note: When there are two calendars for a time zone, one is standard time and the other is daylight savings time. The dates and time of day for changing between them is determined by local authorities for each time zone.
- Note: The Time Zone Database [Zoneinfo] documents the history of local time for many locations. It is updated periodically to reflect changes made by political bodies to time zone boundaries, UTC offsets, and daylight-saving rules.

### 13.6.3 Time Coordinates with Time Offsets

![Diagram of time coordinates with a time offset]

**Figure 13.6 - Time coordinates with a time offset**
**date coordinate with time offset**

Definition: A **time coordinate** that combines a **date coordinate** and a **time offset** and that **indicates the time point** that is indicated by the **date coordinate** and that is on the **calendar** that **specifies the time offset**.

Note: **Time offsets** affect the meaning of dates because they change the relationship of midnight to time intervals.

Example: "July 9 -5:00" means "July 9" on the **calendar** specified by **time offset** "is behind 5 hours", that is, **UTC -5 hours**.

Example: "July 9 +11:00" is 22 hours before "July 9 -11:00".

**time of day coordinate with time offset**

Definition: A **time coordinate** that combines a **time of day coordinate** and a **time offset** and that **indicates the time point** that is indicated by the **time of day coordinate** and that is on the **calendar** that **specifies the time offset**.

Example: "10:00 -5:00" means "10:00" on the **calendar** specified by **time offset** "is behind 5 hours", that is, **UTC -5 hours**.

Example: "10:00 +11:00" is 22 hours before "10:00 -11:00".

**date time coordinate with time offset**

Definition: A **time coordinate** that combines a **date time coordinate** and a **time offset** and that **indicates the time point** that is indicated by the **date time coordinate** and that is on the **calendar** that **specifies the time offset**.

Example: "July 9 10:00 -5:00" means "July 9 10:00" on the **calendar** specified by **time offset** "is behind 5 hours", that is, **UTC -5 hours**.

Example: "July 9 10:00 +11:00" is 22 hours before "July 9 10:00 - 11:00".
14 Internet Time (normative)

14.1 General

Internet Time is the calendar of the Network Time Protocol (NTP), published by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF); see http://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc5905. Virtually all computers and cell phones are synchronized with the NTP.

![Diagram of Internet Calendar]

Figure 14.1 - Internet Calendar

Internet Time Vocabulary

- General Concept: terminological dictionary
- Language: English
- Included Vocabulary: Calendars Vocabulary
- Namespace URI: http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#InternetTimeVocabulary
14.2 Internet Calendar

**Internet Time**

**Definition:** calendar that keeps UTC time and that uses the Internet Time Scale

**Source:** [NTP]

**Note:** Internet Time is based on UTC but is not necessarily always coincident with it (see [NTP] Appendix E.8 for a fuller explanation of reckoning the Internet Time Scale with UTC). Internet Time accounts for UTC's leap seconds, with a small uncertainty around the time of insertion of a leap second.

**Necessity:** Accuracy of Internet Time relative to UTC is on the order of 1 millisecond. Stated precision is 200 picoseconds.

**Internet Time Scale**

**Definition:** finite time scale whose granularity is 2-32 seconds and whose cardinality is 264 and whose first 232 time points correspond to January 1, 1900 00:00:00 UTC

**Note:** The data format of NTP is defined in [NTP] section 3.1 and Appendix A. The Internet Time Scale will overflow the 64 bits after about 136 years, in 2036. The IETF is considering a revision of NTP (RFC 5905) that may likely extend its lifetime considerably.

**Internet time coordinate**

**Definition:** time coordinate that is a 64-bit unsigned fixed-point number having a 32 bit integer part and 32 bit fractional part and that indicates the Internet time point that is the number of seconds since January 1, 1900 00:00:00 UTC.

**Internet time point**

**Concept Type:** concept type

**Definition:** time point that is on the Internet time scale and that is the number of seconds since January 1, 1900 00:00:00 UTC.
15  Indexical Time Concepts (normative)

15.1 General

“Indexical” is a linguistic concept that refers to terms that make implicit reference to the speaker or the context of the communication. It includes words like “now,” “here,” “we,” etc. This clause defines indexical terms for time periods that are in common business use.

The use of indexical terms in business vocabularies and rules can be ambiguous, and the practice is generally deprecated, but these concepts are needed for some use cases.

15.2 Indexical Characteristics

These unary fact types locate time intervals relative to the fundamental concept ‘time interval is past’. An alternative design choice would be to specify a fundamental concept ‘current time’ as a kind of ‘time interval’, and then define ‘time interval is past’, ‘time interval is future’, etc., in terms of ‘current time’. One of them must be defined; otherwise the definitions are circular. But every time interval has a duration, and defining ‘current time’ implies specifying its duration. The advantage of making ‘time interval is past’ fundamental is that we need not give a duration for current time.

Figure 15.1 - Indexical Characteristics

time interval is past

Definition: time interval that is before some reference time interval that is defined by context
Note: The reference time interval is the time interval in which a rule is evaluated or applied. That is, any time interval that is past is always before the time interval at which the rule is used.

Example: The time interval identified by "January 1, 1900" is past with respect to a reference time interval in 2012.

time interval is current

- Synonymous Form: time interval is present
- Synonymous Form: time interval is now
- Definition: time interval that includes a time interval that is past and a time interval that is not past
- Example: If the contract deadline is current …


time interval is future

- Definition: time interval that includes no time interval that is in the past
- Necessity: Each time interval that is future, is after each time interval that is past.
- Example: The supplier may respond to the RFP only if the due date of the RFP is future.

These definitions of ‘time interval is past’, ‘time interval is current’, and ‘time interval is future’ are under-specified in the sense that many time intervals (of different durations) fit them. In particular, the verb concept ‘time interval is future’ includes the ‘current time’ reference time interval of the verb concept ‘time interval is past’. Rules that compare time against ‘current time’ may be stated more precisely by referencing the indexicals given in sub clause 15.3, below. For example “if the contract due date is a future day …” clearly tests the time interval given by the contract due date against a time interval that has a duration of 1 day and an alignment against the Gregorian calendar, whereas “if the contract due date is future” may be interpreted with any “comparison granularity,” such as ‘second’ or ‘hour’.

15.3 Indexical Time Intervals

Indexical time concepts are noun concepts that are indexical references to time. To minimize confusion, the indexical time intervals defined in this clause follow a consistent designation pattern. These time intervals are distinguished by whether they define the immediate previous or subsequent time point of a given kind, any past or future time point of a given kind, or a time period of a specific duration that ends or begins at a reference time.

Table 15.1 summarizes the designation patterns for the indexical time intervals. The patterns may be combined with the designations of any time units. In the table, the symbol ‘…’ stands for the designation of a time unit, such as ‘day’, or ‘second’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time intervals relative to 'current time'</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>current ...</td>
<td>Time intervals of a specific time point kind that are current.</td>
<td>current time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last ...</td>
<td>Time intervals of a specific time point kind that meet the reference time.</td>
<td>last day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>previous ...</td>
<td>Time intervals of a specific time point kind that are met by the reference time.</td>
<td>next week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next ...</td>
<td>Time intervals of a specific time point kind that are before the reference time.</td>
<td>past hour earlier month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsequent ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prior ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earlier ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15.1 - Naming Pattern for Indexical Time Intervals

| Time intervals of a specific time point kind that are after the reference time. | future month |
| Time periods of a specified duration that meet the reference time. | preceding year |
| Time periods of a specified duration that are met by the reference time. | following day |

Figure 15.2 - Indexical Time Intervals Relative to 'Current Time'
Figure 15.3 - Indexical Time Periods Relative to 'Current Time'

**current time**
- Synonym: present time
- Definition: time interval that is current
- Note: Every time interval that overlaps the "reference time interval" for 'time interval is past' is a current time (one of many).
- Example: If the reference time interval is the current hour, then the calendar day, calendar week, calendar month, calendar year (etc.) that overlap the current hour are all current times.

**past time**
- Synonym: prior time
- Synonym: earlier time
- Definition: time interval that is past
- Example: In any given calendar, if the reference time interval is denoted by "2012", then past time is any time interval that is before 2012.

**future time**
- Synonym: later time
- Definition: time interval that is future
Example: If the reference time interval is the calendar day of the title closing of a real estate transaction, then future time is that calendar day and any later time interval.

**current hour**
- Concept Type: unitary concept
- General Concept: current time
- Definition: the time interval that instantiates an hour of day and that is current
- Example: If the reference time interval is 10:32, then the current hour is a time interval denoted as hour of day 10.

**last hour**
- Synonym: previous hour
- Concept Type: unitary concept
- General Concept: past hour
- Definition: the time interval that instantiates an hour of day and that meets the current hour
- Example: If the reference time interval is 10:32, then the last hour is a time interval denoted as hour of day 9.

**next hour**
- Synonym: subsequent hour
- Concept Type: unitary concept
- General Concept: future hour
- Definition: the time interval that instantiates an hour of day and that is met by the current hour
- Example: If the reference time interval is 10:32, then the next hour is a time interval denoted as hour of day 11.

**past hour**
- Synonym: prior hour
- Synonym: earlier hour
- General Concept: past time
- Definition: time interval that instantiates an hour of day and that is before the current hour
- Definition: time interval that instantiates an hour of day that is past
- Example: If the reference time interval is 10:32, then one past hour is a time interval denoted as hour of day 9. Another past hour is a time interval denoted as hour of day 8.

**future hour**
- Synonym: later hour
- General Concept: future time
- Definition: time interval that instantiates an hour of day and that is after the current hour
- Definition: time interval that instantiates an hour of day that is future
- Example: If the reference time interval is 10:32, then one future hour is a time interval denoted as hour of day 11. Another future hour is a time interval denoted as hour of day 12.
**preceding hour**

- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** past time
- **Definition:** the hour period that meets a time interval that instantiates a minute of hour and that is current
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is 10:32, then the **preceding hour** is an hour period from 9:32 through 10:31.

**following hour**

- **Synonym:** upcoming hour
- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** future time
- **Definition:** the hour period that is met by a time interval that instantiates a minute of hour and that is current
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is 10:32, then the **following hour** is an hour period from 10:33 through 11:32.

**current day**

- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** current time
- **Definition:** the time interval that instantiates some calendar day and that is current
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is July 7 10:32, then the **current day** is a time interval denoted as July 7.

**last day**

- **Synonym:** previous day, earlier day
- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** past day
- **Definition:** the time interval that instantiates a calendar day and that meets the current day
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is July 7 10:32, then the **last day** is a time interval denoted as July 6.

**next day**

- **Synonym:** subsequent day
- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** future day
- **Definition:** the time interval that instantiates a calendar day and that is met by the current day
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is July 7, then the **next day** is July 8.

**past day**

- **Synonym:** prior day
- **Synonym:** earlier day
- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** past time
- **Definition:** time interval that instantiates a calendar day and that is before the current day
- **Definition:** time interval that instantiates a calendar day that is past
Example: If the reference time interval is *July 7*, then one **past day** is a *time interval* denoted by *July 6* and another is a *time interval* denoted by *July 5*.

**future day**
- Synonym: *later day*
- General Concept: *future time*
- Definition: a *time interval* that *instantiates* a calendar day and that is *after* the current day
- Definition: a *time interval* that *instantiates* a calendar day that is *future*
- Example: If the reference time interval is *July 7*, then one **future day** is a *time interval* that is denoted by *July 8*, and another **future day** is a *time interval* that is denoted by *July 9*.

**preceding day**
- Concept Type: *unitary concept*
- General Concept: *past time*
- Definition: the day period that meets a *time interval* that instantiates a minute of hour and that is current
- Example: If the reference time interval is *July 7 10:32*, then the **preceding day** is a day period from *July 6 10:32* through *July 7 10:31*.

**following day**
- Synonym: *upcoming day*
- Concept Type: *unitary concept*
- General Concept: *future time*
- Definition: the day period that is met by a *time interval* that instantiates a minute of hour and that is current
- Example: If the reference time interval is *July 7 10:32*, then the **following day** is a day period from *July 7 10:33* through *July 8 10:32*.

**current week**
- Concept Type: *unitary concept*
- General Concept: *current time*
- Definition: the *time interval* that *instantiates* some calendar week and that is current
- Example: If the reference time interval is *week 15 day 3*, then the **current week** is a *time interval* that instantiates **week 15**.

**last week**
- Synonym: *previous week*
- Concept Type: *unitary concept*
- General Concept: *past week*
- Definition: the *time interval* that *instantiates* a calendar week and that *meets* the current week
- Example: If the reference time interval is *week 15 day 3*, then the **last week** is a *time interval* that instantiates **week 14**.
**next week**

- **Synonym:** subsequent week
- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** future week
- **Definition:** the time interval that instantiates a calendar week and that is met by the current week.
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is week 15 day 3, then the next week is a time interval that instantiates week 16.

**past week**

- **Synonym:** prior week
- **Synonym:** earlier week
- **General Concept:** past time
- **Definition:** time interval that instantiates a calendar week and that precedes the current week.
- **Definition:** time interval that instantiates a calendar week that is past.
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is week 15 day 3, then one past week is a time interval that instantiates week 14, and another past week is a time interval that instantiates week 13.

**future week**

- **Synonym:** later week
- **General Concept:** future time
- **Definition:** time interval that instantiates a calendar week and that is after the current week.
- **Definition:** time interval that instantiates a calendar week that is future.
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is week 15 day 3, then one future week is a time interval that instantiates week 16 and another future week is a time interval that instantiates week 17.

**preceding week**

- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** past time
- **Definition:** the week period that meets a time interval that instantiates a minute of hour and that is current.
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is week 15 day 3, then the preceding week is a week period that is from week 14 day 3 through week 15 day 2.

**following week**

- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** future time
- **Definition:** the week period that is met by a time interval that instantiates a minute of hour and that is current.
- **Example:** If the reference time interval is week 15 day 3, then the following week is a week period that is from week 15 day 4 through week 16 day 3.

**current month**

- **Concept Type:** unitary concept
- **General Concept:** current time
- **Definition:** the time interval that instantiates some calendar month and that is current.
Example: If the reference time interval is July 7, then the current month is a time interval that instantiates July.

last month
- Synonym: previous month
- Concept Type: unitary concept
- General Concept: past month
- Definition: the time interval that instantiates a calendar month and that meets the current month
- Example: If the reference time interval is July 7, then the last month is a time interval that instantiates June.

next month
- Synonym: subsequent month
- General Concept: future month
- Concept Type: unitary concept
- Definition: the time interval that instantiates a calendar month and that is met by the current month
- Example: If the reference time interval is July 7, then the next month is a time interval that instantiates August.

past month
- Synonym: prior month
- Synonym: earlier month
- General Concept: past time
- Definition: time interval that instantiates a calendar month and that precedes the current month
- Definition: time interval that instantiates a calendar month that is past
- Example: If the reference time interval is July 7, then one past month is a time interval that instantiates June, and another past month is a time interval that instantiates May.

future month
- Synonym: later month
- General Concept: future time
- Definition: time interval that instantiates a calendar month and that is after the current month
- Definition: time interval that instantiates a calendar month that is future
- Example: If the reference time interval is July 7, then one future month is a time interval that instantiates August, and another future month is a time interval that instantiates September.

preceding month
- Concept Type: unitary concept
- General Concept: past time
- Definition: the month period that meets a time interval that instantiates a Gregorian day of year and that is current
- Necessity: The duration of the preceding month is the duration of the last month.
- Note: The previous Necessity addresses the varying duration of calendar months.
Example: If the reference time interval is **July 7**, then **preceding month** is a **month period** from **June 7 through July 6**.

Example: If the reference time interval is **June 7**, then **preceding month** is a **month period** from **May 7 through June 6**.

**following month**
- Concept Type: **unitary concept**
- General Concept: **future time**
- Definition: the **month period** that is met by a **time interval** that instantiates a **Gregorian day of year** and that **is current**
- Necessity: The **duration** of the **following month** is the **duration** of the **current month**.
- Note: The previous Necessity addresses the varying **duration** of **calendar months**.
- Example: If the reference time interval is **July 7**, then **following month** is a **month period** from **July 8 through August 7**.
- Example: If the reference time interval is **June 7**, then **following month** is a **month period** from **June 8 through July 7**.

**current year**
- Concept Type: **unitary concept**
- General Concept: **current time**
- Definition: the **time interval** that **instantiates** some **calendar year** and that **is current**
- Example: If the reference time interval is **July 11, 2011**, then the **current year** is the **time interval** that instantiates **2011**.

**last year**
- Synonym: **previous year**
- Synonym: **unitary concept**
- General Concept: **past year**
- Definition: the **time interval** that **instantiates** a **calendar year** and that **meets** the **current year**
- Example: If the reference time interval is **July 11, 2011**, then the **last year** is the **time interval** that instantiates **2010**.

**next year**
- Synonym: **subsequent year**
- Concept Type: **unitary concept**
- General Concept: **future year**
- Definition: the **time interval** that **instantiates** a **calendar year** and that **is met by** the **current year**
- Example: If the reference time interval is **July 11 2011**, then the **next year** is the **time interval** that instantiates **2010**.

**past year**
- Synonym: **prior year**
- Synonym: **earlier year**
- General Concept: **past time**
- Definition: **time interval** that **instantiates** a **calendar year** and that **precedes** the **current year**
Definition: time interval that instantiates a calendar year that is past
Example: If the reference time interval is July 11, 2011, then one past year is the time interval that instantiates 2010 and another past year is the time interval that instantiates 2009.

future year
Synonym: later year
General Concept: future time
Definition: time interval that instantiates a calendar year and that is after the current year
Definition: time interval that instantiates a calendar year that is future
Example: If the reference time interval is July 7, 2011, then one future year is the time interval denoted by 2012 and another future year is the time interval denoted by 2013.

preceding year
Concept Type: unitary concept
General Concept: past time
Definition: the year period that meets a time interval that instantiates a day of year and that is current
Necessity: The duration of the preceding year is the duration of the last year.
Note: The previous Necessity addresses the varying duration of calendar years.
Example: If the reference time interval is July 11, 2011, then the preceding year is the year period from July 11, 2010 through July 10, 2011.

following year
Synonym: upcoming year
Concept Type: unitary concept
General Concept: future time
Definition: the year period that is met by a time interval that instantiates a day of year and that is current
Necessity: The duration of the following year is the duration of the current year.
Note: The previous Necessity addresses the varying duration of calendar years.
Example: If the reference time interval is July 7, 2011, then the following year is the year period from July 8, 2011 through August 7, 2012.

year to date
Definition: the time period that starts on calendar day 1 of the current year and that ends on the current day
Example: If the reference time interval is July 7, 2011, then year to date is July 1, 2011 through July 7, 2011.
16 Situations (normative)

16.1 General

This clause provides a vocabulary for relating situations to time intervals and durations; that is, it provides the basic vocabulary for writing rules or facts about the relationship between situations, events or activities and time. This treatment is motivated by the discussion in [Parsons] and [Menzel].

This specification relies on the idea of ‘possible world’ that is introduced in SBVR and derived from [Plantinga] – a specific collection of things and relationships that could be described by a set of consistent assertions (an SBVR ‘fact model’), regardless of how that world relates to what we perceive as reality. Further, this specification uses the term ‘universe of discourse’ (or ‘world of interest’) to refer to the particular possible world that is chosen as the basis for determining what is ‘true’ or ‘actual’ with respect to a use of the ontology for reasoning and decision making. The conventional first-order logic treatment of time is: a different time is a different (possible) world. This specification treats time as an aspect of every possible world, so that any possible world can have a present, a past, and a future.

Consider the following rule that could exist in EU-Rent:

It is prohibited that a renter has possession of more than one rental car.

Rules are evaluated with respect to possible worlds, each of which has a particular current time. The prohibition is of a renter possessing more than one rental car in any possible world, that is, at any particular current time. Rationale clause 7.15 further discusses the meaning of rules with respect to time.

SBVR defines the concepts 'state of affairs' and 'state of affairs is actual' as the basis for determining the truth of propositions in terms of the facts of a universe of discourse. Sub clause 16.2 defines 'situation kind' and 'occurrence' as specializations of 'state of affairs' in order to distinguish potential situations from actual happenings, which have different relationships to time. Sub clauses 16.3 through 16.7 specify these temporal relationships. Sub clause 16.8 integrates the Date-Time Vocabulary concepts with SBVR’s 'state of affairs' and 'proposition'. Sub clause 16.9 introduces concepts that support tense and aspect as used in human languages.

16.2 Situation Kinds and Models

Figure 16.1 describes two principal concepts – situation kind, and occurrence – and the definitive relationships among them. ‘Situation kind’ and its specializations are types of events, activities and situations – the elements of process and activity models. They represent potential states of affairs that may be instantiated, perhaps many times, in the real business environment. These potential states of affairs may be planned for, budgeted for, dreamed of, feared, etc. 'Occurences' are real happenings in the business environment. Each situation kind may have multiple occurrences. For example, a business
may plan for the situation “power failure that shuts down production”, which may have multiple occurrences. These concepts are parallel to the BPMN ideas of an activity/event model element (situation kind) and an activity/event instance (occurrence).

'Situation kind' is further specialized as 'general situation kind' (a situation kind that may have multiple occurrences) and 'individual situation kind' (a situation kind that has most one occurrence). Typically, individual situation kinds refine general situation kinds by adding distinguishing characteristics. For example, the “power failure that shut down production on Friday” refers to an individual situation kind that refines the general situation kind “power failure that shuts down production”. Ordinary English usage blurs the distinction between an individual situation kind and its occurrence. The Date-Time Vocabulary supports that typical usage by providing verb concepts that access the time of the single occurrence of an individual situation kind.

![Figure 16.1 - Situation Kinds and Occurrences](image)

**situation kind**

**Synonymous Form:** occurrence kind

**Definition:** state of affairs that may or may not happen in some possible world

**Note:** A situation kind may be seen as a type of situation, event or activity that may occur, perhaps more than once, or as a potential state of affairs that may be planned for, budgeted for, feared, dreamed about, etc.

**Example:** Building codes often require special accommodations for building fires, understood as a situation kind. Some buildings may have one or more fires, others may never have a fire, but the requirements are not specific to individual fires.

**Necessity:** Each situation kind is either a general situation kind or an individual situation kind.

**occurrence**

**Definition:** state of affairs that is a happening in the universe of discourse

**Note:** An occurrence is an actual situation at some place and time in the possible world chosen for the universe of discourse.

**Note:** This is a primitive concept.
Example: An occurrence of 'fire' can burn you.

Example: If a possible world includes all of December 2010, the physical flight of an aircraft from Washington to Minneapolis on December 20, 2010 from 7:00 to 9:00 EST is an occurrence in that world. In a possible world that is described by a fact model that includes flights, the flight of the aircraft exists. Any statement about all flights includes the particular flight. It occurs within December 2010 and within December 20, 2010, but it occurs for only the specified 2-hour time interval. It occurs throughout every time interval that is within that 2-hour time interval.

**occurrence exemplifies situation kind**

Synonymous Form: situation kind has occurrence

Definition: the occurrence is a realization of the situation kind

Note: This is a primitive concept.

Possibility: Each occurrence exemplifies zero or more situation kinds.

Possibility: Each situation kind has zero or more occurrences.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (s occ) (if ("situation kind has occurrence" s occ) (and ("situation kind" s) (occurrence occ))))

Example: The proposition "EU-Rent rents car 123 to customer abc" corresponds to a situation kind that may have an occurrence.

**individual situation kind**

Definition: situation kind that has at most one occurrence in each possible world

Necessity: Each individual situation kind has at most one occurrence.

Example: The situation kind that is described by the proposition "EU-Rent was incorporated on January 1, 2003" is an individual situation kind because it has just one occurrence.

Note: The distinction between an individual situation kind and its occurrence is often blurred in ordinary English.

**general situation kind**

Definition: situation kind that is not an individual situation kind

Note: This concept is defined in contrast to 'individual situation kind' not because there is any characteristic that distinguishes general situation kind from situation kind.

Note: A situation kind is a general situation kind if it can be exemplified by more than one occurrence in some possible world, even when it cannot have more than one occurrence in the possible world chosen to be the universe of discourse.

Possibility: Each general situation kind has more than one occurrence.

Example: The situation kind that is described by "EU-Rent rents a car to a customer" is a general situation kind if and only if there are multiple occurrences described by this situation kind.

**refinement**

Definition: situation kind that has no occurrence that does not exemplify a given situation kind

Concept Type: role

**refinement refines situation kind**

Synonymous Form: situation kind has refinement
Definition: Each occurrence of the refinement exemplifies the situation kind.

Example: The individual situation kind described by "flight 123 from Washington to Minneapolis on December 20, 2010 arrives at 2pm" refines the general situation kind described by "flight from Washington to Minneapolis arrives at 2pm."

Note: The refines fact type defines a partial ordering relationship among situation kinds that is analogous to the specialization/subtype relationship among concepts.

generalization
Definition: situation kind that is exemplified by each occurrence of a given situation kind
Concept Type: role

situation kind has generalization
Definition: Each occurrence of the situation kind exemplifies the generalization
Note: This is the inverse relationship to situation kind has 'refinement'.

16.3 Occurrences and Time

An occurrence is an actual happening in the world of interest. This sub clause provides a vocabulary for relating occurrences to time intervals and durations.
Figure 16.2 - Occurrences and Time
**occurrence occurs throughout time interval**

Synonymous Form: occurrence throughout time interval

Definition: the occurrence happens continuously, without interruption, in each time interval that is part of the time interval.

Note: This is a "primitive concept" – the fundamental relationship between occurrences and time. It cannot be defined in terms of other concepts. The idea is that an occurrence occurs at all times in some sufficiently small time interval.

Possibility: The occurrence may occur throughout some time interval that is not part of the time interval.

Note: That is, the occurrence could occur throughout a longer time interval that includes other time intervals.

CLIF Axiom:

(forall (occ ti)
  (iff ("occurrence occurs throughout time interval" occ ti)
    (and (occurrence occ) ("time interval" ti)) )))

OCL Constraint: context occurrence

inv: _'time interval'->allInstances(occ t | self._'occurrence occurs throughout time interval'(occ t))

Example: The occurrence of "Barack Obama is President of the U.S." occurred throughout March, 2009.

**occurrence occurs within time interval**

Synonymous Form: occurrence within time interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence in time interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence occurs at time interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence at time interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence during time interval

Synonymous Form: time interval covers occurrence

Definition: the occurrence occurs throughout some time interval that is part of the time interval.

CLIF Definition:

(forall (occ t1)
  (iff ("occurrence occurs within time interval" occ t1)
    (and (occurrence occ) ("time interval" t1)
      (exists (t2)
        (and ("time interval1 is part of time interval2" t2 t1)
          ("occurrence occurs throughout time interval" occ t2))))))

OCL Definition: context occurrence

def: _'occurrence occurs within time interval' (t: _'time interval') : Boolean =
  t._'part of'->exists(t2) |
  self._'occurrence occurs throughout time interval'(t2)

Example: The occurrence "William the Conqueror defeats Harold Godwineson in battle" occurs within the time interval that has the time coordinate "14 October 1066".
**occurrence interval**

Concept Type: role

General Concept: time interval

Definition: the time interval that a given occurrence occurs for, i.e., the time span from the start of the occurrence to the end of the occurrence.

**occurrence occurs for occurrence interval**

Synonymous Form: occurrence occurs over occurrence interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence for occurrence interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence over occurrence interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence has occurrence interval

Definition: the occurrence occurs throughout the occurrence interval and the occurrence does not occur within some time interval, that meets the occurrence interval and the occurrence does not occur within some time interval, that is met by the occurrence interval.

CLIF Definition: (forall (occ t1)
   (iff ("occurrence occurs for occurrence interval" occ t1)
       (and
       ("occurrence occurs throughout time interval" occ t1)
       (exists (t2 t3)
       (and
       ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t2 t1)
       (not ("occurrence occurs within time interval" occ t2))
       ("time interval1 meets time interval2" t1 t3)
       (not ("occurrence occurs within time interval" occ t3))
       )))

OCL Definition: context _'occurrence' def: _'occurrence occurs for time interval' (t: _'time interval') : Boolean =
   self._'occurrence occurs throughout time interval' (t)
   and self._'is met by'->forall(t2 |
       not self._'occurrence occurs throughout time interval'(t2))
   and self._'meets'->forall(t3 |
       not self._'occurrence occurs throughout time interval'(t3))

Note: The occurrence interval is the maximal time interval in which the individual occurrence occurs. The occurrence interval is immediately preceded and followed by time intervals when the occurrence does not happen.

Necessity: Each occurrence occurs for exactly one occurrence interval.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (occ) (exists (t)
   (and
   ("occurrence occurs for occurrence interval" occ t)
   (forall (t2)
   (if (occurrence occurs for occurrence interval" occ t2)
       (= t2 t))
   )))

Possibility: Zero or more occurrences that exemplify a given general situation kind occur for a given occurrence interval.
Example: The occurrence that is a specific flight of a specific aircraft occurs for the occurrence interval from the airplane’s takeoff to the airplane’s landing.

Note: No occurrence "recurs". An occurrence is an individual event; a "recurrence" is a different event, being distinguished by occurring for different time interval. What "recurs" is the common situation kind.

Note: A former occurrence is an occurrence that occurs over some occurrence interval that is in the past. A planned occurrence is usually an occurrence that occurs over some future occurrence interval. A goal is a situation kind that may have an occurrence at some future time.

Note: The occurrence interval is an essential intrinsic property of an occurrence, but it may not be known or specified, and it may not be relevant to every business model. For some uses, it may only be important that an occurrence happens within some time period, or that the situation kind occurs throughout some time period.

**occurrence lasts for duration**

Synonymous Form: duration of occurrence

Definition: the occurrence occurs for some occurrence interval and the duration is the duration of the occurrence interval

CLIF Definition: (forall (occ d) (iff ("occurrence lasts for duration" occ d) (and (occurrence occ) (duration d) (exists (t) (and ("occurrence occurs for time interval" occ t) ("time interval has duration" t d))))))

OCL Definition: context _'occurrence'_ def: _'occurrence lasts for duration'(d: duration): Boolean = self._'occurrence occurs for time interval'.duration = d

Example: The duration of yesterday’s meeting was 2 hours.

The following fact types are used primarily to enable us to talk about the beginning and end of occurrences in time.

**occurrence occurs before time interval**

Synonymous Form: occurrence ends before time interval

Definition: the occurrence interval of the occurrence is before the time interval

CLIF Definition: (forall (occ ti) (iff ("occurrence occurs before time interval" occ ti) (and (occurrence occ) ("time interval" ti) ("time interval is before time interval" ("occurrence interval" occ ti) ))))

OCL Definition: context occurrence def: _'occurs before time interval'(t: time interval): Boolean = self._'occurrence interval'_._'is before'(t)
occurrence occurs after time interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence starts after time interval

Definition: the occurrence interval of the occurrence is after the time interval

CLIF Definition: (forall (occ ti) (iff ("occurrence occurs after time interval" occ ti) (and (occurrence occ) ("time interval" ti) ("time interval is before time interval" ti ("occurrence interval" occ)) )))

OCL Definition: context occurrence def: _'occurs after time interval'(t: time interval): Boolean = t._'is before'(self._'occurrence interval')

occurrence starts at time interval

Definition: the time interval starts the occurrence interval of the occurrence or the occurrence interval of the occurrence starts the time interval or the occurrence interval of the occurrence equals the time interval

Note: ‘Starts’ is the Allen relation (sub clause 8.2.3) between time intervals.

Note: The idea here is that the time intervals start together, but we know nothing about when they finish.

occurrence starts before time interval

Definition: the occurrence interval of the occurrence precedes the time interval or the occurrence interval of the occurrence properly overlaps the time interval

Note: ‘Properly overlaps’ is the Allen relation (sub clause 8.2.3) between time intervals.

occurrence ends at time interval

Definition: the time interval finishes the occurrence interval of the occurrence or the occurrence interval of the occurrence finishes the time interval or the occurrence interval of the occurrence equals the time interval

Note: ‘Finishes’ is the Allen relation (see 8.2.3) between time intervals.

Note: The idea here is that the time intervals finish together, but we know nothing about when they started. For example: "We should have a decision on the XYZ matter about the time that the contract review completes" means that the time interval at which the decision occurs will finish jointly with the contract review, irrespective of the times they started.

occurrence ends after time interval

Definition: the occurrence interval of the occurrence follows the time interval or the occurrence interval of the occurrence is properly overlapped by the time interval.

Note: ‘Is properly overlapped by’ is the Allen relation (see 8.2.3) between time intervals.

occurrence occurs duration before time interval

Synonymous Form: occurrence ends duration before time interval

Synonymous Form: time interval is duration after occurrence

Synonymous Form: time interval starts duration after occurrence

Definition: the occurrence interval of the occurrence is duration before the time interval.
Description: The end of the occurrence is duration before the time interval.

**occurrence occurs duration after time interval**

Synonymous Form: occurrence starts duration after time interval
Synonymous Form: time interval is duration before occurrence
Synonymous Form: time interval ends duration before occurrence
Definition: the occurrence interval of the occurrence is duration after the time interval
Description: The start of the occurrence is duration after the time interval.

**time interval starts duration before occurrence**

Definition: time interval starts the duration before the occurrence interval of the occurrence
Description: The start of the time interval is duration before the occurrence.
Note: This says nothing about the relationship between the occurrence and the end of the time interval.

**time interval ends duration after occurrence**

Definition: time interval ends the duration after the occurrence interval of the occurrence
Description: The end of the time interval is duration after the occurrence.
Note: This says nothing about the relationship between the occurrence and the start of the time interval.

**occurrence starts during time interval**

Synonymous Form: occurrence starts within time interval
Definition: the occurrence interval of the occurrence starts during the time interval
Description: The occurrence begins sometime within the time interval.

CLIF Definition: (forall (occ ti)
  (iff ("occurrence starts during time interval" occ ti)
  (exists (ti2)
    (and
      ("occurrence occurs for occurrence interval" occ ti2)
      ("time interval1 starts during time interval2" ti2 ti2 ti))))

OCL Definition: context occurrence
  def: _\'starts during\'(t2: _\'time interval\'): Boolean =
    self._\'occurrence interval\'.\'starts during\'(t2)

Example: The report must include all contracts undertaken during the reporting period.

**occurrence ends during time interval**

Synonymous Form: occurrence ends within time interval
Definition: the occurrence interval of the occurrence ends during the time interval
Description: The occurrence ends sometime within the time interval.

CLIF Definition: (forall (occ ti)
  (iff ("occurrence ends during time interval" occ ti)
  (exists (ti2)
    (and
      ("time interval1 ends during time interval2" ti2 ti2 ti))))
("occurrence occurs for occurrence interval" occ ti2)
("time interval1 ends during time interval2" ti2 ti ))))

OCL Definition: 'context occurrence'
def: _'ends during'(t2: _'time interval'): Boolean =
    self._'occurrence interval'._'ends during'(t2)

Example: The building will be completed within 2015.

16.4 Temporal Ordering of Occurrences

Business processes and many rules constrain the time order of activities and events without specifying the actual times. And in general, these rules refer to activities and events as situation kinds. But only individual occurrences can occur in temporal order. So, in fact, only occurrences are ordered. The following verb concepts facilitate careful specification of such usages.
occurrence1 precedes occurrence2
occurrence1 starts before occurrence2
occurrence1 ends before occurrence2
occurrence1 overlaps occurrence2

occurrence1
0..* occurrence1
occurrence2
0..* occurrence2

+ends before time interval( ti : time interval ) : Boolean
+precedes( occ : occurrence ) : Boolean
+follows( occ : occurrence ) : Boolean
+starts before( occ : occurrence ) : Boolean
+overlaps( occ : occurrence ) : Boolean
+is between( occ2 : occurrence, occ3 : occurrence ) : Boolean
+starts duration before( d : duration, occ : occurrence ) : Boolean
+ends duration after( d : duration, occ : occurrence ) : Boolean
+is duration before( d : duration, occ : occurrence ) : Boolean

occurrence1 is between occurrence2 and occurrence3

occurrence1 is duration before occurrence2
+duration : duration [1]

occurrence1 starts duration before occurrence2
+duration : duration [1]

occurrence1 ends duration after occurrence2
+duration : duration [1]

Figure 16.3 - Temporal Ordering of Occurrences

occurrence, precedes occurrence

Synonymous Form: occurrence2 follows occurrence1
Definition: the occurrence interval of occurrence1 precedes the occurrence interval of occurrence2
**occurrence1 starts before occurrence2**

**Synonymous Form:** occurrence2 starts after occurrence1

**Definition:** the occurrence interval of occurrence1 starts before the occurrence interval of occurrence2

**CLIF Definition:**
(forall (o1 o2)
 (iff("occurrence1 starts before occurrence2" o1 o2)
  (and
   (occurrence o1)  (occurrence o2)
   (forall (t1 t2)
    (if
     (and
      ("occurrence occurs for time interval" o1 t1)
      ("occurrence occurs for time interval" o2 t2))
     ("time interval1 starts before time interval2" t1 t2)))))

do: occurrence1 starts before occurrence2' o2: occurrence') : Boolean =
  self.occursسارت o2.occurs SARت

**Necessity:** If some occurrence1 precedes some occurrence2, and if the occurrence2 precedes some occurrence3, then occurrence1 precedes occurrence3.

**CLIF Axiom:**
(forall (o1 o2 o3)
 (if (and
   ("occurrence1 starts before occurrence2" o1 o2)
   ("occurrence1 starts before occurrence2" o2 o3))
   ("occurrence1 starts before occurrence2" o1 o3)))

**OCL Constraint:**
do: occurrence1 starts before occurrence2' o2: occurrence') : Boolean =
  self.occurs SARت o2.occurs SARت

**Note:** This verb concept permits comparing the starting times of two occurrences.

**Example:** On each airplane flight, the airplane takes off before the airplane lands.
Example: The procession must not start before the band plays.

**occurrence**, **ends before** **occurrence**

**Synonymous Form:** **occurrence**<sub>2</sub> **ends after** **occurrence**<sub>1</sub>

**Definition:** the **occurrence interval** of **occurrence**<sub>1</sub> **ends before** the **occurrence interval** of **occurrence**<sub>2</sub>

**CLIF Definition:**
```
(forall (o1 o2)
  (iff ("occurrence1 ends before occurrence2" o1 o2)
    (and
      (occurrence o1) (occurrence o2)
      (forall (t1 t2)
        (if
          (and
            ("occurrence occurs for time interval" o1 t1)
            ("occurrence occurs for time interval" o2 t2))
          ("time interval1 ends before time interval2" t1 t2))))
  )))
```

**OCL Definition:**
```
context _'occurrence'
def: _'occurrence1 ends before occurrence2'(o2: _'occurrence') : Boolean =
  self._'occurs for'._time interval ends before time interval'(o2._'occurs for')
```

**Note:** This verb concept permits comparing the ending times of two occurrences (without regard to their start times).

**Example:** The delivery must be completed before the contract expires.

**occurrence**, **overlaps** **occurrence**

**Synonymous Form:** **occurrence**<sub>1</sub> **while** **occurrence**<sub>2</sub>

**Synonymous Form:** **occurrence**<sub>1</sub> **occurs while** **occurrence**<sub>2</sub>

**Definition:** the **occurrence interval** of **occurrence**<sub>1</sub> **overlaps** the **occurrence interval** of **occurrence**<sub>2</sub>

**CLIF Definition:**
```
(forall (o1 o2)
  (if ("o1 overlaps o2")
    (and
      (occurrence o1)
      (occurrence o2)
      (forall ((t1 "time interval")
        (t2 "time interval")
        (if (and
          ("occurrence occurs for time interval" o1 t1)
          ("occurrence occurs for time interval" o2 t2))
        ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" t1 t2))))
  )))
```

**OCL Definition:**
```
context _'occurrence'
def: _'occurrence1 overlaps occurrence2'(o2: _'occurrence') : Boolean =
  self._'occurs for'._overlaps(o2._'occurs for')
```

**occurrence**, **is between** **occurrence**<sub>2</sub> and **occurrence**<sub>3</sub>

**Synonymous Form:** **occurrence**<sub>1</sub> **between** **occurrence**<sub>2</sub> and **occurrence**<sub>3</sub>
Synonymous Form: \( \text{occurrence}_1 \) \text{occurs between} \( \text{occurrence}_2 \) and \( \text{occurrence}_3 \)

Synonymous Form: \( \text{occurrence}_1 \) \text{between} \( \text{occurrence}_2 \) to \( \text{occurrence}_3 \)

Definition: \( \text{occurrence}_1 \) \text{follows} \( \text{occurrence}_2 \) and \( \text{occurrence}_1 \) \text{precedes} \( \text{occurrence}_3 \)

CLIF Definition: (forall (o1 o2 o3)

\[(\text{iff} \left( \text{"occurrence1 is between occurrence2 and occurrence3"} \right)
\quad (\text{and}
\quad \left(\text{"occurrence precedes occurrence"} \ o2 \ o1\right)
\quad \left(\text{"occurrence precedes occurrence"} \ o1 \ o3\right)\right))\]

Example: The ship "Mauretania" crossed the equator \text{between} the ship leaving Hawaii \text{and} the ship arriving in Sydney.

\text{occurrence}_1 \text{ is duration after} \text{occurrence}_2

Synonymous Form: \( \text{occurrence}_1 \) \text{starts duration after} \( \text{occurrence}_2 \)

Synonymous Form: \( \text{occurrence}_2 \) \text{is duration before} \( \text{occurrence}_1 \)

Synonymous Form: \( \text{occurrence}_2 \) \text{ends duration before} \( \text{occurrence}_1 \)

Definition: the occurrence interval of \( \text{occurrence}_1 \) \text{is duration after} the occurrence interval of \( \text{occurrence}_2 \)

Description: The time between the two occurrences is the given duration.

\text{occurrence}_1 \text{ starts duration before} \text{occurrence}_2

Definition: the occurrence interval of \( \text{occurrence}_1 \) \text{starts duration before} the occurrence interval of \( \text{occurrence}_2 \)

Description: One occurrence starts duration before the other occurrence starts.

Note: This says nothing about the relationship between occurrence\(_2\) and the end of occurrence\(_1\).

\text{occurrence}_1 \text{ ends duration after} \text{occurrence}_2

Definition: the occurrence interval of \( \text{occurrence}_1 \) \text{ends duration after} the occurrence interval of \( \text{occurrence}_2 \)

Description: One occurrence ends duration after the other occurrence ends.

Note: This says nothing about the relationship between occurrence\(_2\) and the start of occurrence\(_1\).

16.5 Situation Kinds and Time

This sub clause provides the basic vocabulary for writing rules or facts about the relationship between situation Kinds and time.

Business processes and many rules constrain the timing of activities and events. In general, these rules refer to activities and events using situation kinds. A process specification assumes that what is being described is the sequencing of occurrences in an individual instance of the process. That is, the individual occurrences are described by the nature of the happening (the situation kind) and whatever information identifies the process instance. The fundamental notion here is that a situation kind ‘occurs’ at any time it is exemplified by an actual occurrence in the world of interest, as discussed in 16.3.
**situation kind occurs throughout time interval**

Synonymous Form: 

- situation kind throughout time interval

Definition: 

- some occurrence of the situation kind occurs throughout the time interval

Possibility: 

- A situation kind may occur throughout no time interval.

**situation kind occurs within time interval**

Synonymous Form: 

- situation kind within time interval

Synonymous Form: 

- situation kind in time interval

Synonymous Form: 

- situation kind at time interval

Synonymous Form: 

- situation kind during time interval

Definition: 

- some occurrence of the situation kind occurs within the time interval

Example: 

- The situation kind "soldiers are engaged in battle" occurred within the time interval that has the time coordinate "14 October 1066".

Example: 

- "Flight 70 landed in Minneapolis at 9:12 on May 13, 2011".

**situation kind occurs for time interval**

Definition: 

- some occurrence of the situation kind occurs for the time interval

Necessity: 

- Each individual situation kind occurs for at most one time interval.

Possibility: 

- A general situation kind occurs for more than one time interval.

Note: 

- For an individual situation kind, the time interval is unique. For a general situation kind, the model and the time interval may uniquely identify an occurrence.

**time span**

General Concept: 

- time interval

Concept Type: 

- role
situation kind has time span

Definition: The occurrence interval of each occurrence of situation kind is part of time span and no time interval that is part of time span is before the occurrence interval of each occurrence of situation kind and no time interval that is part of time span is after the occurrence interval of each occurrence of situation kind.

Description: The time span is the smallest time interval that contains the occurrence intervals of all the occurrences in a given situation kind.

Note: A general situation kind may specify a constraint on the time interval of all of its occurrences, by stating the time span for the general situation kind, or stating a constraint on it. Individual situation kinds that refine the general situation kind each resolve the time down to a particular occurrence interval that must be within the time span.

Example: "The meetings will be weekly for the next three months" describes a general situation kind whose time span is the specified time interval of the next three months. There can be a schedule of these meetings, giving the particular time for each meeting, which is an individual situation kind.

Example: The time span of all the discount offers (a general situation kind) is within July 2011. A particular discount (an individual situation kind) offer occurs for July 13 from 2-3pm.

Example: The proposition "the meetings are scheduled for each Monday of July 2011" describes a general situation kind whose time span is within the time interval "July 2011". If the individual meetings are held, then they occur within the Mondays of July 2011.

individual situation kind has occurrence interval

Definition: The occurrence interval is the time span of the individual situation kind.

Necessity: Each individual situation kind has at most one occurrence interval.

Note: The time span of an individual situation kind is exactly the occurrence interval of its only occurrence.

Example: The occurrence interval of the Great Fire of London was 2 September 1666 through 5 September 1666 (English old style calendar).
Figure 16.5 - First and last occurrences of situation kinds

**first occurrence**
- General Concept: occurrence
- Concept Type: role

**situation kind has first occurrence after time interval**
- Synonymous Form: first occurrence of situation kind after time interval
- Definition: the first occurrence exemplifies the situation kind and the first occurrence occurs after the time interval and no occurrence that exemplifies the situation kind and that occurs after the time interval starts before the first occurrence
- CLIF Definition: (forall (sk fo ti) (iff ('situation kind has first occurrence after time interval' sk fo ti) (and ('occurrence exemplifies situation kind' fo sk) ('occurrence occurs after time interval' fo ti)))

+situation kind +situation kind1
  +first occurrence after time interval( ti : time interval ) : occurrence
  +has last occurrence before time interval( occ : occurrence, ti : time interval ) : Boolean
  +has first occurrence after time interval( occ : occurrence, ti : time interval ) : Boolean
  +last occurrence before time interval( ti : time interval ) : occurrence

situation kind

+first occurrence
+first occurrence
+first occurrence

«verb concept role»

situation kind has first occurrence

occurrence

«verb concept role»

occurrence occurs for time interval

time interval

(Time Infrastructure)

«verb concept role»

situation kind has last occurrence before time interval

«verb concept»

situation kind has first occurrence after time interval

...
situation kind has first occurrence

Definition: the first occurrence exemplifies the situation kind and no occurrence that exemplifies the situation kind starts before the first occurrence.

CLIF Definition: (forall (sk fo) (iff 'situation kind has first occurrence' sk fo)
(a)
('occurrence exemplifies situation kind' fo sk)
(not (exists (occ) (and 'occurrence exemplifies situation kind' occ sk)
('occurrence1 starts before occurrence2' occ fo)
))))

OCL Definition: context _'situation kind'
def: _'has first occurrence after time interval'(ti: _'time interval'): occurrence = occurrence->allInstances(fo | fo.exemplifies(sk) and fo._'occurs after'(ti) and
not occurrence->allInstances(exists occ | occ.exemplifies(sk) and occ._'occurs after'(ti) and occ._'starts before'(fo)))

Example: The first occurrence of the situation kind 'landing of a human on the moon' had the occurrence interval 20 July 1969 through 21 July 1969.

situation kind has last occurrence

General Concept: occurrence
Concept Type: role

Definition: the last occurrence exemplifies the situation kind and no occurrence that exemplifies the situation kind ends after the last occurrence.

CLIF Definition: (forall (sk fo) (iff 'situation kind has last occurrence' sk lo)
(a)
('occurrence exemplifies situation kind' lo sk)
(not (exists (occ) (and 'occurrence exemplifies situation kind' occ sk)
('occurrence1 ends before occurrence2' occ lo)
))))

OCL Definition: context _'situation kind'
def: self._'last occurrence': occurrence) = occurrence->allInstances(fo | fo.exemplifies(sk) and
not occurrence->allInstances(exists occ | occ._'starts before'(fo)))

Example: The last occurrence of the situation kind 'landing of a human on the moon' was 21 July 1969.
occurrence->allInstances(lo |
lo.exemplifies(sk) and
not occurrence->allInstances(exists occ | lo._'ends before'(occ)))

**situation kind has last occurrence before time interval**

**Synonymous Form:**

*last occurrence of situation kind before time interval*

**Definition:**

the last occurrence exemplifies the situation kind and the last occurrence occurs before the time interval and no occurrence that exemplifies the situation kind and that occurs before the time interval ends after the last occurrence

**CLIF Definition:**

(forall (sk lo ti) (iff
  (situation kind has last occurrence before time interval' sk lo ti)
  (and
    (occurrence exemplifies situation kind' lo sk)
    (occurrence occurs before time interval' lo ti)
    (not (exists (occ) (and
      (occurrence exemplifies situation kind' occ sk)
      (occurrence occurs before time interval' occ ti)
      (occurrence1 ends before occurrence2' lo occ)
      )))
  )))

**OCL Definition:**

context _'situation kind'

def: _'has last occurrence before time interval'(ti: _'time interval'): occurrence =
  occurrence->allInstances(lo |
  lo.exemplifies(sk) and lo._'occurs before'(ti) and
  not occurrence->allInstances(exists occ |
  occ.exemplifies(sk) and occ._'occurs before'(ti)
  and lo._'ends before'(occ)))

**Example:**

The last occurrence of the situation kind 'landing of a human on the moon' before December 2012 occurred over the time interval 21 April 1972 through 24 April 1972.

### 16.6 Temporal Ordering of Situation Kinds

Business processes and many rules constrain the time order of activities and events without specifying the actual times. And in general, these rules refer to activities and events as situation kinds. Only individual occurrences actually have temporal ordering, but assigning such an ordering to the situation kinds themselves constrains the ordering of the actual occurrences. The following verb concepts facilitate careful specification of such usages.
situation kind1 precedes situation kind2

Situation kind1 starts before situation kind2
Situation kind1 ends before situation kind2
Situation kind1 overlaps situation kind2

Figure 16.6 - Temporal Ordering of Situation Kinds

situation kind, precedes situation kind

Synonymous Form: situation kind follows situation kind

Definition: each occurrence of situation kind, precedes each occurrence of situation kind

CLIF Definition: (forall (s1 s2)
(forall (o1 o2)
(if
("situation kind1 has occurrence" s1 o1)
("situation kind2 has occurrence" s2 o2))
("occurrence1 precedes occurrence2" o1 o2))))

OCL Definition: context _'situation kind'
def: _'situation kind1 precedes situation kind2' (s2: _'situation kind') : Boolean =
self._'occurrence'.precedes(s2._'occurrence')

Note: This verb concept permits comparing the time order of two situation kinds. This is most useful in comparing individual situation kinds, but it has broader use.

Example: On each airplane flight, the airplane takes off before the airplane lands. (This compares two individual situation kinds.)
Example: The bank failures of the Great Depression (a general situation kind) preceded World War II (an individual situation kind).

**situation kind**, \textit{starts before situation kind}\

Synonymous Form: \textit{situation kind, starts after situation kind}\

Definition: each \textit{occurrence of situation kind}, \textit{starts before} each \textit{occurrence of situation kind}\

CLIF Definition: 
\[
(\forall (s_1 \ s_2) 
  \begin{align*}
    & (\text{iff} \ (\text{"situation kind1 starts before situation kind2"} \ s_1 \ s_2) \\
    & \quad \text{(and)} \\
    & \quad \text{"situation kind"} \ s_1 \ (\text{"situation kind"} \ s_2) \\
    & \quad (\forall (o_1 \ o_2) \\
    & \quad \begin{align*}
      & (\text{if}) \\
      & \quad \text{"situation kind has occurrence"} \ s_1 \ o_1 \\
      & \quad \text{"situation kind has occurrence"} \ s_2 \ o_2) \\
      & \quad (\text{"occurrence1 starts before occurrence2"} \ o_1 \ o_2)) \\
  \end{align*}
  \end{align*}
\)
\]

OCL Definition: 
\[
\text{context \ '_situation kind'} \\
\text{def: \ '_situation kind1 starts before situation kind2'(s2: \ '_situation kind') : Boolean = } \\
\text{self.occurrence.\ '_starts before'(s2.occurrence)}
\]

Note: This verb concept permits comparing the starting times of two \textit{situation kinds}. This is primarily used for \textit{individual situation kinds}.

Example: The procession must not start before the band plays.

**situation kind**, \textit{ends before situation kind}\

Synonymous Form: \textit{situation kind, ends after situation kind}\

Definition: each \textit{occurrence of situation kind}, \textit{ends before} each \textit{occurrence of situation kind} (without regard to their start times)\

CLIF Definition: 
\[
(\forall (s_1 \ s_2) 
  \begin{align*}
    & (\text{iff} \ (\text{"situation kind1 ends before situation kind2"} \ s_1 \ s_2) \\
    & \quad \text{(and)} \\
    & \quad \text{"situation kind"} \ s_1 \ (\text{"situation kind"} \ s_2) \\
    & \quad (\forall (o_1 \ o_2) \\
    & \quad \begin{align*}
      & (\text{if}) \\
      & \quad \text{"situation kind has occurrence"} \ s_1 \ o_1 \\
      & \quad \text{"situation kind has occurrence"} \ s_2 \ o_2) \\
      & \quad (\text{"occurrence1 ends before occurrence2"} \ o_1 \ o_2)) \\
  \end{align*}
  \end{align*}
\)
\]

OCL Definition: 
\[
\text{context \ '_situation kind'} \\
\text{def: \ '_situation kind1 ends before situation kind2'(s2: \ '_situation kind') : Boolean = } \\
\text{self.occurrence.\ '_ends before'(s2.occurrence)}
\]

Note: This verb concept permits comparing the ending times of two \textit{situation kinds}. This is primarily used for \textit{individual situation kinds}.

Example: The delivery must be completed before the contract expires.
**situation kind₁ overlaps situation kind₂**

Synonymous Form: situation kind₁ while situation kind₂

Synonymous Form: situation kind₁ occurs while situation kind₂

Definition: each occurrence of situation kind₁ overlaps some occurrence of situation kind₂

CLIF Definition:

```
(forall (s1 s2)
    (iff ("situation kind1 overlaps situation kind2" s1 s2)
        (and
            ("situation kind" s1)
            ("situation kind" s2)
            (forall (o1 o2)
                (and
                    (occurrence o1)
                    (occurrence o2)
                    (if (and
                        ("situation kind has occurrence" s1 o1)
                        ("situation kind has occurrence" s2 o2))
                        ("occurrence1 overlaps occurrence2" o1 o2)))))))
```

OCL Definition: context _'situation kind'

def: _'situation kind1 overlaps situation kind2' (s2: _'situation kind') : Boolean =
    self._'occurrence'.overlaps(s2._'occurrence')

**situation kind₁ is between situation kind₂ and situation kind₃**

Synonymous Form: situation kind₁ between situation kind₂ and situation kind₃

Synonymous Form: situation kind₁ is between situation kind₂ to situation kind₃

Synonymous Form: situation kind₁ between situation kind₂ to situation kind₃

Definition: situation kind₁ follows situation kind₂ and situation kind₁ precedes situation kind₃

Note: This verb concept permits comparing the time order of three situation kinds. This is most useful in ordering individual situation kinds, but it has broader use.

Example: When heading south, one crosses the equator between leaving Hawaii and arriving in Sydney.

### 16.7 Specification of Time Intervals Using Situations

This subclause defines concepts related to the use of occurrences and individual situation kinds to specify time intervals.
16.7.1 Specifying time intervals using occurrences

Figure 16.7 - Time intervals specified by occurrences
**time interval**₁ through **occurrence** specifies **time interval**₂

Synonymous Form:  
- **time interval**₁, through **occurrence**
- **time interval**₂ is **time interval**₁, through **occurrence**
- **occurrence** through **time interval**₁ specifies **time interval**₂
- **time interval**₂ through **time interval**₁
- **time interval**₂ is **occurrence** through **time interval**₁

Definition:  
the **time interval**₂ is the **time interval**₁ plus the **occurrence** interval of the **occurrence**

Description:  
The **time interval** extends from the start of **time interval**₁ through the end of the **occurrence**.

Note:  
The definition is correct for both the '**time interval**₁ through **occurrence**' and '**occurrence** through **time interval**₁' forms.

Example:  
The contract signing through 2012.

**occurrence**₁ through **occurrence**₂ specifies **time interval**

Synonymous Form:  
- **occurrence**₁ through **occurrence**₂
- **time interval** is **occurrence**₁ through **occurrence**₂

Definition:  
the **time interval** is the **occurrence** interval of the **occurrence**₁ plus the **occurrence** interval of the **occurrence**₂

Description:  
The **time interval** extends from the start of **occurrence**₁ through the end of **occurrence**₂.

Example:  
The contract signing through the termination of the contract.

**time interval**₁ to **occurrence** specifies **time interval**₂

Synonymous Form:  
- **time interval**₁ to **occurrence**
- **time interval**₂ is **time interval**₁ to **occurrence**
- **time interval**₁ until **occurrence** specifies **time interval**₂
- **time interval**₁ until **occurrence**
- **time interval**₂ is **time interval**₁ until **occurrence**

Definition:  
the **time interval**₂ is the **time interval**₁ to the **occurrence** interval of the **occurrence**

Description:  
**Time interval**₂ extends from the start of **time interval**₁ up to, but not including, the start of the **occurrence**.

Example:  
Primordiality to the inauguration of the President.

**occurrence** to **time interval**₁ specifies **time interval**₂

Synonymous Form:  
- **occurrence** to **time interval**₁
- **occurrence** to **time interval**₁ is **time interval**₂
- **occurrence** until **time interval**₁ specifies **time interval**₂
- **occurrence** until **time interval**₁
- **occurrence** until **time interval**₁ is **time interval**₂

Definition:  
the **time interval**₂ is the **occurrence** interval of the **occurrence** to the **time interval**₁
Description: \textit{Time interval}$_2$ extends from the start of the \textit{occurrence} up to, but not including, the start of the \textit{time interval}$_1$.

Example: The rise of the human species to \textit{perpetuity}.

\textbf{occurrence}_1 \textit{to} \textbf{occurrence}_2 \textit{specifies} \textbf{time interval}

Synonymous Form: \textit{occurrence}_1 \textit{to} \textit{occurrence}_2

Synonymous Form: \textit{time interval} is \textit{occurrence}_1 \textit{to} \textit{occurrence}_2

Synonymous Form: \textit{occurrence}_1 \textit{until} \textit{occurrence}_2 \textit{specifies} \textbf{time interval}

Synonymous Form: \textit{occurrence}_1 \textit{until} \textit{occurrence}_2

Synonymous Form: \textit{time interval} is \textit{occurrence}_1 \textit{until} \textit{occurrence}_2

Definition: \textit{the time interval} is the \textit{occurrence interval} of the \textit{occurrence}_1 \textit{to} the \textit{occurrence interval} of the \textit{occurrence}_2

Description: The \textit{time interval} extends from the start of \textit{occurrence}_1 up to, but not including, the start of \textit{occurrence}_2.

Example: The contract signing to the contract termination.

\textbf{time interval} \textit{is the duration preceding} \textbf{occurrence}

Synonymous Form: \textit{duration} \textit{preceding} \textit{occurrence}

Definition: \textit{time interval} \textit{is the duration preceding} the \textit{occurrence interval} of the \textit{occurrence}

Description: The \textit{time interval} has the \textit{duration} and is immediately before the \textit{occurrence}.

\textbf{time interval} \textit{is the duration following} \textbf{occurrence}

Synonymous Form: \textit{duration} \textit{following} \textit{occurrence}

Definition: \textit{time interval} \textit{is the duration following} the \textit{occurrence interval} of the \textit{occurrence}

Description: The \textit{time interval} has the \textit{duration} and is immediately after the \textit{occurrence}.
16.7.2 Specifying time intervals using situation kinds

Figure 16.8 - Time intervals specified by situation kinds
time interval₁ through individual situation kind specifies time interval₂

Synonymous Form: time interval₁, through individual situation kind
Synonymous Form: time interval₂ is time interval₁, through individual situation kind
Synonymous Form: individual situation kind through time interval₁ specifies time interval₂
Synonymous Form: individual situation kind through time interval₁
Synonymous Form: time interval₂ is individual situation kind through time interval₁

Definition: the individual situation kind has exactly one occurrence and the time interval₂ is the time interval₁ through the occurrence interval of the individual situation kind

Description: Time interval₂ extends from the start of time interval₁ through the end of the occurrence of the individual situation kind.

Note: The definition is correct for both the 'time interval₁ through individual situation kind' and 'individual situation kind through time interval₁' forms.

Example: Primordiality through the rise of the human race.
Example: The coronation of Queen Elizabeth II through 1972.

individual situation kind₁ through individual situation kind₂ specifies time interval

Synonymous Form: individual situation kind₁, through individual situation kind₂
Synonymous Form: time interval is individual situation kind₁, through individual situation kind₂

Definition: the individual situation kind₁ has exactly one occurrence and the individual situation kind₂ has exactly one occurrence and the time interval is the occurrence interval of the individual situation kind₁, through the occurrence interval of the individual situation kind₂

Description: The time interval extends from the start of occurrence of individual situation kind₁ through the end of the occurrence of individual situation kind₂.

Example: The inception of a contract through the termination of the contract.

time interval₁ to individual situation kind specifies time interval₂

Synonymous Form: time interval₁ to individual situation kind
Synonymous Form: time interval₂ is time interval₁, to individual situation kind
Synonymous Form: time interval₁ until individual situation kind specifies time interval₂
Synonymous Form: time interval₁ until individual situation kind
Synonymous Form: time interval₂ is time interval₁, until individual situation kind

Definition: the individual situation kind has exactly one occurrence and the time interval₂ is the time interval₁ to the occurrence interval of the individual situation kind

Description: Time interval₂ extends from the start of time interval₁ up to just before the occurrence of individual situation kind.

Example: 2010 to the termination of employment.

individual situation kind to time interval₁, specifies time interval₂

Synonymous Form: individual situation kind to time interval₁
16.8 Propositions, Situation Kinds, and Occurrences

The Date-Time Vocabulary builds on SBVR’s state of affairs and related concepts. Clause 16.8.1 examines the relevant aspects of SBVR as background for clause 16.8.2, which discusses the truth of propositions, and for clause 16.8.3, which suggests how situation kinds, occurrences, and states of affairs should be used with verb concepts and verb concept objectifications.

16.8.1 'State of Affairs' in SBVR

The following glossary entries are excerpted from sub-clause 8.5 “Extensions” of SBVR. See the SBVR specification for the Notes, Examples, and other related material.

**state of affairs**
Definition: res that is an event, activity, situation, or circumstance

**proposition corresponds to state of affairs**
**General Concept:** meaning corresponds to thing
**Definition:** the state of affairs is posited by the proposition and if the state of affairs were actual, the proposition would be true
**state of affairs** is actual

Definition: the state of affairs happens (i.e., takes place, obtains)

**actuality**

Definition: state of affairs that is actual

SBVR sub clause 8.5.2 “Necessities Concerning Extension” defines several Necessities that are relevant to the Date-Time Vocabulary. Two of these are quoted verbatim here because an understanding of the relationship of states of affairs to time depends upon these constraints, and because the applicability of the second Necessity is narrowed by the Date-Time Vocabulary in this sub clause.

Necessity: Each instance of a verb concept is an actuality.

Necessity: Each proposition that is true corresponds to exactly one actuality.

SBVR sub clause 8.5.2 also contains a Necessity that reads “Each proposition corresponds to exactly one state of affairs.” As discussed below, this Necessity is unacceptable for the Date-Time Vocabulary because it requires a proposition such as “the United States elects a president” to correspond to only one state of affairs; i.e., only one event. The goal of the Date-Time Vocabulary is to provide concepts that are sufficient to represent real states of affairs, such as elections that occur multiple times. The Date-Time Vocabulary replaces this Necessity with a close alternative, “Each proposition corresponds to exactly one situation kind.” This alternative is discussed in detail, below.

The Date-Time Vocabulary extends the concepts outlined above to address the following concerns.

1. The Necessity “Each proposition corresponds to exactly one state of affairs” fails to acknowledge that many propositions correspond to states of affairs that recur. As stated in an Example in the ‘state of affairs’ glossary entry in the SBVR specification, the proposition “EU-Rent owns 10,000 rental cars” corresponds to the state of affairs “EU-Rent owning 10,000 rental cars”. The Necessity requires that this state of affairs only happens once. What if it happens in 2009 and also in 2012, but not in 2010 or 2011?

2. The same Necessity also interferes with verb concept objectifications. An example in clause 11.1.5.3 of the SBVR specification, under the glossary entry for ‘general concept objectifies verb concept’, reads “The general concept ‘sponsorship’ objectifies the verb concept ‘company sponsors publication’. Each sponsorship is an actuality that a given company sponsors a given publication.” The Necessity that a proposition corresponds to exactly one state of affairs means that there can be only one sponsorship. That contradicts the observed business situations, in which many real companies support multiple sponsorships.

3. Any proposition can be interpreted in two different ways: (i) as a possible state of affairs that may be planned, budgeted for, feared, considered, etc., and (ii) as an occurrence. For example, many building codes require builders to plan for the possibility of building fires, whereas fire departments fight actual fires. Possible fires may or may not be actual (in the sense of SBVR’s state of affairs is actual characteristic). Occurrences – such as actual fires – are actual if the universe of discourse contains current facts about them. Even future events (e.g., the election of a U.S. President in the years 2024 and 2028) are occurrences if they are facts (“propositions that are taken as true”) at the current time.

The Date-Time Vocabulary addresses these concerns by building on the SBVR state of affairs concept as described in 16.8.2.

### 16.8.2 Propositions and States of Affairs

In a static world that has no notion of change, there is a 1-to-1 relationship between propositions and states of the possible worlds: A proposition is true if the state it describes is the state of that world, and it is false if the state it describes is not the state of that world. (The SBVR model of states of affairs reflects this model.)
When temporal concepts are introduced into the formal logic model, a distinction must be made between two aspects of the SBVR concept ‘proposition’ – the truth or falsity of the proposition, and a ‘meaning’ in terms of a situation. This is because many propositions correspond to a single situation (a ‘situation kind’) that may have multiple occurrences. Such propositions are also said to describe the occurrences of the situation kind. For example, the proposition “each payment must precede delivery” is an SBVR way to state an obligation about the sequencing of payment and delivery, as might be given in a BPMN process model. In a given possible world, there may be many occurrences of payment and delivery, and thus many occurrences of payment preceding delivery.

SBVR sub clause 8.1.2 says that a proposition is true if “the state of affairs that the proposition corresponds to is actual”. The Date-Time Vocabulary specifies that each proposition corresponds to exactly one situation kind, and the situation kind is actual if and only if the situation kind has at least one occurrence that is current in the universe of discourse. This clause specifies what it means for a situation kind to be actual, and thus for the corresponding proposition to be true.

Each situation kind is actual if and only if the situation kind has at least one occurrence that is current.

Note: In SBVR, a proposition is true if it corresponds to a state of affairs that is actual. The Necessity above establishes the basis for determining whether a proposition is true in a given universe of discourse that contains time.

Note: The rule “Each factory manager must budget for situations where machines break down” states an obligation with respect to a situation kind that is the instance of the proposition “machines break down”. The situation kind may or may not turn out to be actual at some time because the situation kind may or may not have any occurrences.

Each proposition may or may not reference time, and if it does reference time, then it may reference the past, the present, or the future. Regardless, a proposition is true if it corresponds to a situation kind that has an occurrence that is current in the universe of discourse. Each case is discussed and illustrated with an example, in the following text.

Most propositions do not mention time (i.e., are “atemporal”). For example, the proposition “the building is on fire” does not mention time. The truth of this example depends upon whether the proposition corresponds to an occurrence that occurs for the current time in the universe of discourse. The occurrence may be directly given by a fact in the universe of discourse, or may be inferred from facts in the universe of discourse.

Some propositions are stated using past, present, or future tense, or contain explicit references to past time, current time, or future time. These propositions are true if and only if the universe of discourse contains facts (“propositions taken as true”) that specify or imply current occurrences of the propositions. For example, the proposition “the contract was signed” is true if and only if there is an occurrence of “a signing of the contract” and that occurrence is in the past. The occurrence may exist as a fact or can be inferred from facts of the universe of discourse. Similarly, propositions about the present or the future are true if they exist as facts or are implied by facts of the universe of discourse. The proposition “the contract will expire” is a true proposition about the future if an occurrence of the proposition can be inferred from the facts of the universe of discourse.

Propositions may mention an explicit time, either as a time coordinate or as a definite description. For example, “an election is held in 2012” mentions the time coordinate “2012”. The proposition “the contract will expire 2 years from the date the contract is signed” specifies a time via a definite description. Such propositions are true if the universe of discourse contains facts that specify or imply their occurrence – even if they are in the future.

Occurrences are actual if they are current:

Each occurrence is actual if and only if the occurrence is current.

The Date-Time Vocabulary takes the position that propositions do not correspond to occurrences, even though occurrence is a specialization of state of affairs:

It is not the case that some proposition corresponds to an occurrence.
When a proposition corresponds to a situation kind, the proposition describes any occurrences of the situation kind.

**Figure 16.9 - Propositions, Situation Kinds, and Occurrences**

**proposition corresponds to situation kind**

General Concept: proposition corresponds to state of affairs

Necessity: Each proposition corresponds to exactly one situation kind.

Note: In the Date-Time Vocabulary, the Necessity immediately above replaces the SBVR Necessity "Each proposition corresponds to exactly one state of affairs".

Note: The instances of propositions are situation kinds, which may or may not be actual. Propositions may be planned, feared, budgeted for, etc., whether or not they correspond to situation kinds that are actual. A proposition may refer to the past, present, or future without implying that the corresponding situation kind has been, is, or will be actual.

**proposition describes occurrence**

Definition: The proposition corresponds to a situation kind that has the occurrence.

Note: That is, the occurrence exemplifies the proposition in the sense of Plantinga (see [Menzel]).

Necessity: A proposition is true if and only if the proposition describes an occurrence that is current.

Note: In a temporal world, the same proposition can describe several different occurrences, even when all the roles in the proposition are played by exactly the same things in all occurrences. What distinguishes the occurrences are the things that are not mentioned in the proposition. In particular, a proposition that does not mention time may describe different occurrences that have different occurrence intervals.
Example: Brazil wins the FIFA World Cup. That was true in 1994 and 2002, but false in 1992, 1998, 2006, and 2010. So the proposition "Brazil wins the FIFA World Cup" describes two occurrences in the period 1992 to 2012.

Example: The proposition "Brazil won the FIFA World Cup in 1994" describes an occurrence that is current in 2012. Thus, the proposition "Brazil won the FIFA World Cup in 1994" is true in the world of 2012.

Possibility: A proposition describes zero or more occurrences (in a given possible world).

Possibility: An occurrence is described by zero or more propositions.

16.8.3 Verb Concepts, Verb Concept Objectification, and States of Affairs

The Date-Time Vocabulary distinction between situation kinds and occurrences enables verb concepts to be explicit about whether they range over potential states of affairs or real happenings. For example, an ‘insures’ verb concept might be defined as ‘person insure against situation kind’ to mean that the verb ranges over potential events, activities, situations, or circumstances. A ‘reports’ verb concept might be specified as ‘person reports occurrence’ to mean that what gets reported are real events, etc. One insures against fires that may never happen, but one should only report actual fires.

Business vocabularies should not define verb concepts that range over ‘state of affairs’ because the meaning is unclear.

SBVR sub clause 11.1.5.3 “Verb Concept Objectification” formalizes the idea that a general concept may be coextensive with a verb concept, the way many English gerunds (e.g., “planning”) are coextensive with some verbs (e.g., “plan”). Verb concept objectifications that may or may not be actual should specialize either ‘state of affairs’ or ‘situation kind’. Verb concept objectifications that are specifically about occurrences should specialize ‘occurrence’.

Verb concept objectifications that specialize ‘state of affairs’ have the advantage that they may fill verb concept roles that range over ‘situation kind’ and also verb concept roles that range over ‘occurrence’. For example, the verb concept objectification ‘machine breakdown’ defined as ‘state of affairs that machine is broken down’ may be used with the verb concept ‘manager plans for situation kind’ and also with the verb concept ‘manager reports occurrence’. With this approach, a single verb concept objectification can be used with slightly different meanings associated with each verb concept that ranges over the verb concept objectification. This is possible because both ‘situation kind’ and ‘occurrence’ are specializations of ‘state of affairs’. The advantage of this technique is that it better matches typical business English usage.

16.9 Language Tense and Aspect

As discussed in sub clause 7.12, human languages use past, present, and future tenses and incorporate simple, progressive, and perfect aspects. This sub clause provides concepts that enable all these tenses and aspects, in any combination. They extend the relationships between situation kinds, occurrences, and time that are defined in this clause.
The following verb concepts formalize the progressive and perfect language aspects. The concepts are provided for both ‘situation kind’ and ‘occurrence’; the former are normally used in guidance statements, while the latter are most useful in facts.

**situation kind is continuing**

Definition: the situation kind is unfinished at some reference time interval

Note: The reference time interval is when a fact is evaluated or a rule is being applied.

Note: ‘situation kind is continuing’ indicates the progressive aspect of natural language. It is sometimes called the "continuous aspect".

Example: If company x is going bankrupt....

Note: ‘Situation kind is continuing’ is not the negation of ‘situation kind is accomplished’ because a situation kind may end without being accomplished. Consider that the situation kind 'John writes book' in the partial rule "if John writes a book ..." may end without John ever completing the book.

Note: A situation kind may be is continuing or is accomplished or both or neither, and may also be in the past, present, or future tense. (see Table 16.1).

**situation kind is accomplished**

Definition: the situation kind has reached a point of completion or perfection at with respect to the "reference time interval" associated with the concept 'time interval is past'

Note: The reference time interval is when a fact is evaluated or a rule is being applied.

Example: If company x has gone bankrupt....

Note: ‘Situation kind is accomplished’ is not the negation of ‘situation kind is continuing’ because a situation kind may end without being accomplished. Consider that the
situation kind  'John writes book' in the partial rule "if John writes a book ..." may end without John ever completing the book.

Note: A situation kind may be is continuing or is accomplished or both or neither, and may also be in the past, present, or future tense. (see Table 16.1).

situation kind is accomplished in time interval
Definition: the situation kind reaches a point of completion or perfection at some time interval that is part of the time interval
Example: If the contract is completed within this year ....

occurrence is continuing
Definition: the occurrence is unfinished at some reference time interval
Note: The reference time interval is when a fact is evaluated or a rule is being applied.
Note: 'occurrence is continuing' indicates the progressive aspect of natural language. It is sometimes called the "continuous aspect".
Example: Company x is going bankrupt.
Note: 'Occurrence is continuing' is not the negation of 'occurrence is accomplished' because an occurrence may end without being accomplished. Consider that the occurrence 'John writes book' may end without John ever completing the book.
Note: An occurrence may be is continuing or is accomplished or both or neither, and may also be in the past, present, or future tense. (see Table 16.1).

occurrence is accomplished
Definition: the occurrence has reached a point of completion or perfection at with respect to the "reference time interval" associated with the concept 'time interval is past'
Note: The reference time interval is when a fact is evaluated or a rule is being applied.
Example: Company x has gone bankrupt.
Note: 'Occurrence is accomplished' is not the negation of 'occurrence is continuing' because a state of affairs may end without being accomplished. Consider that the state of affairs 'John writes book' may end without John ever completing the book.
Note: An occurrence may be is continuing or is accomplished or both or neither, and may also be in the past, present, or future tense. (see Table 16.1).

occurrence is accomplished in time interval
Definition: the occurrence reaches a point of completion or perfection at some time interval that is part of the time interval
Example: The occurrence "Columbus reaches the new world" is accomplished in the 15th Century.

These verb concepts enable formulation of past, present, and future tense propositions. As above, the ‘situation kind’ versions of these concepts are most useful in guidance statements, while the ‘occurrence’ versions are intended for use in facts.

situation kind is in the past
Definition: the situation kind occurs throughout some time interval that is in the past
Example: If the customer has previously failed to pay his bill ....
Note: Whether a situation kind is in the past may be inferred when a situation kind is located in time via any of the verb concepts given above, such as "situation kind₁, is before situation kind₂."

**situation kind is current**
- **Definition:** the situation kind occurs for some time interval that is current
- **Example:** "If the bill is currently due" (which might be formulated as "if the bill is due is current").

**situation kind is in the future**
- **Definition:** the situation kind occurs throughout some time interval that is in the future
- **Example:** "If President Obama will write his memoirs," which might be formulated as "If President Obama writes his memoirs in the future." 
- **Note:** Whether a situation kind is in the future may be inferred when a situation kind is located in time via any of the verb concepts given above, such as "situation kind₁, is before situation kind₂."

**occurrence is in the past**
- **Definition:** the occurrence occurs throughout some time interval that is in the past
- **Example:** The reign of Alexander the Great is in the past.
- **Note:** Whether an occurrence is in the past may be inferred when an occurrence is located in time via any of the verb concepts given in this clause, such as "occurrence₁, is before occurrence₂."

**occurrence is current**
- **Definition:** the occurrence occurs for some time interval that is current
- **Example:** That EU-Rent is in business is current (which means the same as "EU-Rent is currently in business").

**occurrence is in the future**
- **Definition:** the occurrence occurs throughout some time interval that is in the future
- **Example:** "President Obama writes his memoirs" is in the future.
- **Note:** Whether a state of affairs is in the future may be inferred when an occurrence is located in time via any of the verb concepts given in this clause, such as "occurrence₁, is before occurrence₂."

This specification defines vocabulary fact types in the present tense. Table 16.1 gives examples of how other tenses and aspects can be formulated. To show the range of expression supported by this vocabulary, some examples reference specific time intervals, while others leave unstated the time interval that an occurrence is continuing or is accomplished.

Table 16.1 assumes a domain vocabulary verb concept “John writes book”. The examples are given as facts, and hence are formulated using the ‘occurrence’ version of the verb concepts listed above.

The text “(that John writes a book)” is short-hand for “the proposition ‘John writes a book’, corresponds to a situation kind”. Nesting is used for some combinations. For example, “(that (that John writes a book) is in the future) is accomplished” means that the characteristic ‘is accomplished’ is applied to a situation kind of “the characteristic ‘is in the future’, which itself is applied to a situation kind of the proposition ‘John writes a book’”. 
At the time of writing this document, the example “John will be writing a book during January 2021 through June 2022” is in the future. Nevertheless, the formulation includes the apparently redundant “is in the future” to express the future tense of the statement even after 2022. The formulation of “John was writing a book last year” excludes “is in the past” because “last year” applies at all times.

Table 16.1 - Examples of tense and aspect formulation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Aspect</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Example</td>
<td>Formulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>John wrote a book</td>
<td>(that John writes a book) is in the past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>John writes a book</td>
<td>John writes a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>John will write a book</td>
<td>(that John writes a book) is in the future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Progressive Aspect</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Example</td>
<td>Formulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>John was writing a book</td>
<td>(that (that John writes a book) is continuing) is in the past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>John is writing a book</td>
<td>(that John writes a book) is continuing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>John will be writing a book</td>
<td>(that (that John writes a book) is continuing) is in the future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect Aspect</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Example</td>
<td>Formulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>John had written a book before 2009</td>
<td>(that (that John writes a book) is accomplished) occurs before 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>John has written a book</td>
<td>(that John writes a book) is accomplished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>John will have written a book by 2030</td>
<td>(that (that John writes a book) is accomplished) occurs before 2030</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Progressive and Perfect Aspect</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Example</td>
<td>Formulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>John had been writing a book before 2009</td>
<td>(that (that (that John writes a book) is continuing) is accomplished) occurs before 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>John has been writing a book</td>
<td>(that (that John writes a book) is continuing) is accomplished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>John will have been writing a book by 2030</td>
<td>(that (that (that John writes a book) is continuing) is accomplished) occurs before 2030</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17  Schedules (normative)

17.1 General

An important element of business activity and contracts is schedules: plans for situation kinds to occur at specific times.

---

**Schedules Vocabulary**

- General Concept: terminological dictionary
- Language: English
- Included Vocabulary: Situations Vocabulary

---

17.2 Schedules

Schedules model relationships between time intervals and situation kinds that are planned to occur at the time intervals. Time intervals of schedules can be sequential or overlapping, and at regular or irregular intervals. Schedules with non-overlapping sequential time intervals that repeat regularly are called regular schedules. Most mortgage loans call for payment according to regular schedules. Schedules with irregular time intervals are called ad hoc schedules. A conference schedule is usually ad hoc.
**Figure 17.1 - Schedules**

**schedule**

Definition: a plan for carrying out situation kinds at each of multiple time intervals

Each schedule is composed of an explicit (for ad hoc schedules and schedule stubs of regular schedules) or implicit (for regular schedules) set of schedule entries.

**schedule entry**

Definition: proposition that the situation kind happens on a time interval

Note: The situation kind should define its precise relationship with the time interval: whether the situation kind occurs for, within, etc., the time interval.

**schedule has schedule entry**

Definition: the schedule entry is in the schedule entry set of the schedule.

CLIF Definition:

(forall (s se)
  (iff ("schedule has schedule entry" s se)
    (exists (ses)
      (and
        ("schedule entry set of schedule" ses s)
        ("thing is in set" se ses)))))

"situation kind" (Situations)

"time interval" (Time Infrastructure)

"thing" (SBVR-DTV)

"set" (SBVR-DTV)

"schedule" (SBVR-DTV)

"schedule entry set" (SBVR-DTV)

"schedule has latest time" 1

"schedule has earliest time" 1

"schedule has time span" 1

"schedule entry has time interval" 1

"schedule has occurrence occurrence" 1

"schedule has latest time" 0..*

"schedule has earliest time" 0..*

"schedule has time span" 0..1

"schedule entry has time interval" 0..1

"schedule has occurrence occurrence" 0..*

"schedule has latest time" 0..1

"schedule has earliest time" 0..1

"schedule has time span" 0..1
OCL Definition: context schedule
def: _'schedule has schedule entry'(se: _'schedule entry') : Boolean =
self._'schedule entry set'.includes(se)

schedule entry has situation kind
Necessity: Each schedule entry has exactly one situation kind.
CLIF Axiom: (forall (se) (exists (sk1)
(and ("schedule entry has situation kind" se sk1)
(forall (sk2)
(if ("schedule entry has situation kind" se sk2)
(= sk1 sk2))))))
OCL Constraint: context _'schedule entry'
inv: self._'situation kind'->size() = 1

schedule entry has time interval
Necessity: Each schedule entry has exactly one time interval.
CLIF Axiom: (forall (se) (exists (t1)
(if ("schedule entry has time interval" se t1)
(forall (sk2)
(if ("schedule entry has time interval" se t2)
(= t1 t2)))))
OCL Constraint: context _'schedule entry'
inv: self._'time interval'->size() = 1

schedule entry set
Definition: set that is of schedule entry
Necessity: Each schedule entry set includes at least one schedule entry.
CLIF Axiom: (forall (seset) (exists (se)
("schedule entry set includes schedule entry" seset se)))
OCL Constraint: context _'schedule entry set'
inv: self.includes->size()>0

schedule defines schedule entry set
Description: The schedule entry set is explicit in an ad hoc schedule, and implicit in a regular schedule. The schedule entry set models the situation kinds and corresponding time intervals of the schedule.
Note: This verb concept is refined, below, by regular schedule defines regular entry set. 'Ad hoc schedule' uses this verb concept as-is.
Necessity: Each schedule defines exactly one schedule entry set.
CLIF Axiom: (forall (se) (exists (ses)
(and ("schedule entry has schedule entry set" se ses)
(forall (ses2)
(if ("schedule entry has schedule entry set" se ses2)
(= ses1 ses2))))))
OCL Constraint: context _'schedule entry'
inv: self._'schedule entry set'->size() = 1
Schedules of all types share several attributes:

**schedule has occurrence**

**Definition:**

The occurrence exemplifies the situation kind of a schedule entry of the schedule and the occurrence interval of the occurrence overlaps the time interval of the schedule entry.

**Note:** The occurrence may be in the past or may be planned for the future.

**CLIF Definition:**

\[
\text{(forall (s o) (iff ("schedule has occurrence" s o) (exists (("schedule entry" se) ("situation kind" sk)) (and ("schedule has schedule entry" s se) ("schedule entry has situation kind" s sk) ("occurrence exemplifies situation kind" o sk) ("time interval1 overlaps time interval2" ("occurrence interval" o) ("time interval" se)) ))))}
\]

**OCL Definition:**

\[
\text{context schedule def: _'schedule has occurrence'(o: occurrence) : Boolean = self._'schedule entry' ->exists(se | o.exemplifies(se._'situation kind') and o._'occurrence interval'.overlaps(se._'time interval'))}
\]

**earliest time**

**Concept Type:** role

**General Concept:** time interval

**Description:** The earliest scheduled time of a schedule.

**schedule has earliest time**

**Definition:**

The earliest time is the time interval of some schedule entry of the schedule and the earliest time does not start after the time interval of each schedule entry of the schedule.

**CLIF Definition:**

\[
\text{(forall (s et) (iff ("schedule has earliest time" s et) (and (exists (se1) (and ("schedule has schedule entry" s se1) ("schedule entry has time interval" s1 et))) (forall (se2 ti2) (if (and ("schedule has schedule entry" s se2) ("schedule entry has time interval" se2 ti2) ) (not ("time interval1 starts after time interval2" se2 ti2) ) ))))})
\]

**OCL Definition:**

\[
\text{context schedule def: _'earliest time'(et: _'time interval') : Boolean = self._'schedule entry' -> exists (se1 | se1._'time interval'.equals(et))}
\]
and self._'schedule entry'.forall(se2 | not et._'starts after'(se2._'time interval'))

Synonymous Form: earliest time of schedule
CLIF Definition: (forall ((s schedule) (et "time interval")) (iff (= et ("earliest time of schedule" s)) ("schedule has earliest time" s et)))
OCL Definition: context schedule
def: _'schedule has earliest time'() : _'time interval' = self._'schedule entry'.forall(ti |self._'earliest time'(ti))

latest time
Concept Type: role
General Concept: time interval
Description: The latest scheduled time of a schedule.

schedule has latest time
Definition: the latest time is the time interval of some schedule entry of the schedule and the latest time ends after the time interval of each schedule entry of the schedule
CLIF Definition: (forall (s lt) (iff ("schedule has latest time" s lt) (and (exists (se1) (and ("schedule has schedule entry" s se1) ("schedule entry has time interval" se1 lt)))) (forall (se2 ti2) (if (and ("schedule has schedule entry" s se2) ("schedule entry has time interval" se2 ti2)) (not ("time interval1 ends after time interval2" ti2 lt)))))
OCL Definition: context schedule
def: _'schedule has latest time'(lt: _'time interval') : Boolean = self._'schedule entry'.exists(se1 | lt.equals(se1._'time interval')) and self._'schedule entry'.forall(se2: (lt._'ends after'(se2._'time interval'))
Synonymous Form: latest time of schedule
CLIF Definition: (forall ((s schedule) (lt "time interval")) (iff (= lt ("latest time of schedule" s)) ("schedule has latest time" s lt)))
OCL Definition: context schedule
def: _'latest time of schedule'() : _'time interval' = self._'schedule entry'.select(ti |self._'schedule has latest time'(ti))
**schedule has time span**

Definition: the time span equals the earliest time of the schedule through the latest time of the schedule.

Description: the time span is the smallest time interval that includes the time intervals of all planned occurrences of the schedule.

Description: The time span is the "convex hull" of a schedule.

CLIF Definition:

```
(forall (s ts)
    (iff ("schedule has time span" s ts)
        (and
            ("time interval" ts)
            ("time interval1 plus time interval2 is time interval3"
                ("earliest time of schedule" s)
                ("latest time of schedule" s)
                ts ))))
```

OCL Definition:

```
context schedule
def: _'schedule has time span'(ts: _'time interval') : Boolean =
    ts.equals(self._'earliest time'.plus(self._'latest time'))
```

Synonymous Form: time span of schedule

CLIF Definition:

```
(forall ((ts "time interval") (s schedule))
    (iff (= ts ("time span of schedule" s))
        ("schedule has time span" s ts )))
```

OCL Definition:

```
context schedule
def: _'time span of schedule'() : _'time interval' =
    self._'earliest time'.plus(self._'latest time')
```

Necessity: Each schedule has exactly one time span.

CLIF Axiom:

```
(forall (s) (exists (t1)
    (and ("schedule has time span" s t1)
        (forall (t2)
            (if ("schedule has time span" s t2)
                (= (t1 t2)) ))))
```

OCL Constraint:

```
context schedule
inv: schedule._'time span'->size() = 1
```

Note: The verb concept occurrence occurs for time interval can be used to say that an occurrence happens for the entire time span of a schedule.

Example: A conference meeting might occur at a particular time interval of an ad hoc schedule, while the entire conference occurs for the time span of the entire schedule.

### 17.3 Regular Schedules

Regular schedules define a single situation kind that recurs at each time interval of the regular schedule. The verb concept 'regular schedule is for situation kind' means that the situation kind occurs at each time interval of the regular schedule.

This definition requires further extension to address what might be called ‘complex regular schedules’: regular schedules in which the scheduled time interval is defined according to a calendar to be one or more proper parts (rather than the whole) of the recurrence duration. For example, this definition does not support schedules such as or “the first Tuesday of each calendar month” or “the first and last calendar day of each calendar month”.

**Figure 17.2 - Regular Schedules**

**regular schedule**

Definition: A regular schedule is a schedule that a single situation kind occurs at the earliest time of the regular schedule, and thereafter once each recurrence duration, for the recurrence count number of recurrence durations, with optional initial stub and final stub.

Necessity: No regular schedule is an ad hoc schedule.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((rs "regular schedule"))
  (not ("ad hoc schedule" rs)))

OCL Constraint: context _'regular schedule'
  inv: not self.oclIsTypeOf(_'ad hoc schedule')

Example: A mortgage is payable monthly.
**regular schedule is for situation kind**

Synonym Form:  
*situation kind according to regular schedule*

Synonym Form:  
*situation kind has regular schedule*

Definition:  
the occurrence of each schedule entry of the regular entry set of the regular schedule exemplifies the situation kind

Necessity:  
A regular schedule is for exactly one situation kind.

CLIF Axiom:  
(forall (rs sk1)  
  (if ("regular schedule is for situation kind" rs sk1)  
    (forall (sk2)  
      (if ("regular schedule is for situation kind" rs sk2) (= sk1 sk2))  
    )))

OCL Constraint:  
context _'regular schedule'
inv: _'regular schedule'._'situation kind'->size() = 1

Example:  
An airline flies daily from NY to Dubai according to a flight schedule. The situation kind is 'fly from NY to Dubai.'

**start time**

Concept Type:  
role

Definition:  
time interval of the start of the recurring portion of a regular schedule

**regular schedule has start time**

Definition:  
the start time is the time interval of the first recurrence of the regular schedule

Necessity:  
Each regular schedule has exactly one start time.

CLIF Axiom:  
(forall (rs st1)  
  (if ("regular schedule has start time" rs st1)  
    (forall (st2)  
      (if ("regular schedule has start time" rs st2) (= st1 st2))  
    )))

OCL Constraint:  
context _'regular schedule'
inv: _'regular schedule'._'start time'->size() = 1

**recurrence duration**

Synonym:  
repeat duration

Concept Type:  
role

Definition:  
duration that is between the occurrence intervals of the occurrences of consecutive schedule entries of the regular entry set of a regular schedule

**regular schedule has recurrence duration**

Definition:  
the occurrence interval of an occurrence of the regular schedule starts recurrence duration before the occurrence interval of the next occurrence of the regular schedule

Necessity:  
Each regular schedule has exactly one recurrence duration.

CLIF Axiom:  
(forall (rs rd1)  
  (if ("regular schedule has recurrence duration" rs rd1)  
    (forall (rd2)  
      (if ("regular schedule has recurrence duration" rs rd2) (= rd1 rd2))  
    )))

250
OCL Constraint: context _'regular schedule'  
inv: _'regular schedule'. _'recurrence duration'->size() = 1

**recurrence count**

*Synonym:* repeat count  
*Concept Type:* role  
*Definition:* number of occurrences of a regular schedule

**regular schedule has recurrence count**

*Definition:* the recurrence count is the cardinality of the regular entry set of the regular schedule  
*Necessity:* Each regular schedule has at most one recurrence count. 

*CLIF Axiom:*  
(forall (rs rc1)  
  (if ("regular schedule has recurrence count" rs rc1)  
    (forall (rc2)  
      (if ("regular schedule has recurrence count" rs rc2)  
        (= rc1 rc2) ))))

*OCL Constraint:* context _'regular schedule'  
inv: _'regular schedule'. _'recurrence count'->size() = 1

*Note:* This Necessity disallows unlimited regular schedules.

To support financial contracts, regular schedules may have an initial stub and/or a final stub that identify special situations that come before or after the schedule’s repeating component. For example a home mortgage is payable monthly, at the start of each calendar month, for 30 years. Because the mortgage is finalized in the middle of a calendar month, an initial payment is due for the period up to the due date of the first monthly payment. Similarly, a final payment is due for several remaining days after the last monthly payment. The initial stub and final stub of a regular schedule can capture the details of these initial and final payments.

**initial stub**

*Concept Type:* role  
*General Concept:* schedule entry  
*Description:* An initial stub identifies special business treatment that should happen before the start of the recurring portion of a regular schedule.

**regular schedule has initial stub**

*Necessity:* Each regular schedule has at most one initial stub. 

*CLIF Axiom:*  
(forall (rs is1)  
  (if ("regular schedule has initial stub" rs is1)  
    (forall (is2)  
      (if ("regular schedule has initial stub" rs is2)  
        (= is1 is2) ))))

*OCL Constraint:* context _'regular schedule'  
inv: _'regular schedule'. _'initial stub'->size() <= 1

**final stub**

*Concept Type:* role  
*General Concept:* schedule entry
Description: A final stub identifies special business treatment that should happen after the end of the recurring portion of a regular schedule.

**regular schedule has final stub**

**Necessity:** Each regular schedule has at most one final stub.

**CLIF Axiom:**
(forall (rs fs1)
  (if ("regular schedule has final stub" rs fs1)
    (forall (fs2)
      (if ("regular schedule has final stub" rs fs2)
        (= fs1 fs2)))))

**OCL Constraint:**
context _'regular schedule' inv: _'regular schedule'.final stub'->size() <= 1

The following glossary entries “expand” regular schedule to an implicit schedule entry set, including any initial stub and final stub. This enables the generic treatment (above) of regular schedules and ad hoc schedules.

**regular entry set**

**Definition:** schedule entry set that is a regular sequence

**regular entry set of regular schedule**

**Definition:**
- the cardinality of the regular entry set is the recurrence count of the regular schedule and the situation kind of each schedule entry of the regular entry set is the situation kind of the regular schedule and the time interval of the regular entry set is the start time of the regular schedule and the time interval of the schedule entry that is next after a given schedule entry of the regular entry set is the recurrence duration of the regular schedule plus the time interval of the schedule entry

**Description:**
- The regular entry set is defined inductively as follows:
  - The recurrence count specifies the number of schedule entries.
  - Each schedule entry has the situation kind of the regular schedule.
  - The first schedule entry has the start time of the regular schedule.
  - The time interval of each subsequent entry is computed from the time interval of the previous entry plus the recurrence duration.

The following Necessity describes the construction of the (complete) schedule entry set of a regular schedule:

**Necessity:**
- The schedule entry set of a regular schedule is the regular entry set of the regular schedule plus each initial stub of the regular schedule plus each final stub of the regular schedule.

**CLIF Axiom:**
(forall (rs ses res)
  (if (and
    ("regular schedule" rs)
    ("schedule defines schedule entry set" rs ses)
    ("regular schedule has regular entry set" rs res)
    (exists (init) ("regular schedule has initial stub" rs init))
    (exists (fin) ("regular schedule has final stub" rs fin))
    (= ses (setplus (setplus res init) fin)))
  ))

**CLIF Axiom:**
(forall (rs ses res)
  (if (and
    ("regular schedule" rs)
Ad hoc schedules associate a situation kind with each time interval because (in the general case) different events happen at each time interval.

**ad hoc schedule**

Definition: schedule that does not have a recurrence duration or a recurrence count

Note: An ad hoc schedule is a set, not a sequence, because the time intervals of the ad hoc schedule may not be unique and may not be ordered.

Necessity: No ad hoc schedule is a regular schedule.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (ahs "ad hoc schedule")
  (not ("regular schedule" ahs)) )

OCL Constraint: context _'ad hoc schedule'
  inv: not self.oclIsTypeOf(_'regular schedule')
18 Interchange of Duration Values and Time Coordinates (normative)

18.1 General

The foregoing parts of this specification provide a formal terminology for expressing facts and rules involving time concepts in business communications. The expressions for time intervals that are commonly used in business communications are based on time coordinates, duration values, references to occurrences, and on the verb concepts defined in sub clause 8.2 and Clauses 16 and 17. Further discussions of this can be found in Annex C.

Where those business communications are implemented by data exchanges, the terminology used in the formal exchange forms, such as XML, can be derived from the SBVR forms above, as specified in [SBVR] clause XXX, or from the corresponding UML model elements, as specified in [XMI].

The instances of <term>duration value</term> and <term>time coordinate</term>, and of the corresponding UML classes, however, have standard computational representations. The implementations of those concepts are said to be datatypes. This clause specifies the datatype representation of duration values and time coordinates in data exchanges.

There are two significantly different standards for the representation of duration values and time coordinates:

- ISO 8601 “Representation of dates and times”, which standardizes character string representations
- IETF RFC 5905 “Network Time Protocol”, which standardizes binary integer representations

To maximize compatibility with other standards, this specification proposes three compliance points:

- The XML Schema Compliance point requires support for the subset of ISO 8601 representations that is specified in [XML Schema Part 2 Datatypes]. Tools and documents that implement this compliance point can exploit the features of existing XML parsers and generators.

- The ISO 8601 Compliance point requires support for an extended subset of ISO 8601 that is sufficient to cover all of the duration value and time coordinate concepts specified in Clauses 9, 11, 12, and 13 of this specification. Tools that implement this compliance level can use standard XML parsers and generators for the datatypes defined by XML Schema, but must implement additional support as described in sub clause 18.1.

- The Internet Time Compliance point requires support for the representations of duration values and time coordinates that are specified in IETF RFC 5905. These forms should be used for time-critical applications in which calculations of durations and comparisons of time coordinates are intrinsic to aspects of the application.

These compliance points are further detailed below. This specification recommends the use of ISO 8601 forms (and related standards) for most business purposes.

18.2 Datatype representation of duration values

[ISO 8601] clause 4.4.3 defines a lexical representation for duration values as a component of time intervals. [XML Schema Part 2] defines a datatype named “duration” to represent duration values in XML documents. The XML Schema representation is compatible with ISO 8601 for representing duration values whose time unit is year, month, day, hour, minute, or second, or some combination thereof. ISO 8601 specifies a similar representation for duration values whose time unit is week, but those representations are not permissible values of the XML Schema datatype ‘duration’.
XML Schema Compliance Point

Implementations of the XML Schema Compliance Point shall implement all of the duration value representations that are valid values of the XML Schema datatype ‘duration’. The requirement for representations in these forms applies to all exchanges, not just XML-based exchanges.

The XML Schema Part 2 clause 3.2.6.2 “Order Relation on Duration” does not apply to representations of duration values. This specification describes a more comprehensive approach to ordering of duration values based on duration value sets, and mandates that interpretation of ordering for duration values. Therefore, implementations should not rely on standard XML software libraries for the order relation on “duration”.

Tools that only implement this compliance point should convert duration values given in weeks to equivalent values given in days.

ISO 8601 Compliance Point

Implementations of the ISO 8601 Compliance point shall support all valid values of the XML Schema datatype ‘duration’. In addition, implementations of this compliance point shall implement representation of duration values that include the time unit ‘week’ using the general form “PnYnWnDTnHnMnS”, where the term “nW” denotes a duration value whose time unit is ‘week’. In this representation, the year, day, and time of day components must conform to the rules defined in XML Schema Part 2 clause 3.2.6.1 for number of digits, value range, use of leading minus sign, reduced precision, and truncation. The number of weeks must be greater than 1. If the number of years, days, hours, minutes, or seconds equals zero, the number and corresponding designator may be omitted. Thus, the following examples are all legitimate:

- P3W -- three weeks
- P3W4D -- three weeks and 4 days
- P1Y3W4D -- 1 year and 3 weeks and 4 days
- P1Y3W4DT5H -- 1 year and 3 weeks and 4 days and 5 hours

XML elements that are used to interchange duration values that may include the ‘week’ time unit should have the “extendedDuration” XML element type defined as:

```xml
<xs:simpleType name="extendedDuration" >
  <xs:restriction base="xs:string"/>
</xs:simpleType>
<xs:element name="extendedDuration" type="extendedDuration"/>
```

Conforming tools shall accept all ‘duration’ values as valid values of this “extendedDuration” type. Conforming tools shall also accept the standard XML Schema “duration” datatype as a representation for duration values.

Internet Time Compliance Point

Implementations of the Internet Time Compliance Point shall represent all duration values as 64-bit integer multiples of the base time unit for Internet Time (equal to 2^-32 seconds, approximately 200 picoseconds), as specified in IETF RFC 5905. The actual representation of the (nominally binary) integer value depends on the nature of the exchange specification (e.g., JSON vs. XML).
18.3 Datatype representation of time coordinates

Table 18.1 shows all of the time coordinate types that are defined in this specification, and the corresponding time coordinate format specifications from ISO 8601 and XML Schema Part 2 Datatypes. Where both standards specify a representation for the same time coordinate type, the XML Schema form is identical to the ISO 8601 form. The XML Schema forms for the additional time coordinate types it supports are consistent with the overall approach in ISO 8601. In a similar way, this specification mandates the ISO 8601 forms and the XML Schema datatypes that support time coordinates specified herein, and extends the representation set in a way that is consistent with the ISO 8601 approach.

XML Schema Compliance Point

Implementations of the XML Schema Compliance Point shall implement all of the time coordinate representations that are valid values of the XML Schema datatypes specified in Table 18.1. The requirement for representations in these forms applies to all exchanges, not just XML-based exchanges.

The XML Schema Part 2 clause 3.2.7.4 “Order Relation on dateTime” does not apply. This specification describes a more comprehensive approach to ordering of time coordinates based on time sets, and mandates that interpretation of ordering for time coordinates. Therefore, implementations should not rely on standard XML software libraries for the order relation on “dateTime”.

For tools that conform only to this compliance point, the handling of time coordinates that have no XML Schema form is not specified. No support for such time coordinates is required, although conversion of Gregorian year day coordinates to Gregorian year month day coordinates is recommended.

Table 18.1 - Relationship between Date-Time time coordinates and standard forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>category of time coordinate</th>
<th>ISO 8601 type</th>
<th>XML Schema datatype</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date time</td>
<td>date and time of the day (4.3)</td>
<td>dateTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time of day coordinate</td>
<td>time of the day (4.2 generally)</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian year month day coordinate</td>
<td>Calendar date (complete representation 4.1.1.1)</td>
<td>date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian year month coordinate</td>
<td>Calendar date (reduced precision 4.1.1.2 a)</td>
<td>gYearMonth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian year coordinate</td>
<td>year (reduced precision 4.1.1.2 b)</td>
<td>gYear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian month day coordinate</td>
<td>Calendar date (truncated representation 4.1.1.3 d)</td>
<td>gMonthDay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian month coordinate</td>
<td>month (truncated representation 4.1.1.3 e)</td>
<td>gMonth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian day of month coordinate</td>
<td>day of the month (truncated representation 4.1.1.3 f)</td>
<td>gDay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian day of year coordinate</td>
<td>day of the year (truncated representation 4.1.3.2 b)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 18.1 - Relationship between Date-Time time coordinates and standard forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time coordinate type</th>
<th>Lexical Representation</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian year day coordinate</td>
<td>Ordinal date (complete representation 4.1.3.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO day of week coordinate</td>
<td>week date (truncated representation 4.1.4.3 g)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO week of year coordinate</td>
<td>calendar week (truncated representation 4.1.4.3 f)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO week day coordinate</td>
<td>week date (truncated representation 4.1.4.3 e)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO year week coordinate</td>
<td>week date (reduced precision 4.1.4.2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO year week day coordinate</td>
<td>week date (complete representation 4.1.4.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ISO 8601 Compliance Point

Implementations of the ISO 8601 Compliance point shall support all valid values of the XML Schema datatypes that appear in Table 18.1. In addition, implementations of this compliance point shall support the additional representations for the time coordinate types listed below. These additional lexical representations are, or are variants of, the formats already defined in ISO 8601. The design goal is to build upon ISO 8601 in as simple a manner as possible.

Table 18.2 specifies lexical representations for time coordinate types that are not supported by XML Schema datatypes. Several of these representations are specified in ISO 8601, as shown in the table. Tools shall generate and/or accept these representations using the “Extended format” described in ISO 8601.

In the representation formats specified in Table 18.2,

- “yyyy” represents a year number that should have four digits;
- “ddd” is a one- to three-digit number that indicates the day within the year (the ‘day of year’);
- “W” is the character ‘W’ – the week designator;
- “ww” is a one- or two-digit number that indicates the ISO week of year;
- “d” is a single-digit that indicates the ISO day of week number (where 1 represents Monday).

Table 18.2 - Interchange Representations for Time Coordinates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time coordinate type</th>
<th>Lexical Representation</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian year day coordinate</td>
<td>yyyy-ddd</td>
<td>[ISO 8601] clause 4.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO week of year coordinate</td>
<td>yyyy-Www</td>
<td>[ISO 8601] clause 4.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO year week coordinate</td>
<td>yyyy-Www-d</td>
<td>[ISO 8601] clause 4.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregorian day of year coordinate</td>
<td>----ddd</td>
<td>[ISO 8601] clause 4.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO day of week coordinate</td>
<td>W-d</td>
<td>[ISO 8601] clause 4.1.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An ISO day of week coordinate is represented by the week designator “W” (without an ISO week number), followed by one dash, followed by a single ISO day of week number.

An ISO week of year coordinate is represented by the week designator “W”, followed by a one- or two-digit ISO week of year number.

An ISO week day coordinate is represented by the week designator “W”, followed by a one- or two-digit ISO week of year number, followed by one dash and a single-digit ISO day of week number.

XML elements that are used to interchange *time coordinates* that may have any of the formats listed in Table 18.2 should have the “extendedDateTime” XML element type defined as:

```xml
<xs:simpleType name="extendedDateTime">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:string"/>
</xs:simpleType>
<xs:element name="extendedDateTime" type="extendedDateTime"/>
```

Conforming tools shall accept all ‘dateTime’ values as valid values of this “extendedDateTime” type. Conforming tools shall also accept the standard XML Schema “dateTime” datatypes as representations for the corresponding time coordinate types.

### Internet Time Compliance Point

Implementations of the Internet Time Compliance Point shall represent all *absolute time coordinate* instances as an amount of time since midnight, January 1, 1900. The amount of time is a *duration value* and shall be represented in the Internet Time form for duration values (see 1.2).

Internet Time cannot be used to represent any *relative time coordinate*. Internet Time cannot be used to represent any time point prior to January 1, 1900.

Implementations that support the Internet Time Compliance Point are encouraged to implement one of the other compliance points for more general uses of time coordinates.
Annex A - Attachments

(normative)

This annex lists the machine-readable attachments that are included in this specification, and identifies which are normative and which are informative. The latest version of these files can be found at: http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV.

Table A.1 - Machine-readable Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dtv-sbvr.xml</td>
<td>SBVR</td>
<td>SBVR interchange file derived from the text of this specification</td>
<td>normative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XMI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtv-uml.xml</td>
<td>UML</td>
<td>UML model of the Date-Time vocabulary, in standard XMI form. Validated by the OMG UML validator.</td>
<td>normative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtv.ocl</td>
<td>OCL</td>
<td>OCL constraints stripped out of the text of this specification. The plan is to eventually merge them into the UML model.</td>
<td>normative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtv.clif</td>
<td>CLIF</td>
<td>CLIF axioms stripped out of the text of this specification. Consistency checked via the Kojeware CLIF Validation Service at <a href="http://www.kojeware.com/clif-file-validator">http://www.kojeware.com/clif-file-validator</a>. Not yet validated semantically.</td>
<td>normative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtv-owl.zip</td>
<td>OWL</td>
<td>OWL models of parts of the specification, a ZIP of separate .owl ontology files. Validated using Pellet.</td>
<td>informative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtv-md.xml</td>
<td>XMI</td>
<td>UML model of the Date-Time vocabulary, in MagicDraw native form, with diagrams.</td>
<td>ancillary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Annex B - References

(informative)

The authors reviewed a number of standards documents and academic papers. These are listed here.

Allen

Alspaugh

BPMN

Casati

Davidson

Enhanced Time

Halpin 2007
Halpin, Terry, Temporal Modeling, four-part series:

Halpin 2008

Haley

Hayes

Hobbs 2004

Hobbs 2008

iCalendar

IEC 60050-111

IERS
International Earth Rotation and Reference Service. See www.iers.org


Pan


Parsons


QUDV


QUOMOS


SBVR


Schedulability


SI


Simons


SysML


TimeML


Time Services


UML Time


VIM


XML Schema


Zoneinfo

Olson, Ted and the International Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA), *Time Zone Database*, available at [http://iana.org/time-zones](http://iana.org/time-zones).
Annex C - Business Usage Guidelines

(informative)

The supporting document number is dtc/2015-02-11.
Annex D - Fundamental Concepts

(normative)

D.1 General

International standards, for example [VIM], [ISO 80000:3], and [ISO 18026] define duration as just one of many quantity kinds, and time scales as one of many kinds of coordinate systems. This permits the formation of derived quantities based on durations (e.g., velocity, which is length / duration), and multi-dimensional coordinate systems that include time as one dimension. Coordinate systems themselves depend upon mathematical concepts, such as sequences. The axioms related to time intervals depend upon mereology concepts.

Unfortunately, there is no existing SBVR vocabulary or ODM ontology that addresses these concepts. The authors recognize that they are out-of-scope for this specification, but felt it necessary to imagine how this Date-Time Vocabulary would fit into a complete schema that addresses them. Annex D summarizes that schema in the form of several SBVR vocabularies.

There are a few existing OMG efforts covering this topic that are referenced in Annex B. The most recent of these is [QUDV], but it models the concept ‘quantity’ differently than here because of limitations of UML and SysML. In particular, QUDV does not model the distinction between ‘quantity’ and ‘quantity value.’

There is one external group [QUOMOS] that is working in this area, and that is proposed as an OASIS Technical Committee effort called “Quantity and Unit of Measure Ontology Standard (QUOMOS).” As and when [QUOMOS] reaches completion, the contents of this section should be reviewed for possible alignment with [QUOMOS].

Sub clauses D.2 “Sequences” and D.4 “Mereology” are complete and consistent models of their topics and are normative.

Sub clause D.3 “Quantities Vocabulary” is informative because it addresses only the aspects of quantities and units of measure that are required by the Date-Time Vocabulary, and because the other groups mentioned above have the charter to fully address the topic.

D.2 Sequences (normative)

The ‘sequence’ concept models ordered collections of things in which the things are ordered by assigning numbers (indices) to them within the collection, as distinct from any particular properties of the things themselves. The model does not preclude the use of properties in creating indices, and it does not require the indices to be consecutive in the general case.

Regular sequences provide the mathematical foundation of time scales.

There are two somewhat different models of sequence that are in common use. Using UML terminology, we may call them the “composite model” and the “aggregation model.” In the composite model, the existence and conceptualization of the members is dependent on the existence and conceptualization of the sequence. In these sequences, the index of a member is intrinsic to the member – its meaning is bound up with its position in the sequence. This is the case with time concepts like months of year or hours of day: 2:00 is the hour of day that occurs immediately after 1:00; its definition depends on the sequence.

In the aggregation model, the members of the sequence have independent existence, with intrinsic properties that are independent of the sequence. The sequence conceptualizes (and imposes) an ordering on the members that is not intrinsic to the members themselves. In these sequences, the indices of the members are extrinsic – the member acquires the index by being included in the sequence, and it can have other indices in other sequences. In some such sequences, a
given member can occur more than once. A common example is a list of authorized suppliers in order of preference or total order volume. Similarly, time intervals exist without clocks, and although they are intrinsically ordered, they only acquire indices when we impose a standard clock and a time offset on them.

The model presented here is general enough to support both models, but each actual sequence will use it differently, depending on the nature of its members. The model below distinguishes between the things that are by definition elements of the sequence – the sequence positions – and things that exist independently and are ordered by the sequence – the members. Time scales, such as clocks and calendars, are defined to be sequences whose members are time points, such as ‘hour of day’. The sequence positions of each time scale (sequence) have indices that are used to number the time points that are their members. The application of time scales to the Time Axis, causes the assignment of time intervals as instances of the time points. Thus, one time interval in each day is an instance of the ‘hour of day’ with index 12, i.e., 12 o’clock.

---

**Sequences Vocabulary**

General Concept: terminological dictionary

Included Vocabulary: SBVR-DTV Vocabulary

Language: English

Namespace URI: http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#SequencesVocabulary

---

**D.2.1 General Sequence Concepts**

![Figure D.1 - Sequences](image_url)
**sequence**
Definition: set whose elements are ordered by their indices
Note: "Sequence" is a conceptual mechanism for ordering things. A sequence is made up of sequence positions (slots), each of which may have a member. These members are the things that participate in the sequence. For convenience, the things that are the members of the sequence positions of a sequence are also called the members of the sequence.
Note: In the general case, a given thing may participate in a sequence more than once, i.e., as more than one member of the same sequence. See 'regular sequence' for a kind of sequence where a thing is constrained to participate at most once in the sequence.
Note: Each sequence defines an ordering on its sequence positions, by assigning an integer index to each sequence position, and using the ordering of the integers to order the members. The index assignment may be based on some natural characteristics of the members, or it may be just sequential position numbers, or it may be some other numbering scheme associated with the meaning of the sequence. In general, the index assignments need not reflect any natural ordering of the members. That is, the ordering of the members of a sequence can be specific to the sequence concept.

**sequence position**
Synonym: slot
Definition: element of a given sequence
Note: A sequence is a set of sequence positions. Each sequence position is an element of the sequence that defines it, and no other.

**sequence has sequence position**
Synonymous Form: sequence position in sequence
Necessity: Each sequence position is of exactly one sequence.
CLIF Axiom: (forall (seq sp) (if ("sequence has sequence position" seq sp) (and (sequence seq) ("sequence position" sp) (foral (seq2) (if ("sequence has sequence position" seq2 sp) (= seq2 seq)) ))))
Possibility: Some sequence has no sequence positions.
Note: This verb concept is a specialization of SBVR’s 'thing is in set.'

**index**
Synonym: indices
Concept Type: role
General Concept: integer
Note: The basis for assigning a particular index to a given sequence position might be a characteristic of the member of the sequence position (such as weight, etc.). This technique would order the members by weight, or inversely by weight, depending on the index assignments.
Note: Negative indices are meaningful for time scales of years that extend before year zero.

**sequence position has index**

Synonymous Form: `index indexes sequence position`

Definition: the index is assigned to the sequence position and is used in ordering the sequence positions in the sequence.

Necessity: Each sequence position has exactly one index.

Necessity: If the index of some sequence position of some sequence equals the index of some sequence position of the sequence then sequence position is sequence position2.

CLIF Axiom: `(forall (seq sp1 sp2 x1 x2)
(if
  (and
    ("sequence has sequence position" seq sp1)
    ("sequence has sequence position" seq sp2)
    ("sequence position has index" sp1 x1)
    ("sequence position has index" sp2 x2)
    (= x1 x2))
  (= sp1 sp2)))`

CLIF Axiom: `(forall ((sp "sequence position"))
(exists ((x1 "integer"))
  (and
    ("sequence position has index" sp x1)
    (forall (x2)
      (if
        ("sequence position has index" sp x2)
        (= x1 x2))))))`

OCL Constraint: context sequence:
inv: self._'sequence position'->forAll(sp1 |
  self._'sequence position'->forAll(sp2 |
    indexOf(sp1) = indexOf(sp2) implies sp1 = sp2))

**sequence position1 precedes sequence position2**

Synonymous Form: `sequence position2 follows sequence position1`

Definition: the index of sequence position1 is less than the index of sequence position2.

CLIF Definition: `(forall (sp1 sp2 x1 x2)
(if
  (and
    ("sequence position has index" sp1 x1)
    ("sequence position has index" sp2 x2))
  (iff ("sequence position1 precedes sequence position2" sp1 sp2)
    (exists ((seq sequence))
      (and
        ("sequence has sequence position" seq sp1)
        ("sequence has sequence position" seq sp2)
        (< x1 x2))))))`
Note: This is the ordering relation on the sequence positions.

**next sequence position**

Definition: sequence position that succeeds a given sequence position
General Concept: sequence position
Concept Type: role
Note: In a finite sequence, the last position does not have a next sequence position.

**next sequence position succeeds sequence position**

Synonymous Form: sequence position is next after sequence position
Synonymous Form: sequence position is just before next sequence position
Synonymous Form: sequence position has next sequence position
Definition: next sequence position follows sequence position and the index of next sequence position is less than or equal to the index of each sequence position that follows sequence position.
Necessity: Each sequence position has at most one next sequence position.
CLIF Definition: (forall (sp nsp)
  (iff ("next sequence position succeeds sequence position" nsp sp)
    (and
      ("sequence position1 precedes sequence position2" sp nsp)
      (not (exists (sp2)
        (and
          ("sequence position1 precedes sequence position2" sp sp2)
          ("sequence position1 precedes sequence position2" sp2 nsp)))))
))

OCL Definition: context _'sequence position'
inv: self._'sequence position1 precedes sequence position2'
  ( self._'next sequence position'
    and self._'sequence position2'->forall(sp2 | self._'next sequence position'.index <= sp2.index)
)

**first position**

Concept Type: role
General Concept: sequence position

**sequence has first position**

Definition: the index of the first position is less than or equal to the index of each sequence position in the sequence
Necessity: Each sequence has at most one first position.
Possibility: A sequence has no first position.
Necessity: No sequence position precedes the first position of each sequence.
**last position**

Concept Type: role
General Concept: sequence position

**sequence has last position**

Definition: the index of the last position is greater than or equal to the index of each sequence position in the sequence

Necessity: Each sequence has at most one last position.
Possibility: A sequence has no last position.
Necessity: No sequence position succeeds the last position of each sequence.

### D.2.2 Sequence Members

This sub clause extends the sequence model to accommodate situations in which the sequence position itself is artificial – it represents the role of some thing that exists independently from the sequence.

![Figure D.2 - Sequence Members](image)

**member**

Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing

---

274 Date-Time Vocabulary v1.3
Definition: *thing* that is in a given *sequence position*, and by extension, any *thing* that participates in a given *sequence*

**sequence position has member**
- Synonymous Form: *slot contains member*
- Synonymous Form: *member is in sequence position*
- Synonymous Form: *member in sequence position*
- Necessity: Each *sequence position* has at most one *member*.
- Possibility: A *sequence position* has no *member*.
- Possibility: Each *thing* is the *member* of zero or more *sequence positions* in zero or more *sequences*.
- Note: For some *sequences*, the *sequence positions* have meaning in their own right, and may or may not have *members*. For example, the meaning of a *scale point* is a *quantity*.

**member participates in sequence**
- Synonymous Form: *sequence has member*
- Synonymous Form: *member of sequence*
- Synonymous Form: *member in sequence*
- Definition: The *sequence* has a *sequence position* that has an *index* that equals the *index*, and the *sequence position* has a *member* that is the *member*.

**member has index in sequence**
- Synonymous Form: *sequence has member with index*
- Definition: The *sequence* has a *sequence position* that has an *index* that equals the *index*, and the *sequence position* has a *member* that is the *member*.

Note: *Things* are assigned as *members* of a *sequence* to induce a desired ordering relation among the *things*. Thus, a given set of *things* may be ordered differently in different *sequences* by their weight, height, arrival time in a queue, service priority, etc.
("sequence position has index" sp index)
("sequence position has member" sp member))

OCL Definition: context sequence
def: _'member has index in sequence'
    (member: thing, i: integer, s: sequence)
    : Boolean =
    self._'sequence position'->exists(sp | sp.index = index and sp.member = member)

Note: This verb concept states that in a given sequence the position that is given by the index is occupied by the member. A given thing can have zero, one, or more than one indices in a given sequence.

Possibility: A thing has more than one index in the same sequence.

Note: The primary verb concept wording and the synonymous form given above are "sentential forms". Following the conventions described in Clause 6, the corresponding CLIF predicate and OCL operation yield a Boolean result. In addition, this verb concept has a "noun form" (member with index in sequence), for which the corresponding CLIF and OCL functions return the thing that plays the member role in the relationship.

Synonymous Form: member with index in sequence
Note: The Synonymous Form given above is an SBVR "noun form" that yields a member given an index and a sequence.

CLIF Definition: (forall (member index s)
    (iff (= member ("member with index in sequence" index
        s))
        ("member has index in sequence" member index s) ))

OCL Definition: context sequence
def: _'member with index in sequence'
    (index: integer, s sequence)
    : thing =
    self._'sequence position'->select(sp | sp.index = index).member

sequence is of concept
Definition: The concept corresponds to each member of the sequence

CLIF Definition: (forall (s c)
    (iff ("sequence is of concept" s c)
        (and
            (sequence s) (concept c)
            (forall (member)
                (if ("member participates in sequence" member s)
                    ("meaning corresponds to thing" c member))))
    )))

OCL Definition: context sequence
def: _'sequence is of concept'(c: concept)
    : Boolean =
    sequence._'sequence position'.member->forAll(m | 'concept corresponds to instance'(c m))

Necessity: Each sequence is of at least one concept.
Note: Constraints based on the verb concept 'sequence is of concept' limit each member to be an instance of the concept. If more than one such constraint is stated for the same sequence, every member must satisfy all such constraints.

Note: Such constraints can be relaxed as needed by specifying that a sequence is of any convenient more general concept of the members of the sequence. Since the concept 'thing' is a more general concept of all other object types, a sequence that 'is of thing' permits members of any type.

D.2.3 Index Origin

**index origin member**

Concept Type: role
Definition: member that is assigned the index that is the index origin value
Note: This is a primitive definition. Either 'index origin member' or 'index origin value' must be defined in terms of the other.
Note: For sequences that have a first member, the first member is usually designated as the index origin member. In a sequence that has no first member, the index origin member is usually determined by association to some real world event or property.
Example: The member with index 1875 (the year of the Convention du Mètre) is the index origin member of the Gregorian years scale.

**index origin value**

Concept Type: role
General Concept: integer
Note: The index origin value is most commonly either 0 or 1.
Example: The first member of time scales of hours, minutes, and seconds has index origin value 0 because these are counted from 0 by convention.
Example: The first member of time scales of years, months, weeks, and days has index origin value 1 because these are counted from 1 by convention.

**index origin position**

Concept Type: role
General Concept: sequence position

**sequence has index origin member**

Definition: The index origin member of the sequence is the member of the index origin position of the sequence.
Necessity: Each sequence has at most one index origin member.
CLIF Axiom: (forall (seq) (forall (iom) (if ("sequence has index origin member" seq iom) (and (forall (m) (if ("sequence has index origin member" seq m) (= m iom)))))))))
OCL Constraint: context sequence inv: sizeOf(self._'index origin member') <= 1
**sequence has index origin value**

Necessity: Each sequence has at most one index origin value.

CLIF Axiom:

```clif
(forall (seq) (forall (iov)
    (if ("sequence has index origin value" seq iov)
        (and
            (integer iov)
            (forall (iv2)
                (if ("sequence has index origin value" seq iv2)
                    (= iov iv2)))))
))
```

OCL Constraint:
```
inv: sizeOf(self._'index origin value') <= 1
```

**sequence has index origin position**

Necessity: Each sequence has at most one index origin position.

Necessity: The index of the index origin position equals the index origin value of the sequence.

CLIF Axiom:

```clif
(forall (s p)
    (iff ("sequence has index origin position" s p)
        (exists (iov)
            (if ("sequence has index origin value" s iov)
                ("sequence position has index" p iov)))
))
```

OCL Constraint:
```
inv: sequence._'index origin value' =
    sequence._'index origin position'.index
```

### D.2.4 Kinds of Sequences

This clause defines various sequence types in order to clarify the distinctions among and meaning of each type.

![Figure D.3 - Kinds of Sequences](image-url)
**consecutive sequence**

Definition: A *consecutive sequence* is a sequence in which consecutive sequence positions have consecutive indices.

CLIF Definition: \[
\forall (s) \left( \text{"consecutive sequence" s} \land \forall (sp1, sp2, x1, x2) \left( \left( \text{"sequence has sequence position" s sp1} \land \text{"next sequence position succeeds sequence position" sp2 sp1} \land \text{"sequence position has index" sp1 x1} \land \text{"sequence position has index" sp2 x2} \Rightarrow (x2 = (x1 + 1)) \right) \right) \right)\]

OCL Definition: context _'consecutive sequence'_
inv: self._'sequence position'->forall(sp | not (self._'first position'->exists() and sp = self._'first position') and self._'sequence position'.indexOf(sp) = 1 + self._'sequence position' ->indexOf(sp._'previous sequence position'))

Note: In a *consecutive sequence*, the indices of the members are consecutive integers.

**unique sequence**

Definition: A *unique sequence* is a sequence that has no member that is the member of more than one sequence position of the sequence.

CLIF Definition: \[
\forall (s) \left( \text{"unique sequence" s} \land \forall (sp1, sp2, t1, t2) \left( \left( \text{"sequence has sequence position" s sp1} \land \text{"sequence has sequence position" s sp2} \land \text{"sequence position has member" sp1 t1} \land \text{"sequence position has member" sp2 t2} \Rightarrow (t1 = t2) \right) \right) \right)\]

OCL Definition: context sequence
inv: self.member->forall(m | self._'sequence position'.member->isUnique(m | m = m))

Necessity: Each thing has at most one index in each unique sequence.
CLIF Axiom:  
(forall (thing (x1 integer) (x2 integer) (us "unique sequence"))  
   (if (and  
       ("member has index in sequence" thing x1 us)  
       ("member has index in sequence" thing x2 us) )  
       (= x1 x2) ))

OCL Constraint:  
context _'unique sequence'  

**regular sequence**

**Definition:** consecutive sequence that is a unique sequence

**CLIF Definition:**  
(forall (s)  
   (iff ("regular sequence" s)  
       (and  
       ("consecutive sequence" s)  
       ("unique sequence" s)))))

**Note:** Regular sequences are the basis of scales (clause D.3).

**finite sequence**

**Definition:** sequence that has a cardinality

**indefinite sequence**

**Definition:** sequence that does not have a cardinality

**Note:** This definition relies on the fact that 'set has cardinality' (in MRV) has the Necessity "Each set has at most one cardinality." An indefinite sequence has an unknown or unspecified number of elements, hence it does not have a 'cardinality'.

**Note:** 'Finite sequence' is used in this specification as the basis 'finite time scales', such as the 'Gregorian year of months scale'. 'Indefinite time sequence' is the basis of 'indefinite time scales' such as the 'Gregorian years scale'. The key distinction is that finite time scales have a specified number of sequence positions, whereas the number of sequence positions of indefinite time scales is not known.

**Note:** Different scientific, religious, and cultural traditions have varying views as to whether there is a first or last calendar year. This specification avoids taking a position about that by using the term 'indefinite sequence' rather than 'infinite sequence'.

**D.2.5 Sequence Member Relationships**

The following concepts are relationships that a sequence imposes on its members.
Figure D.4 - Sequence Member Relationships

**member₁ precedes member₂ in unique sequence**

Synonymous Form: **member₂ follows member₁ in unique sequence**

Definition: **member₁ participates in the unique sequence and member₂ participates in the unique sequence and each sequence position₁ of member₁ in the unique sequence precedes each sequence position₂ of member₂ in the unique sequence**

CLIF Definition:

```
(forall ((s sequence)(m1 thing)(m2 thing))
  (iff ("member₁ precedes member₂ in unique sequence" m1 m2 s)
    (and
      ("member participates in sequence" m1 s))
  )
```

Date-Time Vocabulary v1.3 281
"member participates in sequence" m2 s) (forall ((sp1 "sequence position") (sp2 "sequence position")) (if (and ("sequence position of member" sp1 m1) ("sequence position of member" sp2 m2)) ("sequence position1 precedes sequence position2" sp1 sp2)))))))

OCL Definition: context sequence def: _'member1 precedes member2 in unique sequence' (m1: thing, m2: thing) : Boolean = self.member->includes(m1) and self.member->includes(m2) and m1._'sequence position'->forall(sp1 | m2._'sequence position'->forall(sp2 | 'sequence position1 precedes sequence position2'(sp1, sp2)))

first member
Synonym: first
Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing
Definition: the member of the first position of a given sequence
Necessity: The concept 'first member' specializes the concept 'member'.

sequence has first member
Definition: the first member is the member of the first position of the sequence
CLIF Definition: (forall (s m) (iff ("sequence has first member" s m) (exists (first) (and ("sequence has first position" s first) ("sequence position has member" first m)))))

OCL Definition: context _'sequence'
def: _'sequence has first member' (s: _'sequence') : thing = self._'first position'.member

Necessity: A sequence has at most one first member.
Note: An indefinite sequence has no first member or no last member.

last member
Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing
Definition: the member of the last position of a given sequence
Necessity: The concept 'last member' specializes the concept 'member'.

Note: An indefinite sequence has no first member or no last member.
**sequence has last member**

**Definition:**
the last member is the member of the last position of the sequence

**CLIF Definition:**
(forall (s m)
  (iff ("sequence has last member" s m)
    (exists (last)
      (and
        ("sequence has last position" s last)
        ("sequence position has member" last m)))))

**OCL Definition:**
context _'sequence' def: _'sequence has last member
  (s: sequence) : thing =
    self._'last position'.member

**Necessity:**
A sequence has at most one last member.

**Note:**
An indefinite sequence has no first member or no last member.

**next member**

**Concept Type:** role
**General Concept:** thing

**next member is next after thing in unique sequence**

**Synonymous Form:**
thing has next member in unique sequence

**Synonymous Form:**
next member after thing in unique sequence

**Definition:**
thing is the member of exactly one sequence position in the unique sequence and
next member is the member of some sequence position of the unique sequence that succeeds the sequence position of the thing

**CLIF Definition:**
(forall (s nm m)
  (iff ("next member is next after thing in unique sequence"
        nm m s)
    (and
      ("unique sequence" s)
      (exists (sp nsp)
        (and
          ("sequence has sequence position" s sp)
          ("sequence position has member" sp m)
          ("next sequence position succeeds sequence position"
            nsp sp)
          ("sequence position has member" nsp nm) ))))

**OCL Definition:**
context 'unique sequence' def: 'next member is next after thing in unique sequence'
  (nm: thing, m: thing) : Boolean =
    self._'sequence position'.member->count(m) = 1
    and self._'sequence position'->select(member = m).
    member._'next sequence position'.member = nm

**Note:**
This fact type is meaningless if the thing does not appear in the unique sequence.

**Necessity:**
The last member of each sequence has no next member.
CLIF Axiom: (forall (s last)
  (if
    ("sequence has last member" s last)
    (not (exists (m)
      ("member is next after thing in sequence" m last s)))))

OCL Constraint: context sequence
inv: self._'last member'->exists() implies
  not self._'last member'._'next member'->exists()

Necessity: Each member that participates in a unique sequence and that has no next member in the unique sequence is the last member of the unique sequence.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (s m)
  (if
    ("sequence has member" s m)
    (not (exists (nm)
      ("next member is next after thing in sequence" nm m s)))))

OCL Constraint: context _'unique sequence'
inv: self.member->forAll(m |
  not m._'next member'->exists() implies m = self._'last member')

**previous member**

Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing

**previous member is just before thing in unique sequence**

Synonymous Form: thing has previous member in unique sequence
Definition: thing is the member of exactly one sequence position in the unique sequence and previous member is the member of some sequence position of the unique sequence that is just before the sequence position of the thing

CLIF Definition: (forall (s pm m)
  (iff
    ("previous member is just before thing in unique sequence"
      pm m s)
    (and
      ("unique sequence" s)
      (exists (sp psp)
        (and
          ("sequence has sequence position" s sp)
          ("sequence position has member" sp m)
          ("next sequence position succeeds sequence position"
            sp psp)
          ("sequence position has member" psp pm)))))

OCL Definition: context _'unique sequence'
def: _'previous member is just before member in unique sequence'(pm: thing, m: thing) : Boolean =
  self._'sequence position'.member->count(m) = 1
and self._'sequence position'->select(member = m).

'previous sequence position'.member = pm

Note: This fact type is meaningless if the thing does not appear in the unique sequence.

Necessity: The first member of each sequence has no previous member.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (s first)
  (if
    ("sequence has first member" s first)
    (not (exists (m)
      ("previous member is just before thing in sequence" m first s )))))

OCL Constraint: context sequence
inv: self._'first member'->exists() implies
    not self._'first member'._'previous member'->exists()

Necessity: Each member that participates in a unique sequence and that has no previous member in the unique sequence is the first member of the unique sequence.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (s m)
  (if
    (and
      ("sequence has member" s m)
      (not (exists (nm)
        ("previous member is just before thing in sequence" nm m s)
      )))
    ("sequence has first member" s m)))

OCL Constraint: context _'unique sequence'
inv: self.member->forAll(m |
    not m._'previous member'->exists()
    implies m = self._'first member'
)
D.2.6 Ordinals

These terms for ordinal numbers build on the definitions of ‘unique sequence’ and ‘first member’ above.

**Figure D.5 - Ordinals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>second member</th>
<th>second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synonym:</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concept Type:</td>
<td>role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Concept:</td>
<td>thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition:</td>
<td>the next member after the first member in a given unique sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necessity:</td>
<td>The concept ‘second member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**unique sequence has second member**

| Definition: | the unique sequence has a first member and the second member is next after the first member in the unique sequence |
third member
Synonym:  third
Concept Type:  role
General Concept:  thing
Definition:  the next member after the second member in a given unique sequence
Necessity:  The concept ‘third member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.

unique sequence has third member
Definition:  the unique sequence has a second member and the third member is next after the second member in the unique sequence

fourth member
Synonym:  fourth
Concept Type:  role
General Concept:  thing
Definition:  the next member after the third member in a given unique sequence
Necessity:  The concept ‘fourth member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.

unique sequence has fourth member
Definition:  the unique sequence has a third member and the fourth member is next after the third member in the unique sequence

fifth member
Synonym:  fifth
Concept Type:  role
General Concept:  thing
Definition:  the next member after the fourth member in a given unique sequence
Necessity:  The concept ‘fifth member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.

unique sequence has fifth member
Definition:  the unique sequence has a fourth member and the fifth member is next after the fourth member in the unique sequence

sixth member
Synonym:  sixth
Concept Type:  role
General Concept:  thing
Definition:  the next member after the fifth member in a given unique sequence
Necessity:  The concept ‘sixth member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.

unique sequence has sixth member
Definition:  the unique sequence has a fifth member and the sixth member is next after the fifth member in the unique sequence
seventh member
Synonym: seventh
Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing
Definition: the next member after the sixth member in a given unique sequence
Necessity: The concept ‘seventh member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.

unique sequence has seventh member
Definition: the unique sequence has a sixth member and the seventh member is next after the sixth member in the unique sequence

eighth member
Synonym: eighth
Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing
Definition: the next member after the seventh member in a given unique sequence
Necessity: The concept ‘eighth member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.

unique sequence has eighth member
Definition: the unique sequence has a seventh member and the eighth member is next after the seventh member in the unique sequence

ninth member
Synonym: ninth
Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing
Definition: the next member after the eighth member in a given unique sequence
Necessity: The concept ‘ninth member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.

unique sequence has ninth member
Definition: the unique sequence has an eighth member and the ninth member is next after the eighth member in the unique sequence

tenth member
Synonym: tenth
Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing
Definition: the next member after the ninth member in a given unique sequence
Necessity: The concept ‘tenth member’ specializes the concept ‘member’.

unique sequence has tenth member
Definition: the unique sequence has a ninth member and the tenth member is next after the ninth member in the unique sequence
**eleventh member**

Synonymous Form: eleventh
Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing
Definition: the next member after the tenth member in a given unique sequence
Necessity: The concept 'eleventh member' specializes the concept 'member'.

unique sequence has eleventh member

Definition: the unique sequence has a tenth member and the eleventh member is next after the tenth member in the unique sequence

**twelfth member**

Synonym: twelfth
Concept Type: role
General Concept: thing
Definition: the next member after the eleventh member in a given unique sequence
Necessity: The concept 'twelfth member' specializes the concept 'member'.

unique sequence has twelfth member

Definition: the unique sequence has an eleventh member and the twelfth member is next after the eleventh member in the unique sequence

D.2.7 Set Concepts

This sub clause defines additional verb concepts for SBVR 'set'.

![Set Concepts Diagram](image-url)

**Figure D.6 - Set concepts**
**set is of concept**

Definition: each element of the set is an instance of the concept

**CLIF Definition:**

\[
\text{(forall (s c) (iff} \\
\text{("set is of concept" s c) } \\
\text{ (and} \\
\text{ (set s) (concept c) } \\
\text{ (forall (e) } \\
\text{ (if ("set includes element" s e) (c e) ))})
\]

**OCL Definition:**

context set
def: _'set is of concept'(c: concept) : Boolean = 
set.element->forAll(e | 
c._'concept corresponds to instance'(e))

---

**set\(_1\) is set\(_2\) plus thing**

**Synonymous Form:** set\(_2\) plus thing

Definition: set\(_1\) includes the thing and set\(_1\) includes each element of set\(_2\), and each element of set\(_1\) is the thing or an element of set\(_2\)

**Description:** set\(_1\) is the combination of set\(_2\) and thing

**Note:** This verb concept supports adding an element to a set.

**CLIF Definition:**

\[
\text{(forall (s1 s2 t) (iff} \\
\text{("set1 is set2 plus thing" s1 s2 t) } \\
\text{ (and} \\
\text{ (set s1) (set s2) } \\
\text{ ("thing is in set" t s1) } \\
\text{ (forall (e) } \\
\text{ (if ("thing is in set" e s2) ("thing is in set" e s1)) } \\
\text{ (forall (e) } \\
\text{ (if ("thing is in set" e s1) } \\
\text{ (or ("thing is in set" e s2) (= e t))}))})
\]

**CLIF Definition:**

\[
\text{(forall (s1 s2 t) (iff} \\
\text{ (= s1 ("set plus thing" s2 t))} \\
\text{ ("set1 is set2 plus thing" s1 s2 t))})
\]

**OCL Definition:**

context set
def: _'set1 is set2 plus thing'(s2: set, t: thing) : Boolean = 
self.includes(t) and s2->forAll(t2: self.includes(t2))
and self.element->forAll(e: e = t or s2.includes(e))

**OCL Definition:**
context set
def: _'plus thing'(t: thing) : set = 
self.element->union(t)

**Example:**

\{'a', 'b', 'c'} is \{'a', 'b'} plus 'c'.
D.3 Quantities Vocabulary (informative)

Quantities model many of the concepts in the International Vocabulary for Measures [VIM].

---

**Quantities Vocabulary**

- General Concept: terminological dictionary
- Included Vocabulary: SBVR-DTV Vocabulary
- Language: English

---

D.3.1 Quantities

**Figure D.7 - Quantities**

**quantity**

- **Definition:** Property of a phenomenon, body, or substance, to which a number can be assigned with respect to a reference
- **Dictionary Basis:** VIM 1.1 'quantity'
- **Note:** The term 'quantity' is used here to refer to the abstraction of the properties - the amount of measurable "stuff" that can be compared between particular quantities. The "height of the Washington Monument" refers to a 'particular quantity;' "555 ft 5 inches" refers to a 'quantity value'.
- **Note:** This is not the SBVR concept 'quantity,' which is deprecated and not used in this model.
- **Example:** Second, kilogram, joule, meter. These are quantities in a general sense, which is what is meant here by 'quantity.'
- **Note:** A quantity as defined here is said to be a "scalar" as distinct from a "vector." However, a vector or a tensor whose components are quantities is also considered to be a quantity.
particular quantity

Definition: a property that is of an individual thing and is quantifiable as an instance of some quantity kind.

Note: The weight of a given person, the mass of the Earth, the speed of light, and the distance between New York and Paris are said to be "particular quantities."

Note: A particular quantity is given by a definite description, which identifies the individual thing and the property. Particular quantities are properties of particular things and are generally expressed by a term for the property and a quantity value.

Note: Particular quantities appear in fact models as individual concepts that refer to instances of 'quantity.' Thus, a conceptual schema might have the fact type "meeting lasts duration," where "duration" is a specialization of "quantity." (See the note about "duration" under "quantity kind.") A fact model might include the fact "last Monday’s meeting lasted 2hr 20min." The definite description "the duration of last Monday’s meeting" defines a particular quantity, an individual concept whose one instance is the quantity (thing) that is quantified by the quantity value "2 hr 20 min." "2 hr 20 min" is a compound quantity value of quantity kind "duration."

Reference Scheme: A definite description of the particular quantity.

quantity kind

Definition: categorization type for 'quantity' that characterizes quantities as being mutually comparable.

Concept Type: categorization type

Dictionary Basis: VIM 1.2 'kind of quantity'

Example: duration, mass, energy, length

Note: Every instance of 'quantity kind' is also a specialization of 'quantity'. So the concept 'duration' is an instance of 'quantity kind' and it is a specialization of 'quantity', i.e., it is a classifier of actual quantities. But a given duration (i.e., the duration of something) is an instance of 'duration' and thus a 'particular quantity,' not an instance of 'quantity kind'. For example, a year is not an instance of quantity kind; it is an instance of quantity, but not a category of quantity.

Note: The quantities "year" and "second" are instances of quantity, and they are both instances of the quantity kind 'duration' and are mutually comparable. Quantities of time given in years and seconds are comparable, although some transformation of quantity values (see below) is needed to compare them. Similarly 'metre' is an instance of 'length,' and 'foot' is another instance of 'length' that is comparable to 'metre,' although conversions are required when comparing values. But 'metre' is not comparable to 'second,' because 'length' and 'duration' are disjoint quantity kinds. Only quantities of the same kind are mutually comparable.

Note: All duration quantities are comparable regardless of the role they play – the particular properties they instantiate. The duration of the warranty on an automobile can be compared with the expected life of the battery, even though those are very different particular quantities. Similarly, the height of a tower can be compared to the distance one can see from the top, because they are both length quantities, even though they are unrelated properties.

Note: The concept 'height' is a role of quantities of the quantity kind 'length'. In principle, 'height' could be considered a category of 'quantity' (a sub-category of 'length') and therefore its own 'quantity kind'. The concept 'range of a weapon' is a different role of length quantities. If we want to treat the height of a target as comparable to the range of a weapon, it is inadvisable to treat height and range as different quantity kinds. This idea is the basis for the 'system of quantities' concept.
quantity has quantity kind

**Definition:** quantity is an instance of the category of quantity that is the quantity kind

**Necessity:** Each quantity has exactly one quantity kind.

**CLIF Axiom:**
\[
\text{(forall ((q quantity))}
\text{(exists ((qk "quantity kind")))}
\text{(and}
\text{("quantity has quantity kind" q qk))}
\text{(forall (qk2)}
\text{((if}
\text{("quantity has quantity kind" q qk2)}
\text{ (= qk2 qk) )) )))}
\]

**OCL Constraint:**
context quantity
inv: _'quantity kind'->allInstances(one qk | self._'quantity kind' = qk)

**Example:** hour (the duration) is an instance of 'duration' – a specific quantity of time. So the quantity kind of 'hour' is 'duration'.

**system of quantities**

**Definition:** set of quantities together with a set of non-contradictory equations relating those quantities

**Dictionary Basis:** VIM 1.3 'system of quantities'

**system of quantities defines base quantity**

**base quantity**

**Definition:** quantity kind in a conventionally chosen subset of a given system of quantities, where no subset quantity can be expressed in terms of the others

**Concept Type:** role

**Dictionary Basis:** VIM 1.4 'base quantity'

**Dictionary Basis:**

**Example:** The International System of Quantities (ISQ) comprises these base quantities (with their SI base measurement units):
- length (meter)
- mass (kilogram)
- duration (second)
- electric current (ampere)
- thermodynamic temperature (kelvin)
- amount of substance (mole)
- luminous intensity (candela)

These base quantities are not mutually comparable. All quantities of any one of these kinds are, however, mutually comparable. See also "quantity kind".

**system of quantities includes derived quantity**
**derived quantity**

Definition: A **quantity kind**, in a **system of quantities**, that is not a **base quantity** of the system but may be defined in terms of **base quantities** of the system.

Dictionary Basis: VIM 1.5 'derived quantity'

Example: velocity \(\text{length}/\text{time}\), mass density \(\text{mass}/(\text{length}^3)\)

### D.3.2 Measurement Units

**measurement unit**

Definition: A **quantity**, defined and adopted by convention, with which any other **quantity** of the same kind can be compared to express the ratio of the two **quantities** as a number.

Dictionary Basis: VIM 1.9 'measurement unit'

Example: **week**, **day**, **hour**, **minute**, **second**, kilogram, joule, meter

**system of units**

Definition: A **set** of **measurement units** associated with a **system of quantities**, together with a set of rules that assign one **measurement unit** to be the **base unit** for each **base quantity** in the **system of quantities** and a set of rules for the derivation of other units from the **base units**.

---

Figure D.8 - Measurement Units

A base unit is defined by a physical phenomenon, i.e., a 'definite description'.
Example: The International System of Units (SI) is a system of units.

**system of units is for system of quantities**

Necessity: Each system of units is for exactly one system of quantities.

CLIF Axiom:
(forall ((sou "system of units"))
  (exists ((soq "system of quantities"))
    (and
      ("system of units is for system of quantities" sou soq)
      (forall (soq2)
        (if ("system of units is for system of quantities" sou soq2)
          (= soq2 soq)))))

OCL Constraint: context '_system of units'
  self._system of quantities'-size() = 1

**system of units defines measurement unit for quantity kind**

Synonymous Form: measurement unit is defined for quantity kind by system of units

Definition: The system of units identifies the measurement unit as the reference measurement unit for the quantity kind.

Note: A system of units defines one base unit for each base quantity in the system of quantities that it is for. It may define additional measurement units (derived units) for the same quantity kinds. It may define derived units for derived quantities, or it may define a mechanism for expressing derived units.

**system of units defines base unit**

**base unit**

Definition: measurement unit that is defined for a base quantity by a system of units

Concept Type: role

Dictionary Basis: VIM 1.10 'base unit'

Dictionary Basis:

Note: Quantity units that are not base units are derived units.

Example: See the example SI units under "base quantity".

**system of units defines derived unit**

**derived unit**

Definition: measurement unit for a derived quantity

Dictionary Basis: VIM 1.11 'derived unit'

Dictionary Basis:

Note: Every derived unit is defined in terms of base units

Example: 1 minute = 60 seconds

Example: 1 stere = 1 metre³

Example: 1 inch = 0.0254 metre
International System of Units

**Synonym:** SI

**Definition:** The system of units that is defined for the International System of Quantities by the International Standard ISO 80000.

**Source:** VIM 1.16.

---

### D.3.3 Quantity values

**quantity value**

**Definition:** number and measurement unit together giving magnitude of a quantity

**Dictionary Basis:** VIM 1.19 ‘quantity value’

**Note:** The quantity expressed by a quantity value is the quantity whose ratio to the measurement unit is the number.

**Example:** 2 days, 3.5 hours, 150 lb, 45.5 miles

---

**quantity value quantifies quantity**

**Synonymous Form:** quantity is quantified as quantity value

**Synonymous Form:** quantity value of quantity

**Synonymous Form:** quantity value expresses quantity

**Definition:** The quantity value gives the magnitude of the quantity.

**Possibility:** More than one quantity value may quantify a particular quantity.

**Example:** The duration of a meeting is a particular quantity that might be quantified as "1 hour" or as "6 minutes".
D.4 Mereology (normative)

Mereology is the study [Simons] [Casati] of the relationships among whole things and their parts. This specification relies upon the following mereology axioms, among others, to define the properties of time intervals.

---

**Mereology Vocabulary**

General Concept: terminological dictionary
Included Vocabulary: SBVR-DTV Vocabulary
Language: English

---

![Figure D.10 - Mereology](image)

**whole**

- Concept Type: role
- General Concept: thing

**part**

- Concept Type: role
- General Concept: thing

**part is part of whole**

- Synonymous Form: whole includes part
- Definition: The part is a component of the whole.
- Note: There are a number of axioms of mereology that apply to the concept 'part is part of whole.' The following 3 axioms specify only that subset of those axioms that are needed by this...
specification. This subset is needed to define the partial ordering relationship among
time intervals.

Note: Axiom of reflexivity: every part is part of itself.

Necessity: Each part is part of the part.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (part) ("part of" part part))

OCL Constraint: context thing inv: self.part->exists(self)

Note: Axiom of antisymmetry: two distinct parts cannot be part of each other.

Necessity: If the part is part of the whole and the whole is part of the part then the part is the whole.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((part thing) (whole thing)) (if (and ("part of" part whole) ("part of" whole part)) (= part whole)))

OCL Constraint: context thing inv: self.whole->exists(p | p.whole ->exists(self)) implies self = self.whole

Note: Axiom of transitivity

Necessity: If the part is part of some whole and the whole is part of some part3 then the part is part of part3.

CLIF Axiom: (forall ((part thing) (whole thing) (part3 thing)) (if (and ("part of" part whole) ("part of" whole part3)) ("part of" part part3)))

OCL Constraint: context thing inv: self.whole->exists(whole | whole.whole->exists(part3 | part3 implies self ._'part of'(part3)))

The combination of the reflexivity, anti symmetry, and transitivity axioms define a partial ordering among things that have the part is part of whole relationship.

thing1 overlaps thing2

Definition: there exists a thing that is part of thing1 and that is part of thing2.

CLIF Definition: (forall (thing1 thing2) (iff (overlaps thing1 thing2) (exists (thing3) (and ("part of" thing3 thing1) ("part of" thing3 thing2)))))

OCL Definition: context thing def: self.overlaps(thing2: thing): Boolean = self.part->exists(thing3 | thing2.part->exists(thing3))

Note: Two things overlap if they have some part in common.
Dictionary Basis: It is obvious from the definition that 'thing1 overlaps thing2' is symmetric.

Necessity: If a thing1 overlaps a thing2, then thing2 overlaps thing1.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (thing1 thing2) (iff (overlaps thing1 thing2) (overlaps thing2 thing1)))

OCL Constraint: context thing inv: self.overlaps(thing2) eqv thing2.overlaps(self)

**part is a proper part of whole**

Definition: the part is part of the whole and the whole is not part of the part

CLIF Definition: (forall ((whole thing) (part thing)) (iff ("proper part " part whole) (and ("part of" part whole) (not ("part of" whole part)))))

OCL Definition: context thing inv: self._'proper part'->forall(pp | pp <> self)

Note: A proper part is a part that is not the whole.

Axiom of supplementation: If a whole has a proper part, then it has more than one proper part.

Necessity: If a part1 is a proper part of a whole then there exists a part2 that is a proper part of the whole and part2 does not overlap part1.

CLIF Axiom: (forall (part1 whole) (if ("proper part" part1 whole) (exists (part2) (and ("proper part" part2 whole) (not (overlaps part2 part1) ) ))))

OCL Constraint: context thing inv: self._'proper part'->forall(part1 | self._'proper part'->exists(part2 | not part2.overlaps(part1)))
Annex E - Formalizing English Tense and Aspect

(informative)

E.1 General

The normative clauses of this specification deal the semantics of time as used natural languages. This Annex describes how propositions that are given in English language syntax may be formulated using the Date-Time Vocabulary.

E.2 Syntax and Semantics of Time

Many natural languages have built-in syntactical mechanisms for expressing when an action occurs relative to the time of utterance or writing, or relative to the occurrence of another event. They also have standard ways of indicating whether and when an action is progressing or is accomplished. These mechanisms include the use of affixes with verbs, called tense, and the use of auxiliary verbs together with the main verb of a clause, called aspect. Not all languages have the same set of these kinds of mechanisms.

The terms ‘tense’ and ‘modal’ are used with somewhat different connotations when referring to syntax or semantics. In syntactic theory, ‘tense’ refers to different verb forms used to denote different times: past, present, or future. The term ‘tense’ can also be used to refer to the semantics of a temporal expression: the past tense, the present tense, the future tense. All languages incorporate mechanisms to express such semantics, but different languages have different syntactical mechanisms for doing so. Confusion sometimes arises in English, which has verb forms only for present tense and past tense. Consequently, it is common for some authors to say that English has only two tenses, past and present, and no future tense. At the same time, it is often said that the future tense in English is expressed using the auxiliary verb ‘will’. In this annex, ‘tense’ refers to verb forms that express past or present time, and ‘aspect’ to the use of auxiliaries to generate different senses of past, present, and future time. In the normative clauses of the specification, ‘tense’ refers to the semantics of past, present, or future time, without regard to the syntactical mechanisms employed to express time in any language.

The term ‘modal’ can be confused with ‘modality.’ In this annex, ‘modal’ is a grammatical term that refers to a modal verb (see ‘modal’ below). ‘Modality’ is a logical term, used in SBVR, to refer to the mood of a proposition as involving the affirmation of either possibility, impossibility, necessity, contingency, obligation, or permission. SBVR includes a modal logic for these modalities, including modal formulae and modal negation rules. This specification does not provide a temporal logic for the temporal modality, rather temporal concepts are handled by the introduction of first order concepts and fact types defined in the normative clauses of this specification. No temporal logical operations are introduced in this specification. Negation of propositions involving time is treated conventionally as logical negation as specified in SBVR.

English syntax involving modal auxiliary verbs serves to denote both the tense and the logical mood of a proposition. The meaning depends on the particular auxiliary verbs used. A temporal connotation can be associated with each auxiliary verb, such that auxiliary verbs carry both a temporal connotation and a mood. The following table gives some examples.
Logical negation can be indicated by using *not* with an auxiliary verb; only a few examples are shown. *Always, never, or not ever* can be used with some modal auxiliary verbs to indicate *at all times, or not at any time*, as the case may be. Some words that serve as auxiliary verbs can have other grammatical roles as well. Time frame and modality can be expressed by means other than auxiliary verbs; this annex focuses on the behavior of English verbs in referring to time.

### E.3 Organization of This Annex

This specification includes fact types that accurately capture the meaning of relationships between states of affairs and time, but the fact type forms needed for precise definition are not idiomatic. This annex describes a way to accommodate idiomatic English expressions involving time, giving rules for mapping such expressions to concepts provided in this specification preparatory to creating closed logical formulations of the idiomatic expression. This treatment is informative, not normative; other approaches are possible. It is extensive but not exhaustive; the most common cases are treated, but not all possibilities. A formal grammar of the tense and aspect in English is provided, followed by a general algorithm for performing the syntax-to-semantics transformations for the twelve grammatical categories. Finally, a table of specific cases of the use of tense and aspect in English is provided.

This annex only describes formulations in which time is denoted by verbs. Other temporal constructs, such as the use of literal duration values and time coordinates and expressions involving relationships between time periods, are not discussed here.

This annex effectively extends the modal operations described in SBVR Annex F The RuleSpeak® Business Rule Notation, to include time, but stops short of being a full treatment of temporal modality.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary Verb</th>
<th>Time Frame</th>
<th>Modality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can not</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>impossibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do not</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does not</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did not</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>might</td>
<td>past*, future</td>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>past*, future</td>
<td>obligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>always</td>
<td>necessity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>necessity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>past*, future</td>
<td>contingency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* with have
E.4 Definitions

The following definitions are excerpted from Sag, Wasow, and Bender, *Syntactic Theory, Second Edition*, Stanford University, Center for the Study of Language and Information (2003), Glossary.

**tense** Finite verbs come in different form depending on the time they denote; these forms are called ‘tenses’. English has present and past tense, exemplified by the present tense forms *walk* and *walks*, and by the past tense form *walked*. Some languages also have future tenses, but English uses other means (e.g., the modal [q.v.] *will*) to express future time.

**aspect** Many languages have special grammatical elements for locating in time the situation referred to. Among the temporal notions often expressed are whether situations are in process or completed and whether they occur repeatedly. These notions are often called ‘aspect,’ and words or affixes whose function is to express aspect are called ‘aspectual markers.’ *See also* perfective, progressive.

**finite verb** A finite verb is one that is marked for tense [q.v.] (present or past, in English).

**modal** The English verbs *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, and *would*, along with their negated forms (*can’t*, etc.) are referred to as ‘modals’ or ‘modal verbs.’ They share the following properties: they function only as finite verbs [q.v.]; they exhibit auxiliary behavior (negation, inversion, contraction, and ellipsis); they take base VP [verb phrase] compliments; and they show no agreement [q.v.] (i.e., no third-person singular –s suffix). Some other languages have similar syntactically distinctive classes of words expressing necessity, possibility, obligation, and permission; these are also known as modals.

**agreement** In many languages, the form of certain elements can vary to indicate such properties such as person [referring to the speaker, the hearer, or third parties], number [referring to single entities or multiple entities], gender, etc. Often, these variations are marked with affixes. Some grammatical relationships between pairs of linguistic elements require they agree on these properties. In English, for example, present tense verbs are marked to indicate whether the subjects are third-person singular (with the suffix –s), and nouns indicate plurality (also with a suffix –s). The systematic covariation of the forms of the subject and verb is called ‘subject-verb agreement’. Similarly, pronouns must agree with their antecedents in person, number, and (if third-person) gender.

**perfective** Many languages have special verb forms or constructions used to indicate that the event denoted by the verb is completed. These are referred to as ‘perfective’ (or just ‘perfect’) in aspect. The English perfective involves the combination of *have* with a past participle [q.v.], as in *The dog has eaten the cake*. *See also* aspect.

**progressive** Special verb forms or construction used to indicate that the event denoted by the verb is in progress are referred to as ‘progressive’ aspect. The English progressive involves combination of *be* with a present participle [q.v.], as in *The dog is eating the cake*. *See also* aspect.

**participle** Certain nonfinite verbs – usually ones that share some properties with adjectives – are referred to as ‘participles.’ English has three types of participles: present participles, which end in –ing and usually follow some form of *be*; past participles, which usually end in –ed or –en and follow some form of *have*; and passive participles, which look exactly like past participles but indicate the passive voice [q.v.]. The three participles of *eat* are illustrated in the following sentences:

(i) Termites are eating the house.
(ii) Termites have eaten the house.
(iii) The house was eaten by termites.

E.5 English Grammar of Tense and Aspect

English grammar for tense and aspect can be defined as follows, using Extended Backus Nauer Form notation (ISO/IEC 14977 Information technology – Syntactic metalanguage - Extended BNF). ‘::=’ means ‘is defined as.’ Each ‘ ::=’ statement is a
production rule. Each production rule is terminated by ‘;’. The order of the symbols on the right hand side of each production rule is significant, unless delimited by ‘|’. ‘|’ means ‘or’, a choice. Brackets ‘[]’ indicate the element is optional. Quoted words are literals. Comments are included between ‘(*’ and ‘*)’.

S ::= NP AUX VP; (* S–sentence, NP–noun phrase, VP–verb phrase *)
AUX ::= [MODAL] [PERF] [PROG];  (* auxiliary verb *)
MODAL ::= ‘can’ | ‘could’ | ‘may’ | ‘might’ | ‘must’ | ‘shall’ | ‘should’ | ‘used’ | ‘will’ | ‘would’;
PERF ::= ‘have’ | ‘has’ | ‘had’; (* perfective *)
PROG ::= ‘is’ | ‘are’ | ‘was’ | ‘were’ | ‘be’ | ‘been’; (* progressive *)

**Additional Rules for Auxiliaries (AUX)**

1. Auxiliaries are optional.
2. Auxiliaries precede any non-auxiliary verb.
3. Auxiliaries determine the form of the following verb.
4. Auxiliaries can co-occur with each other, but only in a fixed order.
5. Auxiliaries of any given type cannot iterate.

The modals all indicate future time. They have the additional property of expressing necessity, possibility, obligation, or permission, as discussed in SBVR.

Not all combinations generated by the above grammar are valid English. Other rules apply, not given, such as subject-verb agreement. *Not, never, always, or not ever* can be used with some modals; these grammatical details are outside the scope of this annex, but the methods of this annex can be extended to include them. The table in E.6 gives a listing of grammatical constructs that appear regularly in English.

Reference: Sag, Wasow, and Bender (ibid.), pp.392-394.

**E.6 Formulating Tense and Aspect**

The general approach used here to formulate a sentence involving tense or aspect is as follows:

1. Transform the sentence into a proposition based on the applicable fact type form in the conceptual schema, noting the original tense and aspect.
2. Identify the situation kind that the base proposition describes.
3. Restrict the situation kind by instantiating one or more of the fact types defined in this specification involving states of affairs and time, as noted in 1.
4. Create closed logical formulations that mean the base proposition and its restrictions, as described in SBVR.

**Transform to a base proposition**

All propositions in SBVR are considered to be true or false when considered with respect to a given fact model. A proposition might be true when considered with respect to one fact model, and false when considered with respect to another. Each fact model is taken to be a snapshot of the state of the universe of discourse at some time. The fact model is tantamount to a
database, and the veracity of each proposition is based on the facts in the database at the time of the snapshot, which time may or may not be stated. This is standard SBVR.

Propositions in standard SBVR are expressed preferably in the simple present tense when finite verbs are used. Such propositions are considered untensed, as they apply to any fact model representing the state of the universe at the snapshot time of the fact model. Propositions involving non-finite verbs are also considered untensed in standard SBVR.

This specification includes the concept now, which is the current time, or present. When evaluating propositions using this specification, now is the snapshot time of the fact model with respect to which the propositions are being evaluated.

Transforming a proposition into an base form involves changing the verb to the tense of the applicable fact type in the conceptual schema, maintaining subject-verb agreement.

For example, the present perfect progressive sentence “Acme has been trading with Xycore” transforms to untensed “Acme trades with Xycore,” with the notation that the original is present perfect progressive. These sentences are both based on the fact type \texttt{company, trades with company}.

The guidance is generally not to encode tense or aspect into fact type forms unless the domain model specifically requires a particular tense or aspect for that fact type. Consider this example, “Six tasks have completed on May 5, 2010” may be based on the fact type \texttt{task completed on time point}.” This fact type has an intransitive past tense verb. The conceptual schema has already restricted facts of this type to past or perfected. The example transforms to “Six tasks completed on May 5, 2010” with a notation that the original is present perfect. A different conceptual schema might include the fact type \texttt{task completes on time point} instead. The proposition then transforms to “Six tasks complete on May 5, 2010” with the same present perfect notation. The \texttt{completes on}” fact type, unlike the \texttt{completed on}” version, could be used for facts about future planned completions (\texttt{will complete on}). This illustrates that there is a certain economy in using simple-present fact type forms in domain models: every different tense and aspect variation of these sentences is based on the same fact type and transforms to the same untensed form.

\textbf{Identify the situation kind}

The situation kind of interest is the one that is described by the transformed sentence, the base proposition.

\textbf{Restrict the situation kind}

The situation kind is restricted by involving it in a role in an instance of appropriate fact type(s) from this specification. Which fact types to use depends on the tense and aspect of the original sentence, as noted at the time the base proposition was created. Create a fact instance of each of the appropriate fact types.

\textbf{Create closed logical formulations}

A closed logical formulation is created for the conjunction of the base proposition and the restricting facts. This constitutes the closed logical formulation of the original sentence.
### E.7 Mapping Tense and Aspect to the Date-Time Vocabulary

This table is extensive but not exhaustive. Different modals can be substituted for ‘will,’ with other restrictions in the logical formulation (e.g., obligatory). In some of the examples, the ‘now’ time is apparently in the past, to accord with the history of James Joyce.

#### Table E.2 - Mapping Tense and Aspect to the Date-Time Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODAL</th>
<th>PERF sg/pl</th>
<th>PROG sg/pl</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Grammatical Term</th>
<th>Example:</th>
<th>Date-Time Vocabulary Fact Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>present</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>Joyce writes Ulysses.</td>
<td>None. This is the base situation kind (s) s: “Joyce writes Ulysses”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>past</td>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>Joyce wrote Ulysses.</td>
<td>s is in the past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>infinitive</td>
<td>Joyce used to write Ulysses.</td>
<td>s is in the past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>present</td>
<td>future simple</td>
<td>Joyce will not write Ulysses.</td>
<td>s is in the future and s is not an actuality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is/are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>present</td>
<td>present progressive</td>
<td>Joyce is writing Ulysses in 1919.</td>
<td>s holds within 1919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was/were</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>past progressive, imperfective</td>
<td>Joyce was writing Ulysses in 1919.</td>
<td>s is in the past and s holds within 1919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>future progressive</td>
<td>Joyce will not be writing Ulysses in 2012.</td>
<td>s is in the future and s does not hold within 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has/have</td>
<td></td>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>present perfective</td>
<td>Joyce has written Ulysses.</td>
<td>s is accomplished</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had/had</td>
<td></td>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>past perfective, pluperfect</td>
<td>Joyce had written Ulysses by 1922.</td>
<td>s is in the past and s is accomplished and s occurs before 1922</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>future perfective</td>
<td>Joyce will have written Ulysses by 1922.</td>
<td>s is in the future and s is accomplished and s occurs before 1922</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has/have</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>present participle</td>
<td>present perfect progressive</td>
<td>Joyce has been writing Ulysses in 1919.</td>
<td>s holds within 1919 and s is accomplished</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>present participle</td>
<td>pluperfect progressive</td>
<td>Joyce had been writing Ulysses in 1919.</td>
<td>s is in the past and s holds within 1919 and s is accomplished</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>present participle</td>
<td>future perfect progressive</td>
<td>By the end of 1920, Joyce will have been writing Ulysses for 33 months.</td>
<td>s is in the future and s holds during December 1920 – 33 months</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Annex F - Vocabulary Registration Vocabulary

(normative)

F.1 Vocabularies Presented in this Document

This annex formally lists the vocabularies provided by the Date-Time Vocabulary specification.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date-Time Vocabulary Registration Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Concept: terminological dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: This vocabulary formally registers all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the vocabularies specified in this document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace URI:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#DTVRegistrationVocabulary">http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#DTVRegistrationVocabulary</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time Infrastructure Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Concept: terminological dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description: The primary purpose of this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocabulary is to enable the definition of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>various kinds of calendars, such as fiscal,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunar, or religious calendars. Most end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>users will use one of the calendars defined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in this document and should not need many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the concepts defined here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Clause 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace URI:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#TimeInfrastructureVocabulary">http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#TimeInfrastructureVocabulary</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Duration Values Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Concept: terminological dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description: Duration values are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amounts of time stated in terms of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one or more time units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Clause 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace URI:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#DurationValuesVocabulary">http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#DurationValuesVocabulary</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calendars Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Concept: terminological dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description: Calendars use time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scales to impose structure on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Clause 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace URI:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#CalendarsVocabulary">http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#CalendarsVocabulary</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gregorian Calendar Vocabulary
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: The Gregorian Calendar is the standard calendar, used worldwide.
Note: See Clause 11.
Namespace URI: http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#GregorianCalendarVocabulary

ISO Week Calendar Vocabulary
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: Defines the standard calendar based on 7-day weeks.
Note: See Clause 12.
Namespace URI: http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#ISOWeekCalendarVocabulary

Time of Day Vocabulary
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: Defines the time scales, time points, and time coordinates that comprise the calendar day.
Note: See Clause 13.

Internet Time Vocabulary
See: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: Internet Time is the calendar of the Network Time Protocol (NTP), published by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).
Note: See Clause 14.
Namespace URI: http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#InternetTimeVocabulary

Indexical Time Vocabulary
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: Indexical terms for time periods that are in common business use.
Note: See Clause 15.

Situations Vocabulary
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: A vocabulary that relates situations to time intervals and durations.
Note: See Clause 16.
Namespace URI: http://www.omg.org/spec/DTV/20160301/dtv-sbvr.xml#SituationsVocabulary
**Schedules Vocabulary**
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: Schedules relate repeating situations to time.
Note: See Clause 17.

**Sequences Vocabulary**
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: Model of ordered collections of things in which the things are ordered by assigning numbers (indices) to them within the collection, as distinct from any particular properties of the things themselves.
Note: See Annex D.2.

**Quantities Vocabulary**
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: A minimal set of the concepts defined in VIM.
Note: See Annex D.3.

**Mereology Vocabulary**
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: Concepts about the relationship of wholes and parts.
Note: See Annex D.4.

**SBVR-DTV Vocabulary**
General Concept: terminological dictionary
Language: English
Description: Selected concepts adopted from the SBVR Meaning and Representation Vocabulary or the SBVR Vocabulary for Describing Business Vocabularies.

Various vocabularies, standards, and other publications that are referenced in the SBVR aspects of this specification are formally named as SBVR “individual constants” here.
F.2 External Vocabularies and Namespaces

**BIPM**

General Concept: vocabulary

**IEC 60050-111**

General Concept: vocabulary

**ISO 18026**

General Concept: vocabulary

**ISO 80000-3**

General Concept: vocabulary

**ISO 8601**

General Concept: vocabulary

**NODE**

Definition: The publication named: *New Oxford Dictionary of English*

**NTP**

General Concept: vocabulary

**SBVR Vocabulary**

General Concept: vocabulary
Definition: the vocabulary for terminological dictionaries/ontologies and rulebooks version 1.0 as specified in [OMG formal/08-01-02] available at [http://www.omg.org/spec/SBVR/1.0/](http://www.omg.org/spec/SBVR/1.0/)

Note: This vocabulary is a combination of the following: *Meaning and Representation Vocabulary, Logical Formulation of Semantics Vocabulary, Vocabulary for Describing Business Vocabularies,* and *Vocabulary for Describing Business Rules*. The specific concepts from the SBVR Vocabulary that are used by the Date-Time Vocabulary are inventoried in the SBVR-DTV Vocabulary.

SI
General Concept: vocabulary

VIM
General Concept: vocabulary
Annex G - UML Profile for the SBVR Elements used in the Date-Time Vocabulary

(normative)

G.1 General

This annex specifies the stereotypes that are used to mark up UML model elements in the DTV specification.

A general UML Profile for SBVR concepts has not been developed by the OMG. It is expected that such a profile will be developed in the future. At such time, this Annex and the corresponding UML stereotypes in the DTV UML model will be superseded.

The UML metaclass Class is depicted in the diagram because it plays roles in stereotyped relationships. The UML metaclasses Association and Dependency are not depicted. They serve only as the UML base elements for some of the defined stereotypes.

G.2 Concept types

The SBVR term concept type refers to a concept whose instances are concepts. Two stereotypes are introduced to support this notion.

![Concept types diagram]

**Figure G.1 - Concept types**

**G.2.1 Stereotype «concept type»**

The stereotype «concept type» characterizes a UML Class as an SBVR concept type. In UML terms, it is a classifier whose instances are classes.

**G.2.2 Stereotype «instance of»**

The stereotype «instance of» characterizes a UML Dependency as representing the relationship between a UML Class (representing an SBVR concept) and a concept type that corresponds to it. That is, the Dependency can be read "Class X is an instance of concept type Y."
The relationship of the «instance of» Dependency to the (client) Class that is the instance is represented in the «instance of» element by the Tag "instance".

The relationship of the «instance of» Dependency to the (supplier) Class that is the concept type is represented in the «instance of» element with the Tag "type".

## G.3 Categorization

The SBVR term **categorization type** refers to a **concept type** whose instances are subtypes of a common base concept. A **categorization scheme** for the common base concept is a specific set of subtypes that are mutually exclusive. Three stereotypes are introduced to support this notion.

### G.3.1 Stereotype «categorization type»

The stereotype «categorization type» characterizes a UML Class as an SBVR **categorization type**.

A categorization type is similar to a UML Powertype. The instances of a Powertype are all the subclasses of a given Class. The instances of a **categorization type** are all the **categories** (specializations) of a given **general concept**, which is represented in UML by a Class.

The relationship of the **categorization type** to the Class that is the general concept that the categorization type is for is represented in the «categorization type» element by the Tag "general concept".

By comparison, the extension of categorization type is a particular set of subclasses of a given Class that are mutually exclusive. Only in some cases is the extension of a UML Powertype a set of subclasses that are mutually exclusive, partly because the Powertype necessarily includes all of the subclasses of the categorized Class.

Each categorization type has a «for general concept» Dependency on a 'base class' that is the "common base concept" of the instances.
G.3.2 Stereotype «for general concept»

The stereotype «for general concept» characterizes a UML Dependency as representing the relationship between a categorization type and the general concept that it categorizes. The Dependency is the diagram element that shows the relationship. The Dependency can be read "Categorization type X is for general concept Y."

The relationship of the «for general concept» Dependency to the (client) categorization type is represented in the «for general concept» element by the Tag "categorization type".

The relationship of the «for general concept» Dependency to the (supplier) Class that is the general concept is represented in the «for general concept» element with the Tag "general concept".

G.3.3 Stereotype «categorization scheme»

The SBVR term categorization scheme refers to a specific set of categories of a common general concept that are mutually exclusive. The stereotype «categorization scheme» characterizes a UML GeneralizationSet as a categorization scheme.

The relationship of the categorization scheme to the Class that is the general concept that the categorization scheme is for is represented in the «categorization scheme» element by the Tag "general concept".

The relationship of the categorization scheme to the Classes that are the mutually exclusive categories that the categorization scheme includes is represented in the «categorization scheme» element by the Tag "category".

G.4 Verb Concepts

The SBVR term verb concept refers to a concept whose instances are states, activities or events. A verb concept is said to have verb concept roles that characterize the participation of individual objects in those states, activities or events.

Verb concepts that involve only one or two participant objects can be represented in UML using Attributes and binary Associations. In a binary Association, the multiplicity on an Association End represents the number of instances of the verb concept that each instance of the other role can participate in, i.e., the number of times an instance of that class can play that role.

In theory, a verb concept involving more than two roles can be represented in UML by an N-ary Association. Support for N-ary associations in UML v2.4 tools is highly variable. For this reason, this specification represents a verb concept with 3 or more participating verb concept roles as a Class with a «verb concept» stereotype. Three stereotypes are introduced to support this approach.
G.4.1 Stereotype «verb concept»

The stereotype «verb concept» characterizes a UML Class as an SBVR verb concept. In UML terms, it is a classifier whose instances are states.

Each «verb concept» Class has one «verb concept role» Association for each verb concept role in the SBVR verb concept that it represents.

The set of «verb concept role» Associations for the verb concept are represented in the «verb concept» element by the Tag "roles".

The number of verb concept roles for the verb concept is represented in the «verb concept» element by the Tag "arity".

G.4.2 Stereotype «verb concept role»

The stereotype «verb concept role» characterizes a UML Association as representing one verb concept role in an SBVR verb concept that is represented by a «verb concept» Class.

Each «verb concept role» Association represents exactly one verb concept role in exactly one SBVR verb concept. Each link that instantiates that Association can be read: In the state (object) X that is the instance of the verb concept Class, the role Y is played by Z, where Y is the association end name on the Association, and Z is the object in the range Class.

One end of the «verb concept role» Association is the «verb concept» Class that represents the verb concept. The other end of the Association is the UML Class that represents the range of the verb concept role. The name of that association end is the placeholder for the verb concept role in the verb concept form.

In a «verb concept role» Association only the association end that refers to the range of the role is navigable, and it always has multiplicity one, because each verb concept role is played exactly once in any one instance of the verb concept.
The relationship of the «verb concept role» Association to the «verb concept» Class is represented in the «verb concept role» element by the Tag "verb concept".

**G.4.3 Stereotype «specializes»**

The stereotype «specializes» characterizes a UML Dependency as representing an instance of SBVR concept specializes concept, where the narrower concept is a binary verb concept that is represented by a UML Association, and the more general concept is a verb concept with more than two verb concept roles that is represented by a «verb concept» Class. That is, the Dependency can be read "binary verb concept X specializes verb concept Y."

The relationship of the «specializes» Dependency to the (client) binary verb concept is represented in the «specializes» element by the Tag "binary verb".

The relationship of the «specializes» Dependency to the (supplier) «verb concept» Class that is the more general verb concept is represented in the «specializes» element with the Tag "n-ary verb".

**Note:** A binary verb concept can specialize an n-ary verb concept by supplying in its definition a specific thing to play one of the verb concept roles in the n-ary verb concept. In practice, it also constrains the ranges of other verb concept roles in the n-ary verb concept.
Index of Date Time Designations

(informative)

A

absolute atomic time coordinate 126
absolute compound time coordinate 126
absolute time coordinate 121
absolute time point 81
actuality 234
ad hoc schedule 253
April 146
atomic duration value 90
atomic duration value has number 90
atomic duration value has time unit 91
atomic time coordinate 123
atomic time coordinate has granularity 124
atomic time coordinate has time scale 124
atomic time coordinate indicates time point 124
atomic time coordinate uses index 123
atomic time coordinate uses time point kind 123
August 147

B

base duration value 150
base quantity 293
base unit 295

C

calendar 109
calendar date 131
calendar day 111
calendar defines time scale 109
calendar month 110
calendar week 111
calendar year 110
calendar is duration ahead of calendar 185
Calendars Vocabulary 109
Calendars Vocabulary 307
centennial year 143
common time scale 133
common year 142
compound duration value 91
compound time coordinate 124
compound time coordinate combines time coordinate 125
compound time coordinate converts to time set on time scale 134
compound time coordinate has atomic time coordinate 125
compound time coordinate includes atomic time coordinate 125
compound time coordinate indicates time point 125
consecutive sequence 279
contract 23
contract has contract length 24
contract has contract payment 24
contract has contract term 24
contract has payment schedule 24
contract has start date 24
contract length 24
contract payment 24
contract term 24
current day 198
current hour 197
current month 200
current time 196
current week 199
current year 202

date coordinate with time offset 190
date time 131
date time combines calendar date 132
date time combines time of day coordinate 132
date time coordinate 131
date time coordinate with time offset 190
Date-Time Vocabulary Registration Vocabulary 307
day period 113
day-of-common-year 156
day-of-leap-year 157
December 147
derived quantity 293
derived unit 295
duration 58
duration is less than duration value set 104
duration is less than or equal to duration value set 103
duration value 89
duration value has atomic duration value 91
duration value set 101
duration value set equals duration 103
duration value set is less than duration 104
duration value set is less than or equal to duration 103
duration value set, equals duration value set 101
duration value set₁ is less than duration value set₂ 102
duration value set₁ is less than or equal to duration value set₂ 102
duration value set₁ equals duration minus duration value set₁ 106
duration value set₁ equals duration plus duration value set₁ 105
duration value set₁ equals duration value set₁ minus duration 106
duration value set₁ equals duration value set₁ plus duration 105
duration value set₁ equals duration value set₁ minus duration value set₂ 107
duration value set₁ equals duration value set₁ plus duration value set₂ 106
duration value₂ equals number times duration value₁ 97
duration value₃ equals duration value₁ minus duration value₂ 97
duration value₃ equals duration value₁ plus duration value₂ 96

Duration Values Vocabulary 307
Duration Values Vocabulary 89

duration, equals duration 59
duration, is less than duration 61
duration, is less than or equal to duration 59
duration, equals number times duration 65
duration, equals duration, minus duration 64
duration, equals duration, plus duration 62

E
earliest time 246
eighth member 288
eleventh member 288
eternity 57
Example Vocabulary 23

F
February 145
fifth member 287
final stub 251
finite sequence 280
finite time scale 81
finite time scale exactly subdivides time point kind 116
finite time scale repeats over indefinite time scale 118
finite time scale subdivides time point 115
finite time scale subdivides time point kind 115
first member 282
first occurrence 222
first position 273
first Thursday 169
first time point 87
following day 199
following hour 198
following month 202
following week 200
following year 203
fourth member 287
Friday 171
future day 199
future hour 197
future month 201
future time 196
future week 200
future year 203

g general situation kind 207
generalization 208
granularity 80
Gregorian calendar day 144
Gregorian calendar month 143
Gregorian Calendar Vocabulary 137
Gregorian Calendar Vocabulary 308
Gregorian date 159
Gregorian day 143
Gregorian day of month 144
Gregorian day of month coordinate 155
Gregorian day of year 143
Gregorian day of year coordinate 155
Gregorian days sequence 160
Gregorian month 143
Gregorian month coordinate 155
Gregorian month day coordinate 158
Gregorian month has Gregorian days sequence 161
Gregorian month has Gregorian month of year 161
Gregorian month has Gregorian year 161
Gregorian month of year 143
Gregorian month of year has day-of-common-year 157
Gregorian month of year has day-of-leap-year 157
Gregorian month of year has Gregorian year of days set 162
Gregorian year 143
Gregorian year coordinate 155
Gregorian year day coordinate 158
Gregorian year has first Thursday 169
Gregorian year has Gregorian days sequence 160
Gregorian year has starting day 156
Gregorian year has starting week 170
Gregorian year month coordinate 155
Gregorian year month day coordinate 157
Gregorian year of days set 162
Hour coordinate 180
Hour minute coordinate 181
Hour minute second coordinate 181
Hour of day 178
Hour of day converts to time point sequence on the day of seconds scale 182
Hour period 179

Indefinite sequence 280
Indefinite time scale 81
Indefinite time scale, is duration ahead of indefinite time scale 185
Index 123
Index 271
Index origin member 277
Index origin position 277
Index origin value 277
Indexical Time Vocabulary 308
Individual situation kind 207
Individual situation kind has occurrence interval 221
Individual situation kind through time interval 232
Individual situation kind through time interval, specifies time interval 232
Individual situation kind, to individual situation kind, specifies time interval 233
Initial stub 251
International System of Units 295
Internet time coordinate 192
Internet time point 192
Internet Time Vocabulary 191
Internet Time Vocabulary 308
ISO day of week 168
ISO day of week coordinate 172
ISO week 167
ISO Week Calendar Vocabulary 308
ISO week day coordinate 173
ISO week of year 168
ISO week of year coordinate 172
ISO week-based year 168
ISO weekday of year 169
ISO year of weekdays scale 167
ISO year of weeks scale 167
ISO year week coordinate 173
ISO year week day coordinate 173

J
January 145
July 146
June 146

L
last day 198
last hour 197
last member 282
last month 201
last occurrence 223
last position 274
last time point 87
last week 199
last year 202
latest time 247
leap second 179
leap year 142
local calendar specifies time offset 189
local calendar 188
local time 187
locale has local time 188
locale uses local calendar 189
locale 187

M
March 146
May 146
measurement unit 294
member 274
member has index in sequence 275
member participates in sequence 271
member with index in sequence 275
member1 precedes member2 in unique sequence 281
Mereology Vocabulary 297
Mereology Vocabulary 309
midnight 177
minute coordinate 181
minute of day 178
minute of day converts to time point sequence on the day of seconds scale 183
minute of hour 179
Monday 170
month period 112
month value 152
months centennial quotient 152
months centennial quotient of month value 152
months duration value set 153
months duration value set of month value 153
months quadricentennial quotient 152
months quadricentennial quotient of year value 152
months quotient 152
months quotient of month value 152
months remainder 152
months remainder of month value 152

N
next day 198
next hour 197
next member 283
next member after thing in unique sequence 283
next month 201
next sequence position 273
next sequence position is next after sequence position 273
next week 200
next year 202
ninth member 288
nominal atomic duration value 94
nominal atomic duration value specifies duration value set 95
nominal compound duration value 94
nominal compound duration value specifies duration value set 95
nominal duration value 94
nominal duration value is less than or equal to precise duration value 100
nominal duration value is less than precise duration value 100
nominal duration value is equivalent to nominal duration value 99
nominal duration value is less than nominal duration value 100
nominal duration value is less than or equal to nominal duration value 99
nominal time unit 76
noon 177
November 147

O
occurrence 206
occurrence ends after time interval 213
occurrence ends at time interval 213
occurrence ends during time interval 214
occurrence exemplifies situation kind 207
occurrence interval 210
occurrence is accomplished 239
occurrence is accomplished in time interval 239
occurrence is continuing 239
occurrence is current 240
occurrence is in the future 240
occurrence is in the past 240
occurrence lasts for duration 212
occurrence occurs after time interval 212
occurrence occurs before time interval 212
occurrence occurs duration after time interval 214
occurrence occurs duration before time interval 213
occurrence occurs for occurrence interval 211
occurrence occurs throughout time interval 210
occurrence occurs within time interval 210
occurrence starts at time interval 213
occurrence starts before time interval 213
occurrence starts during time interval 214
occurrence to time interval\textsubscript{1} specifies time interval\textsubscript{2} 229
occurrence\textsubscript{1} ends before occurrence\textsubscript{2} 218
occurrence\textsubscript{1} ends duration after occurrence\textsubscript{2} 219
occurrence\textsubscript{1} is between occurrence\textsubscript{2} and occurrence\textsubscript{3} 218
occurrence\textsubscript{1} is duration after occurrence\textsubscript{2} 219
occurrence\textsubscript{1} overlaps occurrence\textsubscript{2} 218
occurrence\textsubscript{1} precedes occurrence\textsubscript{2} 216
occurrence\textsubscript{1} starts before occurrence\textsubscript{2} 217
occurrence\textsubscript{1} starts duration before occurrence\textsubscript{2} 219
occurrence\textsubscript{1} through occurrence\textsubscript{2} specifies time interval 229
occurrence\textsubscript{1} to occurrence\textsubscript{2} specifies time interval 230
October 147

P
part 297
part is a proper part of whole 299
part is part of whole 297
particular duration 68
particular quantity 291
past day 198
past hour 197
past month 201
past time 196
past week 200
past year 202
payment schedule 24
perpetuity 58
preceding day 199
preceding hour 198
preceding month 201
preceding week 200
preceding year 203
precise atomic duration value 92
precise atomic duration value quantifies duration 93
precise compound duration value 92
precise compound duration value quantifies duration 93
precise duration value 92
precise duration value is equivalent to nominal duration value 99
precise duration value is less than nominal duration value 100
precise duration value is less than or equal to nominal duration value 100
precise duration value is equivalent to precise duration value 99
precise duration value is less than or equal to precise duration value 99
precise duration value 1 is less than precise duration value 2 100
precise time unit 76
previous member 284
previous member is just before thing in unique sequence 284
primordiality 57
proposition corresponds to situation kind 236
proposition corresponds to state of affairs 233
proposition describes occurrence 236

Q
quadricentennial year 143
Quantities Vocabulary 291
Quantities Vocabulary 309
quantity 291
quantity has quantity kind 293
quantity kind 292
quantity value 296
quantity value quantifies quantity 296

R
recurrence count 251
recurrence duration 250
refinement 207
refinement refines situation kind 207
regular entry set 252
regular entry set of regular schedule 252
regular schedule 249
regular schedule has final stub 252
regular schedule has initial stub 251
regular schedule has recurrence count 251
regular schedule has recurrence duration 250
regular schedule has start time 250
regular schedule is for situation kind 250
regular sequence 280
relative atomic time coordinate 126
relative compound time coordinate 126
relative time coordinate 121
relative time point 81
S

Saturday 171

SBVR Vocabulary 306
SBVR-DTV Vocabulary 309

schedule 244
schedule defines schedule entry set 245
schedule entry 244
schedule entry has situation kind 245
schedule entry has time interval 245
schedule entry set 245
schedule has earliest time 246
schedule has latest time 247
schedule has occurrence 246
schedule has schedule entry 244
schedule has time span 248
Schedules Vocabulary 243
Schedules Vocabulary 309
second coordinate 181
second member 286
second of day 178
second of minute 179
September 147
sequence 271
sequence has first member 282
sequence has first position 273
sequence has index origin member 277
sequence has index origin position 278
sequence has index origin value 278
sequence has last member 283
sequence has last position 274
sequence has sequence position 271
sequence is of concept 276
sequence position 271
sequence position has index 272
sequence position has member 275
sequence position precedes sequence position 272

Sequences Vocabulary 270
Sequences Vocabulary 309
set is of concept 289
set1 is set2 plus thing 290
seventh member 287
situation kind 206
situation kind has first occurrence 223
situation kind has first occurrence after time interval 222
situation kind has generalization 208
situation kind has last occurrence 223
situation kind has last occurrence before time interval 224
situation kind has time span 221
situation kind is accomplished 238
situation kind is accomplished in time interval 239
situation kind is continuing 238
situation kind is current 240
situation kind is in the future 240
situation kind is in the past 239
situation kind occurs for time interval 220
situation kind occurs throughout time interval 220
situation kind occurs within time interval 220
situation kind, ends before situation kind 226
situation kind, is between situation kind 2 and situation kind 3 227
situation kind, overlaps situation kind 2 227
situation kind, precedes situation kind 2 225
situation kind, starts before situation kind 2 226
Situations Vocabulary 205
Situations Vocabulary 308
sixth member 287
standard time coordinate 182
standard time 187
start date 23
start time 250
starting day 156
starting week 170
state of affairs 233
state of affairs is actual 234
subdivision 115
Sunday 171
system of quantities defines base quantity 293
system of quantities includes derived quantity 293
system of units 294
system of units defines base unit 295
system of units defines derived unit 295
system of units defines measurement unit for quantity kind 295
system of units is for system of quantities 294

T
tenth member 288
thing 1 overlaps thing 2 298
third member 287
Thursday 171
time coordinate indicates time point 120
time coordinate refers to time interval 120
time coordinate 1 is equivalent to time coordinate 2 127
Time Infrastructure Vocabulary

- Time interval
  - ends duration after occurrence
  - ends on time point
  - has particular duration
  - is current
  - is future
  - is past
  - is the duration following occurrence
  - is the duration preceding occurrence
  - starts duration before occurrence
  - starts on time point
  - equals time interval
  - finishes after time interval
  - finishes duration after time interval
  - finishes time interval
  - finishes time interval complementing time interval
  - finishes with time interval
  - finishes
  - finishes time interval complementary
  - is a proper part of time interval
  - is before time interval
  - is between time interval and time interval
  - is part of time interval
  - is properly before time interval
  - is properly during time interval
  - is the duration following time interval
  - is the duration preceding time interval
  - meets time interval
  - overlaps time interval
  - plus time interval is time interval
  - properly overlaps time interval
  - starts before time interval
  - starts duration before time interval
  - starts during time interval
  - starts time interval
  - starts time interval complementing time interval
  - starts with time interval
  - through individual situation kind specifies time interval
  - through occurrence specifies time interval
  - through time interval specifies time interval
  - to individual situation kind specifies time interval
  - to occurrence specifies time interval
  - to time interval specifies time interval
  - is duration before time interval
  - time of day
time of day coordinate 131

time of day coordinate with time offset 190

time of day scale 186

Time of Day Vocabulary 175

Time of Day Vocabulary 308

time offset has duration 188

time offset is ahead 188

time offset is behind 188

time offset 188

time period 85

time period is before time set 130

time period is on or before time set 129

time point 82

time point converts to time point sequence 134

time point converts to time set 134

time point has index 83

time point has subdivision 115

time point indicated by compound time coordinate 125

time point is on time scale 82

time point kind 114

time point kind has granularity 115

time point kind has time scale 114

time point maps to time scale 117

time point sequence 84

time point sequence corresponds to time interval 85

time point sequence has duration 85

time point sequence has first time point 87

time point sequence has last time point 87

time point sequence is on time scale 86

time point sequence matches time set 128

time point sequence is time point sequence 1, plus integer 86

time point is just before time point 2 83

time point is subdivided into time point 2 116

time point precedes time point 2 83

time point renumbers time point 2 117

time point shares common time scale with time point 2 133

time point through time point 2 88

time point through time point 2 defines time point sequence 87

time point through time point 2 specifies time period 88

time point to time point 2 defines time point sequence 87

time point to time point 2 specifies time period 88

time scale 80

time scale has granularity 80

time scale has time point 82

time scale renumbers time scale 2 117

time set 128

time set is before time period 130
time set is on or before time period 129
time set, is before time set 130
time set, is equivalent to time set 128
time set, is on or before time set 129
time span 220
time unit 76
time zone 189
Tuesday 171
twelfth member 289

U
unique sequence 279
unique sequence has eighth member 288
unique sequence has eleventh member 289
unique sequence has fifth member 287
unique sequence has fourth member 287
unique sequence has ninth member 288
unique sequence has second member 286
unique sequence has seventh member 288
unique sequence has sixth member 287
unique sequence has tenth member 288
unique sequence has third member 287
unique sequence has twelfth member 289
UTC time 187
UTC 186

W
Wednesday 171
week period 112
whole 297

Y
year period 112
year to date 203
year value 148
year value has base duration value 150
year value has years centennial remainder 149
year value has years quadricentennial remainder 149
year value specifies years duration value set 150
years centennial quotient 149
years centennial quotient of year value 149
years centennial remainder 149
years duration value set 150
years quadricentennial quotient 149
years quadricentennial quotient of year value 149
years quadricentennial remainder 149
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>years quotient</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>years quotient of year value</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>years remainder</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>years remainder of year value</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>